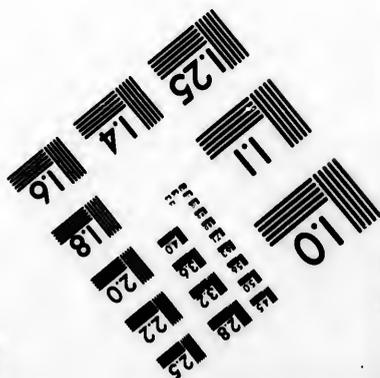
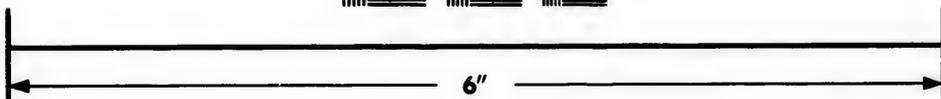
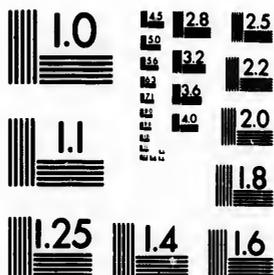


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 472-4503

1.5 12.8  
1.6 13.2  
1.8 2.0  
2.2 2.5

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

1.0  
1.5  
1.6

**© 1984**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments: /  
Commentaires supplémentaires:      Various pagings.

- Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/  
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

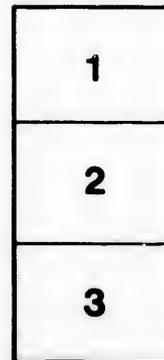
Library Division  
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▽ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library Division  
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▽ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaires. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

ils  
du  
diffier  
ne  
age

rata  
elure,  
à

ORDER 1000

**COOK'S VOYAGES.**







**NARRATIVE**  
**OF**  
**CAPTAIN JAMES COOK'S**  
**VOYAGES**  
**ROUND THE WORLD ;**

**WITH AN**  
**ACCOUNT OF HIS LIFE**  
**DURING THE**  
**PREVIOUS AND INTERVENING PERIODS :**

**ALSO,**  
**AN APPENDIX,**  
**DETAILING THE PROGRESS OF THE VOYAGE AFTER THE**  
**DEATH OF CAPTAIN COOK.**

---

**LONDON :**  
**MILNER AND COMPANY, LIMITED,**  
**PATERNOSTER ROW.**

NW  
970 P  
C 771

1st-3d  
Lond.  
con. d. 1

BENNELOW

\$3.10.0

JUN 19 '02

ELow  
3.10.0  
N 19 '62

## PREFACE.

---

ALTHOUGH I have often appeared before the public as a writer, I never did it with so much diffidence and anxiety as on the present occasion. This arises from the peculiar nature of the work in which I have now engaged. A Narrative of the Life and Actions of Captain Cook must principally consist of the voyages and discoveries which he made, and the difficulties and dangers to which he was exposed. The private incidents concerning him, though collected with the utmost diligence, can never compare, either in number or importance, with his public transactions. His public transactions are the things that mark the man, that display his mind and his character; and, therefore, they are the grand objects to which the attention of his biographer must be directed. However, the right conduct of this business is a point of no small difficulty and embarrassment. The question will frequently arise, How far the detail should be extended? There is a danger, on the one hand, of being carried to an undue length, and of enlarging, more than is needful, on facts which may be thought already sufficiently known; and, on the other hand, of giving such a jejune account, and such a slight enumeration of important events, as shall disappoint the wishes and expectations of the reader. Of the two extremes, the last seems to be that which should

234572

most be avoided; for, unless what Captain Cook performed, and what he encountered, be related somewhat at large, his life and actions would be imperfectly represented to the world. The proper medium appears to be, to bring forward the things in which he was personally concerned, and to pass slightly over other matters. Even here, it is scarcely possible, nor would it be desirable, to avoid the introduction of some of the most striking circumstances which relate to the new countries and inhabitants that were visited by our great navigator; since these constitute a part of the knowledge and benefit derived from his undertakings. Whether I have been so happy as to preserve the due medium, I presume not to determine. I have been anxious to do it, without always being able fully to satisfy my own mind that I have succeeded; on which account I shall not be surprised if different opinions should be formed on the subject. In that case, all that I can offer in my defence will be, that I have acted to the best of my judgment. At any rate, I flatter myself with the hope of having presented to the public a work not wholly uninteresting or unentertaining. Those who are best acquainted with Captain Cook's expeditions, may be pleased with reviewing them in a more compendious form, and with having his actions placed in a closer point of view, in consequence of their being divested of the minute nautical, and other details which were essentially necessary in the voyages at large. As to those persons, if there be any, who have hitherto obtained but an imperfect knowledge of what was done and discovered by this illustrious man, they will not be offended at the length of the following narrative.

In various respects, new information will be found in the present performance; and other things, which were less perfectly known before, are set in a clearer and fuller light. This, I trust, will appear in the account of Captain Cook previous to his first voyage, and in other parts. It may be observed, likewise, that the fresh matter now com-

municated is of the most authentic kind, and derived from the most respectable sources. My obligations of this nature are, indeed, very great, and call for my warmest gratitude. The dates and facts relative to Captain Cook's different promotions are taken from the books of the Admiralty, by the direction of the noble lord who is at the head of that Board, and the favour of Mr. Stephens. I embrace with pleasure this opportunity of mentioning, that, in the course of my life, I have experienced, in several instances, Lord Howe's condescending and favourable attention. To Mr. Stephens I am indebted for other communications besides those which concern the times of Captain Cook's preferments, and for his general readiness in forwarding the design of the present work. Tho' Earl of Sandwich, the great patron of our navigator, and the principal mover in his mighty undertakings, has honoured me with some important information concerning him, especially with regard to the circumstances which preceded his last voyage. To Sir Hugh Palliser's zeal for the memory of his friend I stand particularly obliged. From a large communication, with which he was so good as to favour me, I have derived very material intelligence, as will appear in the course of the narrative, and especially in the account of Captain Cook previous to his first voyage. In that account are some facts which I received from Admiral Graves, through the hands of the Rev. Dr. Douglas, now Bishop of Carlisle (whose admirable Introduction to the Voyage to the Pacific Ocean must be of the most essential service to every writer of the Life of Captain Cook.) The Captain's amiable and worthy Widow, who is held in just esteem by all his friends, has given me an account of several domestic circumstances. I should be deficient in gratitude, were I here to omit the name of Mr. Samwell; for, though what is inserted from him in this work has already been laid before the public, it should be remembered, that through the interposition of our common friend, the Rev. Mr. Gregory, it was originally written for

my use, and freely consigned to my disposal; and that it was at my particular instance and request that it was separately printed. My obligations to other gentlemen will be mentioned in their proper places.

But my acknowledgments are, above all, due to Sir Joseph Banks, President of the Royal Society for the interest he has taken in the present publication. It was in consequence of his advice, that it was given to the world in the form which it now bears; and his assistance has been invariable through every part of the undertaking. To him the inspection of the whole has been submitted; and to him it is owing, that the work is, in many respects, far more complete than it would otherwise have been. The exertions of zeal and friendship, I have been so happy as to experience from him in writing the account of Captain Cook, have corresponded with that ardour which Sir Joseph Banks is always ready to display in promoting whatever he judges to be subservient to the cause of science and literature.

THE AUTHOR,

that it  
was se-  
en will

to Sir  
e inter-  
in con-  
orld in  
s been  
g. To  
d; and  
pects,  
been.  
o happy  
ount of  
e which  
isplay in  
c to the

DR,

## ACCOUNT OF CAPTAIN COOK,

PREVIOUS TO HIS FIRST VOYAGE.

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK had no claim to distinction on account of the lustre of his birth, or the dignity of his ancestors. His father, James Cook, who from his dialect is supposed to have been a Northumbrian, was in the humble station of a servant in husbandry, and married a woman of the same rank with himself, whose christian name was Grace. Both of them were noted in the neighbourhood for their honesty, sobriety, and diligence. They first lived at a village called Morton, and then removed to Marton, another village in the North-riding of Yorkshire, situated on the high road from Gisborough, in Cleveland, to Stockton-upon-Tees, in the county of Durham, at the distance of six miles from each of these towns. At Morton, Captain Cook was born, on the 27th of October, 1728; and, agreeably to the custom of the vicar of the parish, whose practice it was to baptize infants soon after their birth, he was baptized on the 3rd of November following. He was one of nine children, all of whom are now dead, excepting a daughter, who married a fisherman at Redcar. The first rudiments of young Cook's education were received by him at Marton, where he was taught to read by dame Walker, the schoolmistress of the village. When he was eight years of age, his father, in consequence of the character he had obtained for industry, frugality, and skill in husbandry, had a little promotion bestowed upon him, which was that of being appointed head-servant, or hind, to a farm belonging to the late Thomas Skottow Esq., called Airy Holme, near Great

Ayton. To this place, therefore, he removed with his family; and his son James, at Mr. Skottow's expense, was put to a day-school in Ayton, where he was instructed in writing, and in a few of the first rules in arithmetic.

Before he was thirteen years of age, he was bound an apprentice to Mr. William Sanderson, a haberdasher, or shopkeeper, at Straiths, a considerable fishing town, about ten miles north of Whitby. This employment, however, was very unsuitable to young Cook's disposition. The sea was the object of his inclination; and his passion for it could not avoid being strengthened by the situation of the town in which he was placed, and the manner of life of the persons with whom he must frequently converse. Some disagreement having happened between him and his master, he obtained his discharge, and soon after bound himself for seven years to Messrs. John and Henry Walker, of Whitby, Quakers by religious profession, and principal owners of the ship *Freelove*, and of another vessel, both of which were constantly employed in the coal trade. The greatest part of his apprenticeship was spent on board the *Freelove*. After he was out of his time, he continued to serve in the coal and other branches of trade (though chiefly in the former) in the capacity of a common sailor; till, at length, he was raised to be mate of one of Mr. John Walker's ships.

In the spring of the year 1755, when hostilities broke out between England and France, and there was a hot press for seamen, Mr. Cook happened to be in the river Thames with the ship to which he belonged. At first he concealed himself to avoid being pressed; but reflecting that it might be difficult, notwithstanding all his vigilance, to elude discovery or escape pursuit, he determined, upon further consideration, to enter voluntarily into his majesty's service, and to take his future fortune in the royal navy. Perhaps he had some presage in his own mind, that by his activity and exertions he might rise considerably above his present situation. Accordingly he went to a rendezvous at Wap-

ping, and entered with an officer of the Eagle man-of-war, a ship of sixty guns, at that time commanded by Captain Hamer. To this ship Captain (afterwards Sir Hugh) Palliser was appointed, in the month of October, 1755; and when he took the command, found in her James Cook, whom he soon distinguished to be an able, active, and diligent seaman. All the officers spoke highly in his favour, and the captain was so well pleased with his behaviour, that he gave him every encouragement which lay in his power.

In the course of some time, Captain Palliser received a letter from Mr. Osbaldeston, then member of Parliament for Scarborough, acquainting him that several neighbours of his had solicited him to write in favour of one Cook, on board the captain's ship. They had heard that Captain Palliser had taken notice of him, and they requested, if he thought Cook deserving of it, that he would point out in what manner Mr. Osbaldeston might best contribute his assistance towards forwarding the young man's promotion. The captain, in his reply, did justice to Cook's merit; but, as he had been only a short time in the navy, informed Mr. Osbaldeston that he could not be promoted as a commission officer. A master's warrant, Captain Palliser added, might perhaps be procured for Mr. Cook, by which he would be raised to a station that he was well qualified to discharge with ability and credit.

Such a warrant he obtained on the 10th of May, 1759, for the Grampus sloop; but the proper master having unexpectedly returned to her, the appointment did not take place. Four days after he was made master of the Garland; when, upon inquiry, it was found that he could not join her, as the ship had already sailed. On the next day, the 15th of May, he was appointed to the Mercury. These quick and successive appointments shew that his interest was strong, and that the intention to serve him was real and effectual.

The destination of the Mercury was to North America, where she joined the fleet under the command of Sir Charles

Saunders, which, in conjunction with the land forces under General Wolfe, was engaged in the famous siege of Quebec. During that siege, a difficult and dangerous service was necessary to be performed. This was to take the soundings in the channel of the river St. Lawrence, between the island of Orleans and the north shore, directly in the front of the French fortified camp at Montmorency and Beauport, in order to enable the admiral to place ships against the enemy's batteries, and to cover our army on a general attack, which the heroic Wolfe intended to make on the camp. Captain Palliser, in consequence of his acquaintance with Mr. Cook's sagacity and resolution, recommended him to the service; and he performed it in a most complete manner. In this business he was employed during the night-time, for several nights together. At length he was discovered by the enemy, who collected a great number of Indians and canoes, in a wood, near the waterside, which were launched in the night, for the purpose of surrounding him, and cutting him off. On this occasion, he had a very narrow escape. He was obliged to run for it, and pushed on shore on the island of Orleans, near the guard of the English hospital. Some of the Indians entered at the stern of the boat, as Mr. Cook leaped out at the bow; and the boat, which was a barge belonging to one of the ships of war, was carried away in triumph. However, he furnished the admiral with as correct and complete a draught of the channel and soundings as could have been made after our countrymen were in possession of Quebec. Sir Hugh Palliser had good reason to believe, that before this time Mr. Cook had scarcely ever used a pencil, and that he knew nothing of drawing. But such was his capacity, that he speedily made himself master of every object to which he applied his attention.

Another important service was performed by Mr. Cook while the fleet continued in the river St. Lawrence. The navigation of that river is exceedingly difficult and hazardous. It was particularly so to the English, who were then

in a great measure strangers to this part of North America, and who had no chart, on the correctness of which they could depend. It was therefore ordered by the admiral, that Mr. Cook should be employed to survey those parts of the river, below Quebec, which navigators had experienced to be attended with peculiar difficulty and danger; and he executed the business with the same diligence and skill of which he had already afforded so happy a specimen. When he had finished the undertaking, his chart of the river St. Lawrence was published, with soundings, and directions for sailing in that river. Of the accuracy and utility of this chart, it is sufficient to say, that it hath never since been found necessary to publish any other. One which has appeared in France, is only a copy of our author's, on a reduced scale.

After the expedition at Quebec, Mr. Cook, by warrant from Lord Colville, was appointed, on the 22d of September, 1759, master of the Northumberland man-of-war, the ship in which his lordship staid, in the following winter, as commodore, with the command of a squadron at Halifax. In this station, Mr. Cook's behaviour did not fail to gain him the esteem and friendship of his commander. During the leisure, which the season of winter afforded him, he employed his time in the acquisition of such knowledge as eminently qualified him for future service. It was at Halifax that he first read Euclid, and applied himself to the study of astronomy and other branches of science.

While Mr. Cook was master of the Northumberland under Lord Colville, that ship came to Newfoundland in September, 1762, to assist in the recapture of that island from the French, by the forces under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Amherst. When the island was recovered, the English fleet staid some days at Placentia, in order to put it in a more complete state of defence. During this time Mr. Cook manifested a diligence in surveying the harbour and heights of the place, which arrested the notice of Captain (now Admiral) Graves, commander of the Antelope, and governor of New-

... under  
Quebec.  
... was ne-  
... soundings in  
... island of  
... nt of the  
... port, in  
... the ene-  
... l attack,  
... the camp.  
... nce with  
... him to the  
... manner.  
... time, for  
... ed by the  
... d canoes,  
... ed in the  
... tting him  
... ape. He  
... the island  
... l. Some  
... Mr. Cook  
... a barge  
... away in  
... as cor-  
... soundings  
... were in  
... reason  
... eely ever  
... g. But  
... f master  
  
... r. Cook  
... e. The  
... hazard-  
... re then

foundland. The governor was hence induced to ask Cook a variety of questions, from the answers to which he was led to entertain a very favourable opinion of his abilities. This opinion was increased the more he saw of Mr. Cook's conduct; who, wherever they went, continued to display the most unremitting attention to every object that related to the knowledge of the coast, and was calculated to facilitate the practice of navigation.

In the latter end of 1762, Mr. Cook returned to England; and, on the 21st of December in the same year, married, at Barking, in Essex, Miss Elizabeth Batts, an amiable and deserving woman, who was justly entitled to and enjoyed his tenderest regard and affection. But his station in life, and the high duties to which he was called, did not permit him to partake of matrimonial felicity, without many and very long interruptions.

Early in the year 1763, after the peace with France and Spain was concluded, it was determined that Captain Graves should go out again, as Governor of Newfoundland. As the country was very valuable in a commercial view, and had been an object of great contention between the English and French, the captain obtained an establishment for the survey of its coasts. In considering the execution of the plan, Mr. Cook appeared to Captain Graves to be a proper person for the purpose; and proposals were made to him to which, notwithstanding his recent marriage, he readily and prudently acceded. Accordingly he went out with the Captain as surveyor; and was first employed to survey Miquelon and St. Pierre, which had been ceded by the treaty to the French, who, by order of the administration, were to take possession of them at a certain period, even though the English commander should not happen to be arrived in the country. When Captain Graves had reached that part of the world, he found there the governor who had been sent from France (Mons. D'Anjac), with all the settlers and his own family, on board a frigate, and some transports. It was contrived.

however, to keep them in that disagreeable situation for a whole month, which was the time taken by Mr. Cook to complete his survey. When the business was finished, the French were put into possession of the two islands, and left in the quiet enjoyment of them, with every profession of civility.

At the end of the season, Mr. Cook returned to England, but did not long continue at home. In the beginning of the year 1764, his old and constant friend and patron, Sir Hugh Palliser, was appointed governor and commodore of Newfoundland and Labrador ; upon which occasion he was glad to take Mr. Cook with him, in the same capacity that he had sustained under Captain Graves. Indeed, no man could have been found who was better qualified for finishing the design which had been begun in the preceding year. The charts of the coasts, in that part of North America, were very erroneous; and it was highly necessary to the trade and navigation of his Majesty's subjects, that new ones should be formed, which would be more correct and useful. Accordingly, under the orders of Commodore Palliser, Mr. Cook was appointed on the 18th of April, 1764, marine surveyor of Newfoundland and Labrador ; and he had a vessel, the Grenville schooner, to attend him for that purpose. The charts which he afterwards published of the different surveys he had made, reflected great credit on his abilities and character, and the utility of them is universally acknowledged. It is understood, that so far as Newfoundland is concerned, they were of considerable service to the king's ministers, in settling the terms of the last peace. Mr. Cook explored the inland parts of the island in a much completer manner than had ever been done before. By penetrating further into the middle of the country than any man had hitherto attempted, he discovered large lakes, which are indicated upon the general chart. In these services Mr. Cook appears to have been employed, with the intervals of occasionally returning to England for the winter season, till

the year 1767, which was the last time that he went out upon his station of marine surveyor of Newfoundland. It must not be omitted, that, while he occupied this post, he had an opportunity of exhibiting to the Royal Society a proof of his progress in the study of astronomy. A short paper was written by him, and inserted in the fifty-seventh volume of the Philosophical Transactions, entitled "An Observation of an Eclipse of the Sun, at the Island of Newfoundland, August 5, 1766, with the Longitude of the place of Observation deduced from it." The observation was made at one of the Burgeo Islands, near Cape Bay, in latitude 47 deg. 38 min. 10 sec. on the south-west extremity of Newfoundland. Mr. Cook's paper having been communicated by Dr. Bevis to Mr. Witchell, the latter gentleman compared it with an observation at Oxford, by the Rev. Mr. Hornsby, on the same eclipse, and thence computed the difference of longitude respecting the places of observation, making due allowance for the effect of parallax, and the prolate spheroidal figure of the earth. It appears from the Transactions that our navigator had already obtained the character of being an able mathematician.

went out  
land. It  
s post, he  
Society a  
A short  
y-seventh  
itled "An  
d of New-  
the place  
tion was  
y, in lati-  
tremity of  
communi-  
gentleman  
e Rev. Mr.  
puted the  
bservation,  
t, and the  
pears from  
y obtained

A  
NARRATIVE  
OF  
CAPTAIN COOK'S VOYAGES  
ROUND THE WORLD

---

CHAPTER I.

*Narrative of Captain Cook's First Voyage round  
the World.*

**THERE** is scarcely any thing from which the natural curiosity of man receives a higher gratification than from the accounts of distant countries and nations. Nor is it curiosity only that is gratified by such accounts; for the sphere of human knowledge is thereby enlarged, and various objects are brought into view, an acquaintance with which greatly contributes to the improvement of life, and the benefit of the world. With regard to information of this kind, the moderns have eminently the advantage over the ancients. The ancients could neither pursue their inquiries with the same accuracy, nor carry them on to the same extent. Travelling by land was much more incon-

venient and dangerous than it hath been in later times; and as navigation was principally confined to coasting, it must necessarily have been circumscribed within very narrow limits.

The invention of the compass, seconded by the ardent and enterprising spirit of several able men, was followed by wonderful discoveries. Vasco di Gama doubled the Cape of Good Hope; and a new way being thus found out to the East Indies, the countries in that part of the earth became more accurately and extensively known. Another world was discovered by Columbus; and at length Magaiheins accomplished the arduous and hitherto unattempted task of sailing round the globe.

The spirit of discovery which was so vigorous during the latter end of the fifteenth and through the whole of the sixteenth century, began soon after the commencement of the seventeenth century, to decline. Great navigations were only occasionally undertaken, and from the more immediate views of avarice or war, than from any noble and generous principles. But of late years they have been revived, with the enlarged and benevolent design of promoting the happiness of the human species.

A beginning of this kind was made in the reign of George the Second, during which two voyages were performed; the first under the command of Captain Middleton, and the next under the direction of Captains Smith and Moore, in order to discover a north-west passage through Hudson's Bay. It was reserved, however, for the glory of the present reign to carry the spirit of discovery to its height, and to conduct it on the noblest principles—not for the purposes of covetousness or ambition,—nor to plunder or destroy the inhabitants of newly-explored countries, but to improve their condition, to instruct them in the arts of life, and to extend the boundaries of science.

No sooner was peace restored in 1763, than these laudable designs engaged his majesty's patronage.

and two voyages round the world had been undertaken before Mr. Cook set out on his first command. The conductors of these voyages were the Captains Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, by whom several discoveries were made, which contributed, in no small degree, to increase the knowledge of geography and navigation. Nevertheless, as the purpose for which they were sent out appears to have had a principal reference to a particular object in the South Atlantic, the direct tract they were obliged to hold, on their way homeward by the East Indies, prevented them from doing so much as might otherwise have been expected towards giving the world a complete view of that immense expanse of ocean which the South Pacific comprehends.

Before Captain Wallis and Captain Carteret had returned to Great Britain, another voyage was resolved upon, for which the improvement of astronomical science afforded the immediate occasion. It having been calculated by astronomers that a transit of Venus over the sun's disc would happen in 1769, it was judged that the best place for observing it would be in some part of the South Sea, either at the Marquesas, or at one of those islands which Tasman had called Amsterdam, Rotterdam, and Middleburg, and which are now better known under the name of the Friendly Islands. This being a matter of eminent consequence in astronomy, and which excited the attention of foreign nations as well as of our own, the affair was taken up by the Royal Society, with the zeal which has always been displayed by that learned body for the advancement of every branch of philosophical science. Accordingly a long memorial was addressed to his majesty, dated the 15th of February, 1768, representing the great importance of the object, together with the regard which had been paid to it by the principal courts of Europe; and entreating, among other things, that a vessel might be ordered, at the expense of govern-

ment, for the conveyance of suitable persons to make the observation of the transit of Venus at one of the places before mentioned. This memorial having been laid before the King by the Earl of Shelburne, (now the Marquis of Lansdown,) one of the principal secretaries of state, his majesty graciously signified his pleasure to the lords commissioners of the Admiralty that they should provide a ship for carrying over such observers as the Royal Society should judge proper to send to the South Seas; and, on the 3rd of April, Mr. Stephens informed the society, that a bark had been taken up for the purpose.

He knew, he said, a Mr. Cook, who had been employed as marine surveyor of Newfoundland, who had been regularly educated in the navy, in which he was a master, and whom he judged to be fully qualified for the direction of the present undertaking. Mr. Stephens, at the same time, recommended it to the board to take the opinion of Sir Hugh Palliser, who had lately been governor of Newfoundland, and was intimately acquainted with Cook's character. Sir Hugh rejoiced in the opportunity of serving his friend. He strengthened Mr. Stephens' recommendation to the utmost of his power; and added many things in Mr. Cook's favour, arising from the particular knowledge which he had of his abilities and merit. Accordingly Mr. Cook was appointed to the command of the expedition by the lords of the Admiralty; and on this occasion he was promoted to the rank of a lieutenant in the royal navy, his commission bearing date the 25th of May, 1768.

When the appointment had taken place, the first object was to provide a vessel adapted to the purposes of the voyage. This business was committed to Sir Hugh Palliser, who took Lieutenant Cook to his assistance, and they examined together a great number of the ships which then lay in the river Thames. At length they fixed upon one of 370 tons, to which was given the name of the Endeavour.

When preparations were making for Lieutenant Cook's expedition, Captain Wallis returned from his voyage round the world. The Earl of Morton, president of the Royal Society, had recommended to this gentleman, on his going out, to fix upon a proper place for observing the transit of Venus. He kept accordingly to the object in view; and having discovered, in the course of his enterprise, an island called by him George's Island, but which hath since been found to bear the name of Otaheite he judged that Port Royal harbour, in this island, would afford an eligible situation for the purpose. Having, immediately on his return to England, signified his opinion to the Earl of Morton, the Captain's idea was adopted by the society, and an answer conformable to it was sent to the commissioners of the Admiralty, who had applied for directions to what place the observers should be sent.

Mr. Charles Green, a gentleman who had long been assistant to Dr. Bradley, at the royal observatory at Greenwich, was united with Lieutenant Cook in conducting the astronomical part of the voyage; and, soon after their appointment, they received ample instructions from the council of the Royal Society, with regard to the method of carrying on their inquiries. The lieutenant was also accompanied by Joseph Banks, Esq. (now Sir Joseph Banks, Baronet,) and Dr. Solander.

Though it was the principal, it was not the sole object of Lieutenant Cook's voyage to observe the transit of Venus. A more accurate examination of the Pacific Ocean was committed to him, although in subserviency to his main design; and, when his chief business was accomplished, he was directed to proceed in making further discoveries in the great Southern Seas.

The complement of Lieutenant Cook's ship consisted of eighty-four persons, besides the commander. Her victualling was for eighteen months; and there

were put on board of her, ten carriage and ten swivel guns, together with an ample store of ammunition and other necessaries.

On the 25th of May, 1768, Lieutenant Cook was appointed by the Lords of the Admiralty, to the command of the Endeavour, in consequence of which he went on board on the 27th, and took charge of the ship. She then lay in the basin in Deptford-yard, where she continued to lie till she was completely fitted for sea. On the 30th of July she sailed down the river, and on the 13th of August anchored in Plymouth Sound. The wind becoming fair on the 26th of that month, our navigators got under sail, and on the 13th of September anchored in Funchiale Road, in the Island of Madeira.

While Lieutenant Cook and his company were in this island, they were treated with the utmost kindness and liberality by Mr. Cheap, the English Consul there, and one of the most considerable merchants in the town of Funchiale. He insisted upon their taking possession of his house, and furnished them with every possible accommodation during their stay at Madeira. They received likewise great marks of attention and civility from Dr. Thomas Heberden, the principal physician of the island, and brother to the excellent and learned Dr. William Heberden, of London. Dr. Thomas Heberden afforded all the assistance in his power to Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in their botanical inquiries.

It was not solely from the English that the lieutenant and his friends experienced a kind reception. The fathers of the Franciscan convent displayed a liberality of sentiment towards them which might not have been expected from Portuguese friars, and in a visit which they paid to a convent of nuns, the ladies expressed a particular pleasure in seeing them. At this visit the good nuns gave an amusing proof of the progress they had made in the cultivation of their understanding. Having heard that there

were great philosophers among the English gentlemen, they asked them a variety of questions, one of which was, when it would thunder; and another, whether a spring of fresh water, which was much wanted, was any where to be found within the walls of the convent. Eminent as our philosophers were, they were puzzled by these questions.

Lieutenant Cook, having laid in a fresh stock of beef, water, and wine, set sail from the Island of Madeira in the night of the 18th of September, and proceeded on his voyage. By the 7th of November, several articles of the ship's provisions began to fall short; for which reason, the lieutenant determined to put into Rio de Janeiro. This place he preferred to any other port in Brazil, or to Falkland's Islands, because he could there be better supplied with what he wanted, and had no doubt of meeting with a friendly reception.

During the run between Madeira and Rio de Janeiro, Lieutenant Cook and the gentlemen in the Endeavour had an opportunity of determining a philosophical question. On the evening of the 20th of October, they observed that luminous appearance of the sea which hath so often been mentioned by navigators, and which has been ascribed to such a variety of causes. Flashes of light appeared to be emitted, exactly resembling those of lightning, though without being so considerable; and such was the frequency of them, that sometimes eight or ten were visible almost at the same moment. It was the opinion of Mr. Cook and the other gentlemen that these flashes proceeded from some luminous animal, and their opinion was confirmed by experiment.

At Rio de Janeiro, in the port of which Lieutenant Cook came to anchor on the 13th of November, he did not meet with the polite reception that perhaps he had too sanguinely expected. His stay was spent in continual altercations with the viceroy, who appeared not a little jealous of the designs of the Eng-

lish ; nor were all the attempts of the lieutenant to set the matter right capable of producing any effect. The viceroy was by no means distinguished either by his knowledge or his love of science, and the grand object of Mr. Cook's expedition was quite beyond his comprehension. When he was told that the English were bound to the southward, by the order of his Britannic Majesty, to observe a transit of the planet Venus over the Sun, an astronomical phenomenon of great importance to navigation, he could form no other conception of the matter, than that it was the passing of the North Star through the South Pole.

During the whole of the contest with the viceroy, Lieutenant Cook behaved with equal spirit and discretion. A supply of water and other necessaries could not be refused him, and these were got on board by the 1st of December. On that day the lieutenant sent to the viceroy for a pilot to carry the Endeavour to sea ; but the wind preventing the ship from getting out, she was obliged to continue some time longer in the harbour. A Spanish packet having arrived at Rio de Janeiro on the 2nd of December, with despatches from Buenos Ayres for Spain, the commander, Don Antonio de Monte Negro y Velasco, offered, with great politeness, to convey the letters of the English to Europe. This favour Lieutenant Cook accepted, and gave Antonio a packet for the secretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had passed between himself and the viceroy. He left also duplicates with the viceroy, that he might forward them, if he thought proper to Lisbon.

On the 5th of December, it being a dead calm, our navigators weighed anchor, and towed down the bay ; but, to their great astonishment, two shots were fired at them when they had gotten abreast of Santa Cruz, the principal fortification of the harbour. Lieutenant Cook immediately cast anchor, and sent to the fort to demand the reason of this conduct ; the answer to which was, that the commandant had re-

ceived no order from the viceroy to let the ship pass ; and that without such an order, no vessel was ever suffered to go below the fort. It now became necessary to send to the viceroy to inquire why the order had not been given ; and his behaviour appeared the more extraordinary, as notice had been transmitted to him of the departure of the English, and he had thought proper to write a polite letter to Mr. Cook, wishing him a good voyage. The lieutenant's messenger soon returned with the information that the order had been written several days, and that its not having been sent had arisen from some unaccountable negligence. It was not till the 7th of December that the Endeavour got under sail.

In the account which Lieutenant Cook has given of RiodeJaneiro, and the country round it, one circumstance is recorded, which cannot be otherwise than very painful to humanity—it is the horrid expense of life at which the gold mines are wrought. No less than forty thousand negroes are annually imported for this purpose on the king of Portugal's account ; and the English were credibly informed that in the year 1766, this number fell so short, that twenty thousand more were drafted from the town of Rio.

From Rio de Janeiro, Lieutenant Cook pursued his voyage, and, on the 14th of January, 1769, entered the Strait of Le Maire, at which time the tide drove the ship out with so much violence, and raised such a sea off Cape St. Diego, that she frequently pitched so, that the bowsprit was under water. On the next day, the lieutenant anchored, first before a small cove, which was understood to be Port Maurice, and afterwards in the Bay of Good Success. While the Endeavour was in this station, happened the memorable adventure of Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon, and Mr. Green, the astronomer, together with their attendants and servants, and two seamen, in ascending a mountain to search for plants. In this expedition they were all of them exposed to

the utmost extremity of danger and of cold. Dr. Solander was seized with a torpor which had nearly proved fatal to his life, and two black servants actually died. When the gentlemen had at length on the second day of their adventure, got back to the ship, they congratulated each other on their safety with a joy that can only be felt by those who have experienced equal perils, and Mr. Cook was relieved from a very painful anxiety. It was a dreadful testimony of the severity of the climate that this event took place when it was the midst of summer in that part of the world, and at the close of a day, the beginning of which was as mild and warm as the month of May usually is in England.

In the passage through the Strait of Le Maire, Lieutenant Cook and his ingenious associates had an opportunity of gaining a considerable degree of acquaintance with the inhabitants of the adjoining country. Here it was that they saw human nature in its lowest form. The natives appeared to be the most destitute and forlorn, as well as the most stupid, of the children of men. Their lives are spent in wandering about the dreary waters that surround them; and their dwellings are no other than wretched hovels of sticks and grass, which not only admit the wind, but the snow and the rain. They are almost naked: and so devoid are they of every convenience which is furnished by the rudest art, that they have not so much as an implement to dress their food. Nevertheless they seemed to have no wish for acquiring more than they possessed; nor did any thing that was offered them by the English appear acceptable but beads, as an ornamental superfluity of life. A conclusion is hence drawn by Dr. Hawksworth, that these people may be upon a level with ourselves in respect to the happiness they enjoy. This, however is a position which ought not hastily to be admitted. It is indeed a beautiful circumstance in the order of Divine Providence, that the rudest inhabitants of

the earth, and those who are situated in the most unfavourable climates, should not be sensible of their disadvantages : but still it must be allowed that their happiness is greatly inferior, both in kind and degree, to that intellectual, social, and moral felicity which is capable of being attained in a highly-cultivated state of society.

In voyages to the South Pacific Ocean, the determination of the best passage from the Atlantic is a point of peculiar importance. It is well known what prodigious difficulties were experienced in this respect by former navigators. The doubling of Cape Horn, in particular, was so much dreaded, that, in the general opinion, it was far more eligible to pass through the Straits of Magelhaens. Lieut. Cook hath fully ascertained the erroneousness of this opinion. He was but three and thirty days in coming round the land of Terra del Fuego, from the east entrance of the Strait of Le Maire, till he had advanced about twelve degrees to the westward, and three and a half to the northward of the Strait of Magellan ; and during this time the ship scarcely received any damage. Whereas, if he had come into the Pacific Ocean by that passage, he would not have been able to accomplish it in less than three months ; besides which, his people would have been fatigued, and the anchors, cables, sails, and rigging of the vessel much injured. By the course he pursued, none of these inconveniences were suffered. In short, Lieut. Cook, by his own example in doubling Cape Horn, by his accurate ascertainment of the latitude and longitude of the places he came to, and by his instructions to future voyagers, performed the most essential services to this part of navigation.

It was on the 26th of January that the Endeavour took her departure from Cape Horn ; and it appeared that, from that time to the 1st of March, during a run of six hundred and sixty leagues, there was no current which effected the ship. Hence it

was highly probable that our navigators had been near no land of any considerable extent, currents being always found when land is not remote.

In the prosecution of Lieut. Cook's voyage from Cape Horn to Otaheite, several islands were discovered, to which the names were given of Lagoon Island, Thrump-cap, Bow Island, The Groups, Bird Island, and Chain Island. It appeared that most of these islands were inhabited; and the verdure, and groves of palm-trees which were visible upon some of them, gave them the aspect of a terrestrial paradise to men, who, excepting the dreary hills of Terra del Fuego, had seen nothing for a long time but sky and water.

On the 11th of April, the Endeavour arrived in sight of Otaheite, and on the 13th she came to an anchor in Port Royal Bay, which is called Matavia by the natives. As the stay of the English in the island was not likely to be very short, and much depended on the manner in which traffic should be carried on with the inhabitants, Lieut. Cook, with great good sense and humanity, drew up a set of regulations for the behaviour of his people, and gave it in command that they should be punctually observed.

The rules were as follow:—“1. To endeavour, by every fair means, to cultivate a friendship with the natives, and to treat them with all imaginable humanity. 2. A proper person or persons will be appointed to trade with the natives for all manner of provisions, fruit, and other productions of the earth; and no officer or seaman, or other person belonging to the ship, excepting such as are so appointed, shall trade, or offer to trade, for any sort of provisions, fruit, or other productions of the earth, unless they have leave so to do. 3. Every person employed on shore, on any duty whatsoever, is strictly to attend to the same: and if by any neglect he loseth any of his arms, or working tools, or suffers them to be stolen, the full value thereof will be charged against

his pay, according to the custom of the navy in such cases; and he shall receive such further punishment as the nature of the offence may deserve. 4. The same penalty will be inflicted on every person who is found to embezzle, trade, or offer to trade, with any part of the ship's stores, of what nature soever. 5. No sort of iron, or any thing that is made of iron, or any sort of cloth, or other useful or necessary articles, are to be given in exchange for any thing but provisions.—J. COOK.”

One of the first things that occupied the lieutenant's attention, after his arrival at Otaheite, was to prepare for the execution of his grand commission. For this purpose, as in an excursion to the westward, he had not found any more convenient harbour than that in which the Endeavour lay, he determined to go on shore and fix upon some spot, commanded by the guns of the ship, where he might throw up a small fort for defence, and get every thing ready for making the astronomical observation. Accordingly he took a party of men, and landed, being accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Green. They soon fixed upon a place very proper for their design, and which was at a considerable distance from any habitation of the natives. While the gentlemen were marking out the ground which they intended to occupy, and seeing a small tent erected that belonged to Mr. Banks, a great number of the people of the country gathered gradually around them, but with no hostile appearance, as there was not among the Indians a single weapon of any kind. Mr. Cook, however, intimated that none of them were to come within the line he had drawn, excepting one, who appeared to be a chief, and Owahaw, a native who had attached himself to the English, both in Captain Wallis's expedition, and in the present voyage. The lieutenant endeavoured to make these two persons understand that the ground which had been marked out was only wanted to sleep upon for

a certain number of nights, and that then it would be quitted. Whether his meaning was comprehended or not, he could not certainly determine; but the people behaved with a deference and respect that could scarcely have been expected, and which were highly pleasing. They sat down without the circle, peaceably and uninterruptedly attending to the progress of the business, which was upwards of two hours in completing.

This matter being finished, and Mr. Cook having appointed thirteen marines and a petty officer to guard the tent, he and the gentlemen with him set out upon a little excursion into the woods of the country. They had not, however, gone far, before they were brought back by a very disagreeable event. One of the Indians who remained about the tent after the lieutenant and his friends had left it, watched the opportunity of taking the sentry at unawares, and snatched away his musket. Upon this, the petty officer who commanded the party, and who was a midshipman, ordered the marines to fire. With equal want of consideration, and perhaps with equal inhumanity, the men immediately discharged their pieces among the thickest of the flying crowd, which consisted of more than a hundred. It being observed that the chief did not fall, he was pursued and shot dead. From subsequent information it happily appeared that none of the natives besides were either killed or wounded.

Lieutenant Cook, who was highly displeased with the conduct of the petty officer, used every method in his power to dispel the terrors and apprehensions of the Indians, but not immediately with effect. The next morning but few of the inhabitants were seen upon the beach, and not one of them came off to the ship. What added particularly to the regret of the English was, that even Owahaw, who had hitherto been so constant in his attachment, and who the day before had been remarkably active in endeavouring to

renew the peace which had been broken, did not now make his appearance. In the evening, however, when the lieutenant went on shore with only a boat's crew and some of the gentlemen, between thirty and forty of the natives gathered around them, and trafficked with them in a friendly manner for coconuts and other fruit.

On the 17th, Mr. Cook and Mr. Green set up a tent on shore, and spent the night there, in order to observe an eclipse of the first satellite of Jupiter; but they met with a disappointment in consequence of the weather becoming cloudy. The next day, the lieutenant, with as many of his people as could possibly be spared from the ship, began to erect the fort. While the English were employed in this business, many of the Indians were so far from hindering, that they voluntarily assisted them, and with great alacrity brought the pickets and fascines from the wood where they had been cut. Indeed, so scrupulous had Mr. Cook been of invading their property, that every stake which was used was purchased, and not a tree was cut down till their consent had first been obtained.

On the 26th, the lieutenant mounted six swivel guns upon the fort, on which occasion he saw with concern that the natives were alarmed and terrified. Some fishermen, who lived upon the point, removed to a greater distance: and Owhaw informed the English, by signs, of his expectation that in four days they would fire their great guns.

The lieutenant, on the succeeding day, gave a striking proof of his regard to justice, and of his care to preserve the inhabitants from injury and violence, by the punishment he inflicted on the butcher of the Endeavour, who was accused of having threatened or attempted the life of a woman that was the wife of Tubourai Tamaide, a chief remarkable for his attachment to our navigators. The butcher wanted to purchase of her a stone hatchet for a nail. To

this bargain she absolutely refused to accede; upon which the fellow caught up the hatchet, and threw down the nail, threatening, at the same time, that if she made any resistance, he would cut her throat with a reaping-hook which he had in his hand. The charge was so fully proved in the presence of Mr. Banks, and the butcher had so little to say in exculpation of himself, that not the least doubt remained of his guilt. The affair being reported by Mr. Banks to Lieutenant Cook, he took an opportunity, when the chief and his woman, with others of the natives were on board the ship, to call up the offender, and, after recapitulating the accusation and the proof of it, to give orders for his immediate punishment. While the butcher was stripped, and tied up to the rigging, the Indians preserved a fixed attention, and waited for the event in silent suspense. But as soon as the first stroke was inflicted, such was the humanity of those people, that they interfered with great agitation, and earnestly entreated that the rest of the punishment might be remitted. To this, however, the lieutenant, for various reasons, could not grant his consent; and when they found that their intercessions were ineffectual, they manifested their compassion by tears.

On the 1st of May the observatory was set up, and the astronomical quadrant, together with some other instruments, were taken on shore. When, on the next morning, Mr Cook and Mr. Green landed for the purpose of fixing the quadrant in a situation for use, to their inexpressible surprise and concern it was not to be found. It had been deposited in a tent reserved for the lieutenant's use, where no one had slept. It had never been taken out of the packing-case, and the whole was of considerable weight: none of the other instruments were missing: and a sentinel had been posted the whole night within five yards of the tent. These circumstances induced a suspicion that the robbery might have been com-

mitted by some of our own people, who having seen a deal box, and not knowing the contents, might imagine that it contained nails, or other articles of traffic with the natives. The most diligent search, therefore, was made, and a large reward was offered for the finding of the quadrant, but with no degree of success. In this exigency Mr. Banks was of eminent service. As this gentleman had more influence over the Indians than any other person on board the Endeavour, and as there could now be little doubt of the quadrant having been conveyed away by some of the natives, he determined to go in search of it in the woods; and it was recovered in consequence of his judicious and spirited exertions. The pleasure with which it was brought back was equal to the importance of the event, for the grand object of the voyage could not otherwise have been accomplished.

Another embarrassment, though not of so serious a nature, was occasioned, on the very same day, by one of our officers having inadvertently taken into custody Tootahah, a chief who had connected himself in the most friendly manner with the English. Lieutenant Cook, who had given express orders that none of the Indians should be confined, and who, therefore, was equally surprised and concerned at this transaction, instantly set Tootahah at liberty. So strongly had this Indian been possessed with the notion that it was intended to put him to death, that he could not be persuaded to the contrary till he was led out of the fort. His joy at his deliverance was so great, that it displayed itself in a liberality which our people were very unwilling to partake of, from a consciousness that on this occasion they had no claim to the reception of favours. The impression, however, of the confinement of the chief, operated with such force upon the minds of the natives, that few of them appeared; and the market was so ill supplied that the English were in want of necessa-

ries. At length, by the prudent exertions of Lieut. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, the friendship of Tootahah was completely recovered, and the reconciliation worked upon the Indians like a charm; for it was no sooner known that he had gone voluntarily on board the Endeavour, than bread-fruit cocoa-nuts, and other provisions, were brought to the fort in great plenty.

The Lieutenant and the rest of the gentlemen had hitherto, with a laudable discretion, bartered only beads for the articles of food now mentioned. But the market becoming slack, they were obliged for the first time, on the 8th of May, to bring out their nails; and such was the effect of this new commodity, that one of the smallest size, which was about four inches long, procured twenty cocoa-nuts, and bread fruit in proportion.

It was not till the 10th of that month that our voyagers learned that the Indian name of the island was *Otaheite*, by which name it has since been distinguished.

On Sunday the 14th, an instance was exhibited of the inattention of the natives to our modes of religion. The lieutenant had directed that divine service should be performed at the fort, and he was desirous that some of the principal Indians should be present. Mr. Banks secured the attendance of Tubourai Tamai and his wife Tomio, hoping that it would give occasion to some enquiries on their part, and to some instruction in return. During the whole service they very attentively observed Mr. Banks' behaviour, and stood, sat, or knelt, as they saw him do; and they appeared to be sensible that it was a serious and important employment in which the English were engaged. But when the worship was ended, neither of them asked any questions, nor would they attend to any explanations which were attempted to be given of what had been performed.

As the day approached for executing the grand

purpose of the voyage, Lieutenant Cook determined, in consequence of some hints which he had received from the Earl of Morton to send out two parties to observe the transit of Venus from other situations. By this means he hoped that the success of the observation would be secured, if there should happen to be any failure in Otaheite. Accordingly, on Thursday, the 1st of June, he dispatched Mr. Gore in the long-boat to Eimeo, a neighbouring island, together with Mr. Monkhouse and Mr. Sporing, a gentleman belonging to Mr. Banks. They were furnished by Mr. Green with proper instruments. Mr. Banks himself chose to go upon this expedition, in which he was accompanied by Tubourai Tamaide, and Tomio, and by others of the natives. Early the next morning the lieutenant sent Mr. Hicks in the pinnace with Mr. Clerk, Mr. Pickersgill, and Mr. Saunders, one of the midshipmen, ordering them to fix upon some convenient spot to the eastward, at a distance from the principal observatory, where they also might employ the instruments they were provided with for observing the transit.

The anxiety for such weather as would be favourable to the success of the experiment was powerfully felt by all the parties concerned. They could not sleep in peace the preceding night; but their apprehensions were happily removed by the sun's rising, on the morning of the 3rd of June, without a cloud. The weather continued with equal clearness through the whole of the day; so that the observation was successfully made in every quarter. At the fort, where Lieutenant Cook, Mr. Green, and Dr. Solander were stationed, the whole passage of the planet Venus over the sun's disc was observed with great advantage. The magnifying power of Dr. Solander's telescope was superior to that of those which belonged to the lieutenant and to Mr. Green. They all saw an atmosphere or dusky cloud round the body of the planet, which much disturbed the times of the con-

tact, and especially of the internal ones. and in their accounts of these times they differed from each other in a greater degree than might have been expected. According to Mr. Green,

	<i>Morning.</i>		
	h.	min.	sec.
The first external contact, or first appearance of Venus on the sun, was .....	9	25	42
The first internal contact or total immersion, was.....	9	44	4
The second internal contact, or beginning of the immersion, was.....	3	14	8
The second external contact, or total immersion, was.....	3	32	10

The latitude of the observatory was found to be 17 deg. 29 min. 15 sec., and the longitude 149 deg. 32 min. 30 sec. west of Greenwich.

A more particular account of this great astronomical event, the providing for the accurate observation of which reflects so much honour on his majesty's munificent patronage of science, may be seen in the sixty-first volume of the Philosophical Transactions.

The pleasure which Lieutenant Cook and his friends derived from having thus successfully accomplished the first grand object of the voyage, was not a little abated by the conduct of some of the ship's company, who while the attention of the officers was engrossed by the transit of Venus, broke into one of the store-rooms, and stole a quantity of spike-nails, amounting to no less than a hundred weight. This was an evil of a public and serious nature; for these nails, if injudiciously circulated among the Indians, would be productive of irreparable injury to the English, by reducing the value of iron, their staple commodity. One of the thieves, from whom only seven nails were recovered, was detected; but though the punishment of two dozen lashes was inflicted

upon him, he would not impeach any of his accomplices.

Upon account of the absence of the two parties who had been sent out to observe the transit, the king's birth-day was celebrated on the 5th, instead of the 4th of June: and the festivity of the day must have been greatly heightened by the happy success with which his majesty's liberality had been crowned.

On the 12th, Lieutenant Cook was again reduced to the necessity of exercising the severity of discipline. Complaint having been made to him, by certain of the natives, that two of the seamen had taken from them several bows and arrows, and some strings of plaited hair; and the charge being fully supported, he punished each of the criminals with two dozen lashes.

On the same day it was discovered that Otaheite, like other countries in a certain period of society, has its bards, and its minstrels. Mr. Banks, in his morning's walk, had met with a number of the natives, who appeared, upon inquiry, to be travelling musicians; and having learned where they were to be at night, all the gentlemen of the Endeavour repaired to the place. The band consisted of two flutes and three drums, and the drummers accompanied the music with their voices. To the surprise of the English gentlemen, they found that themselves were generally the subject of the song, which was unpremeditated. These minstrels were continually going about from place to place; and they were rewarded, by the master of the house and the audience, with such things as they wanted.

The repeated thefts which were committed by the inhabitants of Otaheite brought our voyagers into frequent difficulties, and it required all the wisdom of Lieutenant Cook to conduct himself in a proper manner. His sentiments on the subject displayed the liberality of his mind. He thought it of consequence to put an end, if possible, to thievish practices at

once, by doing something that should engage the natives in general to prevent them, from a regard to their common interest. Strict orders had been given by him that they should not be fired upon, even when they were detected in attempting to steal any of the English property. For this the lieutenant had many reasons. The common sentinels were in no degree fit to be entrusted with the power of life and death, neither did Mr. Cook think that the thefts committed by the Otaheitans deserved so severe a punishment. They were not born under the law of England; nor was it one of the conditions under which they claimed the benefits of civil society, that their lives should be forfeited unless they abstained from theft. As the lieutenant was not willing that the natives should be exposed to fire-arms loaded with shot, neither did he approve of firing only with powder, which, if repeatedly found to be harmless, would at length be despised. At a time when a considerable robbery had been committed, an accident furnished him with what he hoped would be a happy expedient for preventing future attempts of the same kind. Above twenty of the sailing canoes of the inhabitants came in with a supply of fish. Upon these Lieutenant Cook immediately seized, and having brought them into the river behind the fort, gave notice, that unless the things which had been stolen were returned, the canoes should be burnt. This menace, without designing to put it into execution, he ventured to publish, from a full conviction, that as restitution was thus made a common cause, the stolen goods would all of them be speedily brought back. In this however he was mistaken. An iron coal-rake indeed was returned, upon which great solicitation was made for the release of the canoes; but he still insisted on his original condition. When the next day came he was much surprised to find that nothing further had been returned; and as the people were in the utmost distress for the fish, which would in a

short time be spoiled, he was reduced to the disagreeable alternative, either of releasing the canoes, contrary to what he had solemnly and publicly declared, or of detaining them, to the great damage of those who were innocent. As a temporary expedient he permitted the natives to take the fish, but still detained the canoes. So far was this measure from being attended with advantage, that it was productive of new confusion and injury: for as it was not easy at once to distinguish to what particular persons the several lots of fish belonged, the canoes were plundered by those who had no right to any part of their cargo. At length, most pressing instances being still made for the restoration of the canoes, and Lieutenant Cook having reason to believe, either that the things for which he detained them were not in the island, or that those who suffered by their detention were absolutely incapable of prevailing upon the thieves to relinquish their booty, he determined, though not immediately, to comply with the solicitations of the natives. Our commander was, however, not a little mortified at the ill success of his project.

About the same time, another accident occurred, which, notwithstanding all the caution of our principal voyagers, was very near embroiling them with the Indians. The lieutenant having sent a boat on shore to get ballast for the ship, the officer, not immediately finding stones suitable to the purpose, began to pull down some part of an enclosure in which the inhabitants had deposited the bones of their dead. This action a number of the natives violently opposed: and a messenger came down from the tents to acquaint the gentlemen that no such thing would be suffered. Mr. Banks directly repaired to the place, and soon put an amicable end to the contest, by sending a boat's crew to the river, where a sufficient quantity of stones might be gathered without a possibility of giving offence. These Indians appeared to be much more alarmed at any

injury which they apprehended to be done to the dead than to the living. This was the only measure in which they ventured to oppose the English, and the only insult that was ever offered to any individual belonging to the Endeavour was upon a similar occasion. It should undoubtedly be the concern of all voyagers to abstain from wantonly offending the religious prejudices of the people among whom they come.

To extend the knowledge of navigation and the sphere of discovery, objects which we need not say that Lieutenant Cook kept always steadily in view; he set out in the pinnace, on the 26th of June, accompanied by Mr. Banks, to make the circuit of the island; during which the lieutenant and his companions were thrown into great alarm by the apprehended loss of the boat. By this expedition Mr. Cook obtained acquaintance with the several districts of Otaheite, the chiefs who presided over them, and a variety of curious circumstances respecting the manners and customs of the inhabitants. On the 1st of July he got back to the fort of Matavia, having found the circuit of the island, including the two peninsulas of which it consisted, to be about thirty leagues.

The circumnavigation of Otaheite was followed by an expedition of Mr. Banks to trace the river up the valley from which it issues, and examine how far its banks were inhabited. During this excursion he discerned many traces of subterraneous fire. The stones, like those of Madeira, displayed evident tokens of having been burnt; and the very clay upon the hills had the same appearance.

Another valuable employment of Mr. Banks was the planting of a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, lemons, limes, and other plants and trees, which he had collected at Rio de Janeiro. For these he prepared ground on each side of the fort, and selected as many varieties of soil as

could be found. He also gave liberally of these seeds to the natives, and planted many of them in the woods.

Lieutenant Cook now began to prepare for his departure. On the 7th of July, the carpenters were employed in taking down the gates and palisadoes of the fortification, and it was continued to be dismantled during the two following days. Our commander and the rest of the gentlemen were in hopes that they should quit Otaheite without giving or receiving any further offence; but in this respect they were unfortunately disappointed. The lieutenant had prudently overlooked a dispute of a smaller nature between a couple of foreign seamen and some of the Indians, when he was immediately involved in a quarrel which he greatly regretted, and which yet it was totally out of his power to avoid. In the middle of the night, between the 8th and 9th, Clement Webb and Samuel Gibson, two of the marines, went privately from the fort. As they were not to be found in the morning, Mr. Cook was apprehensive that they intended to stay behind; but being unwilling to endanger the harmony and good-will which at present subsisted between our people and the natives, he determined to wait a day for the chance of the men's return. As, to the great concern of the lieutenant, the marines were not come back on the morning of the 10th, inquiry was made after them of the Indians, who acknowledged that each of them had taken a wife, and had resolved to become inhabitants of the country. After some deliberation, two of the natives undertook to conduct such persons to the place of the deserters' retreat as Mr. Cook should think proper to send, and accordingly he dispatched with the guides a petty officer and the corporal of marines. As it was of the utmost importance to recover the men, and to do it speedily, it was intimated to several of the chiefs who were in the fort with the women among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and

Obera, that they would not be permitted to leave it till the fugitives were returned; and the lieutenant had the pleasure of observing that they received the intimation with very little indications of alarm, and with assurances that his people should be secured and sent back as soon as possible. While this transaction took place at the fort, our commander sent Mr. Hicks in the pinnace to fetch Tootahah on board the ship. Mr. Cook had reason to expect, if the Indian guides proved faithful, that the deserters, and those who went in search of them, would return before the evening. Being disappointed, his suspicions increased, and thinking it not safe, when the night approached, to let the persons whom he had detained as hostages continue at the fort, he ordered Tubourai Tamaide, Obera, and some others, to be taken on board the Endeavour—a circumstance which excited so general an alarm, that several of them, and especially the women, expressed their apprehensions with great emotion and many tears. Webb, about nine o'clock, was brought back by some of the natives, who declared that Gibson, and the petty officer and the corporal, would not be restored till Tootahah should be set at liberty. Lieutenant Cook now found that the tables were turned upon him; but having proceeded too far to retreat, he immediately dispatched Mr. Hicks in the long-boat, with a strong party of men, to rescue the prisoners. Tootahah was at the same time informed that it behoved him to send some of his people with them, for the purpose of affording them effectual assistance. With this injunction he readily complied, and the prisoners were restored without the least opposition. On the next day they were brought back to the ship, upon which the chiefs were released from their confinement. Thus ended an affair which had given the lieutenant a great deal of trouble and concern. It appears, however, that the measure which he pursued was the result of an absolute necessity, since it was only

by the seizure of the chiefs that he could have recovered his men. Love was the seducer of the two marines. So strong was the attachment which they had formed to a couple of girls, that it was their design to conceal themselves till the ship had sailed, and to take up their residence in the island.

Tupia was one of the natives who had so particularly devoted himself to the English, that he had scarcely ever been absent from them during the whole of their stay at Otaheite. He had been Oberea's first minister while she was in the height of her power, and he was also chief priest of the country. To his knowledge of the religious principles and ceremonies of the Indians he added great experience in navigation, and a particular acquaintance with the number and situation of the neighbouring islands. This man had often expressed a desire to go with our navigators, and when they were ready to depart, he came on board with a boy about thirteen years of age, and entreated that he might be permitted to proceed with them on their voyage. To have such a person in the Endeavour was desirable on many accounts, and therefore Lieutenant Cook gladly acceded to his proposal.

On the 13th of July, the English weighed anchor, and as soon as the ship was under sail, the Indians on board took their leave, and wept, with a decent and silent sorrow, in which there was something very striking and tender. Tupia sustained himself in this scene with a truly admirable firmness and resolution; for, though he wept, the effort he made to conceal his tears concurred with them to do him honour.

The stay of our travellers at Otaheite was three months, the greater part of which time was spent in the most cordial friendship with the inhabitants, and a perpetual reciprocation of good offices. That any differences should happen was greatly regretted on the part of Lieutenant Cook and his friends, who were studious to avoid them as much as possible.

The principal causes of them resulted from the peculiar situation and circumstances of the English and the Indians, and especially from the disposition of the latter to theft. The effects of this disposition could not always be submitted to or prevented. It was happy, however, that there was only a single instance in which the differences that arose were attended with any fatal consequence; and by that accident the lieutenant was instructed to take the most effectual measures for the future prevention of similar events. He had nothing so much at heart as that in no case the intercourse of his people with the natives should be productive of bloodshed.

The traffic with the inhabitants for provisions and refreshments, which was chiefly under the management of Mr. Banks, was carried on with as much order as in any well regulated market in Europe. Axes, hatchets, spikes, large nails, looking-glasses, knives and beads, were found to be the best articles to deal in; and, for some of these every thing which the inhabitants possessed might be procured. They were indeed fond of fine linen cloth, whether white or printed; but an axe worth half a crown would fetch more than a piece of cloth of the value of twenty shillings.

It would deviate from the plan of this narrative to enter into a minute account of the nature, productions, inhabitants, customs, and manners of the countries which were discovered or visited by Mr. Cook; or to give a particular detail of every nautical, geographical, and astronomical observation. It will be sufficient here to take notice, that our commander did not depart from Otaheite without accumulating a store of information and instruction for the enlargement of knowledge, and the benefit of navigation.

While the Endeavour proceeded on her voyage under an easy sail, Tupia informed Lieutenant Cook, that at four of the neighbouring islands, which he distinguished by the names of Huaheine, Ulietea,

Otaha, and Bolabola, hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, which had latterly been sparingly supplied at Otaheite, might be procured in great plenty. The lieutenant, however, was desirous of first examining an island that lay to the northward, and was called Tethuroa. Accordingly he came near it; and having found it to be only a small low island, and being told at the same time that it had no settled inhabitants, he determined to drop any further examination of it, and to go in search of Huaheine and Ulietea, which were described to be well peopled, and as large as Otaheite.

On the 15th of July, the weather being hazy, with light breezes, and calms succeeding each other, so that no land could be seen, and little way was made, Tupia afforded an amusing proof that, in the exercise of his priestly character, he knew how to unite some degree of art with his superstition. He often prayed for a wind to his god Tane, and as often boasted of his success. This, indeed, he took a most effectual method to secure: for he never began his address to his divinity till he perceived the breeze to be so near, that he knew it must approach the ship before his supplications could well be brought to a conclusion.

The Endeavour, on the 10th, being close in with the north-west part of Huaheine, some canoes soon came off, in one of which was the king of the island and his wife. At first the people seemed afraid, but upon seeing Tupia, their apprehensions were in part dispersed, and at length, in consequence of frequent and earnestly repeated assurances of friendship, their majesties and several others ventured on board their ship. Their astonishment at every thing which was shown them was very great; and yet their curiosity did not extend to any objects but what were particularly pointed out to their notice. When they had become more familiar, Mr. Cook was given to understand that the king was called Oree, and that

he proposed, as a mark of amity, their making an exchange of their names. To this our commander readily consented; and, during the remainder of their being together, the lieutenant was Oree, and his majesty was Cookee. In the afternoon, the Endeavour having come to an anchor, in a small but excellent harbour on the west side of the island, the name of which was Owharre, Mr. Cook, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Monkhouse, and the natives who had been on board ever since the morning, immediately went on shore. The English gentlemen repeated their excursions on the two following days, in the course of which they found that the people of Huaheine had a very near resemblance to those of Otaheite in person, dress, language, and every other circumstance; and that the productions of the country were exactly similar.

In trafficking with our people, the inhabitants of Huaheine displayed a caution and hesitation which rendered the dealing with them slow and tedious. On the 19th, therefore, the English were obliged to bring out some hatchets, which it was at first hoped there would be no occasion for in an island that had never before been visited by any European. These procured three very large hogs: and as it was proposed to sail in the afternoon, Oree and several others, came on board to take their leave. To the king Mr. Cook gave a small pewter plate, on which was stamped this inscription; "His Britannic Majesty's ship Endeavour, Lieutenant James Cook, commander, 16th July, 1769, Huaheine." Among other presents made to Oree were some medals or counters resembling the coin of England, and struck in the year 1761, all of which, and particularly the plate, he promised carefully and inviolably to preserve. This the lieutenant thought to be as lasting a testimony as any he could well provide, that the English had first discovered the island; and having dismissed his visitors, who were highly pleased with the treatment they

had met with, he sailed for Ulietea, in a good harbour of which he anchored the next day.

Tupia had expressed his apprehension that our navigators, if they landed upon the island, would be exposed to the attacks of the men of Bolabola, whom he represented as having lately conquered it, and of whom he entertained a very formidable idea. This, however, did not deter Mr. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the other gentlemen, from going immediately on shore. Tupia, who was of the party, introduced them by performing some ceremonies which he had practised before at Huaheine. After this the lieutenant hoisted an English jack, and, in the name of his Britannic Majesty, took possession of Ulietea, and the three neighbouring Islands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, all of which were in sight.

On the 21st the master was dispatched in the long-boat to examine the coast of the south part of the island, and one of the mates was sent in the yawl to sound the harbour where the Endeavour lay. At the same time Lieut. Cook went himself in the pinnace, to survey that part of Ulietea, which lies to the north. Mr. Banks likewise, and the gentlemen, again went on shore, and employed themselves in trading with the natives, and in examining the productions and curiosities of the country; but they saw nothing worthy of notice, excepting some human jaw-bones, which, like scalps among the Indians of North America, were trophies of war, and had probably been hung up by the warriors of Bolabola, as a memorial of their conquest.

The weather being hazy on the 22d and 23d, with strong gales, the lieutenant did not venture to put to sea; but on the 24th, though the wind continued to be variable, he got under sail, and plied to the northward within the reef, proposing to go out at a wider opening than that by which he had entered the harbour. However, in doing this, he was in imminent

danger of striking on the rock. The master, who by his order had kept continually sounding in the chains, suddenly called out "two fathom." Though our commander knew that the ship drew at least fourteen feet, and consequently that the shoal could not possibly be under her keel, he was nevertheless justly alarmed. Happily the master was either mistaken, or the Endeavour went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which, in the neighbourhood of these islands, are as steep as a wall.

After a tedious navigation of some days, during which several small islands were seen, and the long boat landed at Otaha, Lieutenant Cook returned to Ulietea, but to a different part of it from that which he had visited before. In a harbour belonging to the west side of the island, he came to an anchor on the 1st of August. This measure was necessary, in order to stop a leak which the ship had sprung in the powder-room, and to take in more ballast, as she was found too light to carry sail upon a wind. The place where the Endeavour was secured, was conveniently situated for the lieutenant's purpose of obtaining ballast and water.

Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the gentlemen who went on shore this day, spent their time much to their satisfaction. The reception they met was respectful in the highest degree, and the behaviour of the Indians to the English indicated a fear of them mixed with confidence that they had no propensity to commit any kind of injury. In an intercourse which the lieutenant and his friends carried on for several days with the inhabitants of this part of the island, it appeared that the terrors which Tupia had expressed of the Bolabola conquerors, were wholly groundless. Even Opoony, the formidable king of Bolabola, treated our navigators with respect. Being at Ulietea on the 5th of August, he sent Mr. Cook a present of three hogs, some fowls, and several pieces of cloth of uncommon length, together with a consi-

derable quantity of plantains, cocoa-nuts, and other refreshments. This present was accompanied with a message, that on the next day he intended to pay our commander a visit. Accordingly, on the 6th, the lieutenant and the rest of the gentlemen all staid at home in expectation of this important visitor, who did not, however, make his appearance, but sent three very pretty girls as his messengers, to demand something in return for his present. In the afternoon, as the great king would not go to the English, the English determined to go to the great king. From the account which had been given of him as lord of the Bolabola men, who were the conquerors of Ulietea and the terror of all the other islands, Lieut. Cook and his companions expected to see a young and vigorous chief, with an intelligent countenance, and the marks of an enterprising spirit; instead of which, they found a feeble wretch, withered and decrepit, half blind with age, and so sluggish and stupid, that he scarcely appeared to be possessed even of a common degree of understanding. Otaha being the principal place of Opoony's residence, he went with our navigators to that island on the next day; and they were in hopes of deriving some advantage from his influence, in obtaining such provisions as they wanted. In this respect, however, they were disappointed; for though they had presented him with an axe, as an inducement to him to encourage his subjects in dealing with them, they were obliged to leave him without having procured a single article.

The time which the carpenters had taken up in stopping the leak of the ship, having detained our voyagers longer at Ulietea than they would otherwise have staid, Lieut. Cook determined to give up the design of going on shore at Bolabola, especially as it appeared to be difficult of access. The principal islands, about which the English had now spent somewhat more than three weeks, were six in number; Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, Huaheine, Tubai, and

Maurua. As they lie contiguous to each other, the lieutenant gave them the general appellation of the Society Islands, but did not think proper to distinguish them separately by any other names than those by which they were called by the natives.

On the 9th of August, the leak of the vessel having been stopped, and the fresh stock that had been purchased, been brought on board, our commander took the opportunity of a breeze which sprang up at east, and sailed out of the harbour. As he was sailing away, Tupia strongly urged him to fire a shot towards Bolabola; and though that island was at seven leagues distance, the lieutenant obliged him by complying with his request. Tupia's views probably were to display a mark of his resentment, and to show the power of his new allies.

Our voyagers pursued their course, without meeting with any event worthy of notice, till the 13th, when land was discovered bearing south-east, and which Tupia informed them to be an island called Oheteroa. On the next day Mr. Cook sent Mr. Gore, one of his lieutenants, in the pinnace, with orders that he should endeavour to get on shore, and learn from the natives whether there was an anchorage in a bay then in sight, and what land lay further to the southward. Mr. Gore was accompanied in this expedition by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, who used every method, but in vain, to conciliate the minds of the inhabitants, and to engage them in a friendly intercourse. As, upon making the circuit of the island, neither harbour nor anchorage could be found upon it, and at the same time the disposition of the people was so hostile, that landing would be rendered impracticable without bloodshed, Mr. Cook determined, with equal wisdom and humanity, not to attempt it, having no motive that could justify the risk of life.

From Tupia our navigators learned that there were various islands lying at different distances and in

different directions from Oheteroa, between the south and the north-west; and that to the north-east there was an island called Manua, Bird Island. This he represented as being at the distance of three days' sail; but he seemed most desirous that Lieut. Cook should proceed to the westward, and described several islands in that situation which he said he had visited. It appeared from his description of them that these were Boscawen and Keppel's Islands, which were discovered by Captain Wallis. The furthest island that Tupia knew of to the southward, lay, he said, at the distance of about two days' sail from Oheteroa, and was called Moutou. But he added, that his father had informed him of there being islands still more to the south. Upon the whole, our commander determined to stand southward in search of a continent, and to lose no time in attempting to discover any other islands than such as he might happen to fall in with during his course.

On the 15th of August, our voyagers sailed from Oheteroa, and on the 25th of the same month was celebrated the anniversary of their departure from England. The comet was seen on the 30th. It was a little above the horizon, in the eastern part of the heavens, at one in the morning; and at about half an hour after four it passed the meridian, and its tail subtended an angle of forty-two degrees. Tupia, who was among others that observed the comet, instantly cried out, that as soon as it should be seen by the people of Bolabola, they would attack the inhabitants of Ulietea, who would be obliged to endeavour to preserve their lives by fleeing with the utmost precipitation to the mountains.

On the 6th of October, land was discovered, which appeared to be large. When, on the next day it was more distinctly visible, it assumed a still larger appearance, and displayed four or five ranges of hills, rising one over the other, above all of which was a chain of mountains of an enormous height. This land

naturally became the subject of much eager conversation: and the general opinion of the gentlemen on board the Endeavour was, that they had found the *Terra Australis incognita*. In fact, it was a part of New Zealand, where the first adventures the English met with were very unpleasant, on account of the hostile disposition of the inhabitants.

Lieut. Cook having anchored, on the 8th, in a bay at the entrance of a small river, went on shore in the evening, with the pinnace and yawl, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and attended by a party of men. Being desirous of conversing with some natives whom he had observed on the opposite side of the river from that on which he had landed, he ordered the yawl in, to carry himself and his companions over, and left the pinnace at the entrance. When they came near the place where the Indians were assembled, the latter all ran away; and the gentlemen, having left four boys to take care of the yawl, walked up to several huts which were about two or three hundred yards from the water-side. They had not gone very far, when four men, armed with long lances, rushed out of the wood, and running up to attack the boat, would certainly have cut her off, if they had not been discovered by the people in the pinnace, who called to the boys to drop down the stream. The boys instantly obeyed; but being closely pursued by the natives, the cockswain of the pinnace, to whom the charge of the boats was committed, fired a musket over their heads. At this they stopped and looked around them; but their alarm speedily subsiding, they brandished their lances in a threatening manner, and in a few minutes renewed the pursuit. The firing of a second musket over their heads did not draw from them any kind of notice. At last, one of them having lifted up his spear to dart at the boat, another piece was fired, by which he was shot dead. At the fall of their associate the three remaining Indians stood for a while

motionless, and seemed petrified with astonishment. No sooner had they recovered themselves, than they went back dragging after them the dead body, which however, they were obliged to leave, that it might not retard their flight. Lieut. Cook and his friends, who had straggled to a little distance from each other, were drawn together upon the report of the first musket, and returned speedily to the boat, in which having crossed the river, they soon beheld the Indian lying dead upon the ground. After their return to the ship, they could hear the people on shore talking with great earnestness, and in a very loud tone of voice.

Notwithstanding this disaster, the lieutenant, being desirous of establishing an intercourse with the natives, ordered, on the following day, three boats to be manned with seamen and marines, and proceeded towards the shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, and Tupia. About fifty of the inhabitants seemed to wait for their landing, having seated themselves upon the ground, on the opposite side of the river. This being regarded as a sign of fear, Mr. Cook, with only Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, advanced towards them; but they had not gone many paces before all the Indians started up, and every man produced either a long pike, or a small weapon of green talc. Though Tupia called to them in the language of Otaheite, they only answered by flourishing their weapons, and making signs for the gentlemen to depart. On a musket being fired wide of them they desisted from their threats; and our commander who had prudently retreated till the marines could be landed, again advanced towards them, with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, to whom were now added Mr. Green and Mr. Monkhouse. Tupia was a second time directed to speak to them, and it was perceived with great pleasure that he was perfectly understood, his and their language being the same, excepting only in a

diversity of dialect. He informed them that our voyagers only wanted provisions and water in exchange for iron, the properties of which he explained as well as he was able. Though the natives seemed willing to trade, yet Tupia was sensible, during the course of his conversation with them, that their intentions were unfriendly, and of this he repeatedly warned the English gentlemen. At length twenty or thirty of the Indians were induced to cross the river, upon which presents were made to them of iron and beads. On these they appeared to set little value, and particularly on the iron, not having the least conception of its use, so that nothing was obtained in return excepting a few feathers. Their arms, indeed, they offered to exchange for those of our voyagers, and this being refused, they made various attempts to snatch them out of their hands. Tupia was now instructed to acquaint the Indians that our gentlemen would be obliged to kill them, if they proceeded to any further violence; notwithstanding which, one of them, while Mr. Green happened to turn about, seized his hanger, and retired to a little distance with a shout of exultation. The others, at the same time, began to be extremely insolent, and more of the natives were seen coming to join them from the opposite side of the river. It being, therefore, necessary to repress them, Mr. Banks fired, with small shot at the distance of about fifteen yards, upon the man who had taken the hanger. Though he was struck, he did not return the hanger, but continued to wave it round his head, while he slowly made his retreat. Mr. Monkhouse then fired at him with ball, and he instantly dropped. So far, however, were the Indians from being sufficiently terrified, that the main body of them, who, upon the first discharge, had retired to a rock in the middle of the river, began to return, and it was with no small difficulty that Mr. Monkhouse secured the danger. The whole number of them continuing to

advance, three of the English party discharged their pieces at them, loaded only with small shot, upon which they swam back for the shore, and it appeared, upon their landing, that two or three of them were wounded. While they retired slowly up the country, Lieut. Cook and his companions re-embarked in their boats.

As the lieutenant had unhappily experienced that nothing at this place could be done with these people, and found that the water in the river was salt, he proceeded in the boats round the head of the bay, in search of fresh water. Besides this, he had formed a design of surprising some of the natives, and taking them on board, that, by kind treatment and presents, he might obtain their friendship, and render them the instruments of establishing for him an amicable intercourse with their countrymen. While, upon account of a dangerous surf which every where beat upon the shore, the boats were prevented from landing, our commander saw two canoes coming in from the sea, one under sail, and the other worked with paddles. This he thought to be a favourable opportunity for executing his purpose. Accordingly the boats were disposed in such a manner as appeared most likely to be successful in intercepting the canoes. Notwithstanding this, the Indians, in the canoe which was paddled, exerted themselves with so much vigour, at the first apprehension of danger, that they escaped to the nearest land. The other canoe sailed on without discerning the English, till she was in the midst of them; but no sooner did she discover them, than the people on board struck their sail, and plied their paddles so briskly as to outrun the boat by which they were pursued. Being within hearing, Tupia called to them to come along-side, with assurances that they should not in any degree be hurt or injured. They trusted, however, more to their own paddles than to Tupia's promises, and continued to flee from our navigators with all

their power. Mr. Cook, as the least exceptionable expedient for accomplishing his design, ordered a musket to be fired over their heads. This, he hoped, would either make them surrender or leap into the water: but it produced a contrary effect. The Indians, who were seven in number, immediately formed a resolution not to fly, but to fight. When, therefore, the boat came up, they began to attack with their paddles, and with stones and other offensive weapons; and they carried it on with so much vigour and violence, that the English thought themselves obliged to fire upon them in their own defence; the consequence of which was that four were unhappily killed. The other three, who were boys, the eldest about nineteen, and the youngest about eleven, instantly leaped into the water, and endeavoured to make their escape; but, being with some difficulty overpowered by our people, they were brought into the boat.

It is impossible to reflect upon this part of Lieut. Cook's conduct with any degree of satisfaction. He himself, upon a calm review, did not approve of it, and he was sensible that it would be censured by the feelings of every reader of humanity. It is probable that his mind was so far irritated by the disagreeable preceding events of this unfortunate day, and by the unexpected violence of the Indians in the canoe, as to lose somewhat of that self-possession by which his character in general was eminently distinguished. Candour, however, requires that I should relate what he hath offered in extenuation, not in defence, of the transaction; and this shall be done in his own words: "These people certainly did not deserve death for not choosing to confide in my promises, or not consenting to come on board my boat, even if they had apprehended no danger. But the nature of my service required me to obtain a knowledge of their country, which I could not effect otherwise than by forcing my way into it in a hostile manner, or gain

ing admission through the confidence and good-will of the people. I had already tried the power of presents without effect; and I was now prompted, by my desire to avoid further hostilities, to get some of them on board, as the only method left of convincing them that we intended them no harm, and had it in our power to contribute to their gratification and convenience. Thus far my intentions certainly were not criminal; and though in the contest, which I had not the least reason to expect, our victory might have been complete without so great an expense of life, yet in such situations, when the command of fire has been given, no man can restrain its excess, or prescribe its effects."

Our voyagers were successful in conciliating the minds of the three boys, to which Tupia particularly contributed. When their fears were allayed, and their cheerfulness returned, they sang a song with a degree of taste that surprised the English gentlemen. The tune, like those of our psalms, was solemn and slow, containing many notes and semi-tones.

Some further attempts were made to establish an intercourse with the natives, and Mr. Cook and his friends, on the 10th, went on shore for this purpose, but being unsuccessful in their endeavours, they resolved to re-embark, lest their stay should embroil them in another quarrel, and cost more of the Indians their lives. On the next day, the lieutenant weighed anchor, and stood away from this unfortunate and inhospitable place. As it had not afforded a single article that was wanted, excepting wood, he gave it the name of Poverty Bay. By the inhabitants it is called Taoueroa, or Long Sand. I shall not regularly pursue the course of our commander round New Zealand. In this course he spent nearly six months, and made large additions to the knowledge of navigation and geography. By making almost the whole circuit of New Zealand he ascertained it to be two islands, with a strength of evidence which no preju-

dice could gainsay or resist. He obtained likewise a full acquaintance with the inhabitants of the different parts of the country, with regard to whom it was clearly proved that they are eaters of human flesh. Omitting a number of minute circumstances, I shall only select a few things which mark Mr. Cook's personal conduct, and relate to his intercourse with the natives.

The good usage the three boys had met with, and the friendly and generous manner in which they were dismissed to their own homes, had some effect in softening the dispositions of the neighbouring Indians. Several of them, who had come on board while the ship lay becalmed in the afternoon, manifested every sign of friendship, and cordially invited the English to go back to their old bay, or to a cove which was not quite so far off. But Lieut. Cook chose rather to prosecute his discoveries, having reason to hope that he should find a better harbour than any he had yet seen.

While the ship was hauling round to the south end of a small island, which the lieutenant had named Portland, from its very great resemblance to Portland in the British Channel, she suddenly fell into shoal water and broke ground. The soundings were never twice the same, jumping at once from seven fathoms to eleven. However they were always seven fathoms or more; and in a short time the Endeavour got clear of the danger. While the ship was in apparent distress, the inhabitants of the island, who in vast numbers sat on its white cliffs, and could not avoid perceiving some appearance of confusion on board, and some irregularity in the working of the vessel, were desirous of taking advantage of her critical situation. Accordingly, five canoes, full of men, and well armed, were put off with the utmost expedition, and they came so near, and showed so hostile a disposition, by shouting, brandishing their lances, and using threatening gestures, that the

lieutenant was in pain for his small boat, which was still employed in sounding. By a musket which he ordered to be fired over them, they were rather provoked than intimidated. The firing of a four-pounder loaded with grape-shot, though purposely discharged wide of them, produced a better effect. Upon the report of the piece, the Indians all rose up and shouted; but, instead of continuing the chase, they collected themselves together. After a short consultation, however, they went quietly away.

On the 14th of October, Lieut. Cook having hoisted out his pinnace and long-boat to search for water, just as they were about to set off, several boats, full of New Zealand people, were seen coming from the shore. After some time, five of these boats, having on board between eighty and ninety men, made towards the ship; and four more followed at no great distance, as if to sustain the attack. When the first five had got within about a hundred yards of the Endeavour, they began to sing their war-song, and brandishing their pikes, prepared for an engagement. As the lieutenant was extremely desirous of avoiding the unhappy necessity of using fire-arms against the natives, Tupia was ordered to acquaint them that our voyagers had weapons which, like thunder, would destroy them in a moment; that they would immediately convince them of their power by directing their effect so that they should not be hurt; but that if they persisted in any hostile attempt they would be exposed to the direct attack of these formidable weapons. A four-pounder loaded with grape-shot was then fired wide of them; and this expedient was fortunately attended with success. The report, the flash, and above all, the shot, which spread very far in the water, terrified the Indians to such a degree that they began to paddle away with all their might. At the instance, however, of Tupia, the people of one of the boats were induced to lay aside their arms, and to come under the stern of the Endeavour; in

consequence of which they received a variety of presents.

On the next day a circumstance occurred, which showed how ready one of the inhabitants of New Zealand was to take an advantage of our navigators. In a large armed canoe, which came holdly alongside of the ship, was a man who had a black skin thrown over him, somewhat like that of a bear. Mr. Cook being desirous of knowing to what animal it originally belonged, offered the Indian a piece of red baize for it. With this bargain he seemed to be greatly pleased, immediately pulling off the skin, and holding it up in the boat. He would not, however, part with it till he had the cloth in his possession; and as there could be no transfer of property, if equal caution should be exercised on both sides, the lieutenant ordered the baize to be delivered into his hands. Upon this, instead of sending up the skin, he began, with amazing coolness to pack up both that, and the cloth which he had received as the purchase of it in a basket; nor did he pay the least regard to Mr. Cook's demand or remonstrances, but soon after put off from the English vessel. Our commander was too generous to revenge this insult by any act of severity.

During the course of a traffic which was carrying on for some fish, little Tayeto, Tupia's boy, was placed among others over the ship's side to hand up what was purchased. While he was thus employed, one of the New Zealanders, watched his opportunity, suddenly seized him, and dragged him into a canoe. Two of the natives then held him down in the fore part of it, and the others, with great activity paddled her off with all possible celerity. An action so violent rendered it indispensably necessary that the marines, who were in arms upon the deck, should be ordered to fire. Though the shot was directed to that part of the canoe which was furthest from the boy, and somewhat wide of her, it being thought preferable

rather to miss the rowers than to run the hazard of hurting Tayeto, it happened that one man dropped. This occasioned the Indians to quit their hold of the youth, who instantly leaped into the water, and swam towards the ship. In the mean while the largest of the canoes pulled round and followed him; and till some muskets and a great gun were fired at her, she did not desist from the pursuit. The ship being brought to, a boat was lowered and the poor boy was taken up unhurt. Some of the gentlemen, who with their glasses traced the canoes to shore, agreed in asserting that they saw three men carried up the beach, who appeared to be either dead, or wholly disabled by their wounds.

While, on the 18th, the Endeavour lay abreast of a peninsula within Portland Island, called Terakako, two of the natives, who were judged to be chiefs, placed an extraordinary degree of confidence in Mr. Cook. They were so well pleased with the kindness which had been shown them in a visit to the ship, that they were determined not to go on shore till the next morning. This was a circumstance by no means agreeable to the lieutenant, and he remonstrated against it; but as they persisted in their resolution, he agreed to comply with it, provided their servants also were taken on board, and their canoe hoisted into the ship. The countenance of one of these two chiefs was the most open and ingenuous that our commander had ever seen, so that he soon gave up every suspicion of his entertaining any sinister design. When the guests were put on shore the next morning, they expressed some surprise at seeing themselves so far from their habitations.

On Monday the 23rd, while the ship was in Tegadoo Bay, Lieut. Cook went on shore to examine the watering place, and found every thing agreeable to his wishes. The boat landed in the cove without the least surf; the water was excellent, and conveniently situated; there was plenty of wood close to the high

water mark, and the disposition of the people was as favourable in all respects as could be desired. Early the next morning, our commander sent Lieut. Gore to superintend the cutting of wood and filling of water, with a sufficient number of men for both purposes, and all the marines as a guard. Soon after, he went on shore himself, and continued there during the whole day. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who had landed on the same day, found in their walks several things worthy of notice. As they were advancing in some of the valleys, the hills on each side of which were very steep, they were suddenly struck with the sight of an extraordinary natural curiosity. It was a rock perforated through its whole substance, so as to form a rude but stupendous arch or cavern opening directly to the sea. This aperture was seventy-five feet long, seventy-seven broad, and five-and-forty feet high, commanding a view of the bay and the hills on the other side, which were seen through it; and opening at once upon the view, produced an effect far superior to any of the contrivances of art.

When, on the 23th, the gentlemen of the Endeavour went on shore upon an island which lies to the left hand of the entrance of Tolaga Bay, they saw there the largest canoe they had yet met with, her length being sixty-eight feet and a half, her breadth five feet, and her height three feet six inches. In the same island was a larger house than any they had hitherto seen; but it was in an unfinished state, and full of chips.

While the ship was in Hick's Bay, the inhabitants of the adjoining coast were found to be very hostile. This gave much uneasiness to our navigators, and was indeed contrary to their expectations, for they had hoped that the report of their power and clemency had spread to a greater extent. At day-break on the 1st of November, they counted no less than forty-five canoes that were coming from the shore

towards the Endeavour, and these were followed by several more from another place. Some of the Indians traded fairly ; but others of them took what was handed down to them without making any return, and added derision to fraud. The insolence of one of them was very remarkable. Some linen hanging over the ship's side to dry, this man, without any ceremony, untied it, and put it up in his bundle. Being immediately called to, and required to return it, instead of doing so, he let his canoe drop astern, and laughed at the English. A musket which was fired over his head did not put a stop to his mirth. From a second musket which was loaded with small shot he shrunk a little, when the shot struck him upon his back ; but he regarded it no more than one of our men would have done the stroke of a rattan, and continued with great composure to pack up the linen which he had stolen. All the canoes now dropped astern, and set up their song of defiance, which lasted till they were about four hundred yards distant from the ship. As they did not appear to have a design of attacking our voyagers, Lieutenant Cook was unwilling to do them any hurt, and yet he thought that their going off in a bravado might have a bad effect when it should be reported on shore. To convince them, therefore, that they were still in his power, though far beyond the reach of any missile weapon with which they were acquainted, he ordered a four-pounder to be fired in such a manner as to pass near them. As the shot happened to strike the water, and to rise several times at a great distance beyond the canoes, the Indians were so much terrified, that without once looking behind them, they paddled away as fast as they were able.

In standing westward from a small island called Mowtohora, the Endeavour suddenly shoaled her water from seventeen to ten fathoms. As the lieutenant knew that she was not far off from some small islands and rocks which had been seen before it was

dark, and which he had intended to have passed that evening, he thought it more prudent to tack, and to spend the night under Mowtohora, where he was certain that there was no danger. It was happy for himself and for all our voyagers, that he formed this resolution. In the morning they discovered ahead of them several rocks, some of which were level with the surface of the water, and some below it, and the striking against which could not, in the hour of darkness, have been avoided. In passing between these rocks and the main, the ship had only from ten to seven fathoms water.

When Mr. Cook was near an island which he called the Mayor, the inhabitants of the neighbouring coast displayed many instances of hostility, and, in their traffic with our navigators, committed various acts of fraud and robbery. As the lieutenant intended to continue in the place five or six days, in order to make an observation of the transit of Mercury, it was absolutely necessary, for the prevention of future mischief, to convince these people that the English were not to be ill-treated with impunity. Accordingly some small shot were fired at a thief of uncommon insolence, and a musket-ball was discharged through the bottom of his boat. Upon this it was paddled to about a hundred yards distance; and to the surprise of Mr. Cook and his friends, the Indians in the other canoes took not the least notice of their wounded companion, though he bled very much, but returned to the ship, and continued to trade with the most perfect indifference and unconcern. For a considerable time they dealt fairly. At last, however, one of them thought fit to move off with two different pieces of cloth, which had been given for the same weapon. When he got to such a distance that he thought himself secure of his prizes, a musket was fired after him, which fortunately struck the boat just at the water's edge, and made two holes in her side. This excited such an alarm, that not only the people who

were shot at, but all the rest of the canoes made off with the utmost expedition. As the last proof of superiority, our commander ordered a round shot to be fired over them, and not a boat stopped till they got to land.

After an early breakfast on the 9th of November, Lieut. Cook went on shore, with Mr. Green and proper instruments, to observe the transit of Mercury. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were of the party. The weather had for some time been very thick, with much rain; but this day proved so favourable, that not a cloud intervened during the whole transit. The observation of the ingress was made by Mr. Green alone, Mr. Cook being employed in taking the sun's altitude to ascertain the time.

While the gentlemen were thus engaged on shore, they were alarmed by the firing of a great gun from the ship, and, on their return, received the following account of the transaction from Mr. Gore, the second lieutenant, who had been left commanding officer on board. During the carrying on of a trade with some small canoes, two very large ones came up full of men. In one of the canoes were forty-seven persons, all of whom were armed with pikes, stones, and darts, and assumed the appearance of a hostile intention. However, after a little time, they began to traffic, some of them offering their arms, and one of them a square piece of cloth, which makes a part of their dress, called haabow. Mr. Gore having agreed for it, sent down the price, which was a piece of British cloth, and expected his purchase. But as soon as the Indian had got Mr. Gore's cloth in his possession, he refused to part with his own, and put off his canoe. Upon being threatened for his fraud, he and his companions began to sing their war-song in defiance, and shook their paddles. Though their insolence did not proceed to an attack, and only defied Mr. Gore to take any remedy in his power, he was so provoked, that he levelled a musket loaded with ball at the offender

while he was holding the cloth in his hand, and shot him dead. When the Indian fell, all the canoes put off to some distance, but continued to keep together in such a manner, that it was apprehended they might still meditate an attack. To secure, therefore, a safe passage for the boat of the Endeavour, which was wanted on shore, a round shot was fired with so much effect over their heads, as to make them all flee with the utmost precipitation. It was matter of regret to Lieutenant Cook that Mr. Gore had not, in the case of the offending Indian, tried the experiment of a few small shot, which had been successful in former instances of robbery.

On Friday, the 10th, our commander, accompanied by Mr. Banks, and the other gentlemen, went with two boats to examine a large river that empties itself into the head of Mercury Bay. As the situation they were now in abounded with conveniences, the lieutenant has taken care to point them out for the benefit of future navigators. If any occasion should ever render it necessary for a ship either to winter here, or to stay for a considerable length of time, tents might be built on a high point or peninsula in this place, upon ground sufficiently spacious for the purpose; and they might easily be made impregnable to the whole force of the country. Indeed, the most skilful engineer in Europe could not choose a situation better adapted to enable a small number to defend themselves against a greater. Among other accommodations which the Endeavour's company met with in Mercury Bay, they derived an agreeable refreshment from some oyster beds which they had fortunately discovered. The oysters, which were as good as ever came from Colchester, and about the same size, were so plentiful, that not the boat only, but the ship itself, might have been loaded in one tide.

On Wednesday, the 15th, Lieutenant Cook sailed out of Mercury Bay. This name had been given to it on account of the observation which had there been

, and shot  
canoes put  
p together  
they might  
fore, a safe  
which was  
th so much  
l flee with  
f regret to  
n the case  
nt of a few  
former in-

companied  
went with  
ptions itself  
e situation  
iences, the  
out for the  
sion should  
to winter  
h of time,  
eninsula in  
ous for the  
impregna-  
ndeed, the  
t choose a  
number to  
ong other  
company  
agreeable  
they had  
h were as  
about the  
boat only,  
n one tide.  
ook sailed  
n given to  
there becn

made of the transit of that planet over the sun. The river where oysters had been so plentifully found he called Oyster River. There is another river at the head of the Bay, which is the best and safest place for a ship that wants to stay any length of time. From the number of mangroves about it, the lieutenant named it Mangrove river. In several parts of Mercury Bay, our voyagers saw, thrown upon the shore, great quantities of iron-sand, which is brought down by every little rivulet of fresh water that finds its way from the country. This is a demonstration that there is ore of that metal not far inland; and yet none of the inhabitants of New Zealand, who had yet been seen, knew the use of iron, or set upon it the least degree of value. They had all of them preferred the most worthless and useless trifle, not only to a nail, but to any tool of that metal. Before the Endeavour left the bay, the ship's name and that of the commander were cut upon one of the trees near the watering place, together with the date of the year and month when our navigators were there. Besides this, Mr. Cook, after displaying the English colours, took formal possession of the place in the name of his Britannic Majesty, King George the Third.

In the range from Mercury Bay, several canoes, on the 18th, put off from different places, and advanced towards the Endeavour. When two of them in which there might be about sixty men, came within the reach of the human voice, the Indians sung their war-song; but seeing that little notice was taken of them, they threw a few stones at the English, and then rowed off towards the shore. In a short time, however, they returned, as if with a fixed resolution to provoke our voyagers to a battle, animating themselves by their song as they had done before. Tupia, without any directions from the gentlemen of the Endeavour, began to expostulate with the natives, and told them that our people had weapons which could destroy them in a moment. Their answer to

this expostulation was, in their own language, "Come on shore, and we will kill you all." "Well," replied Tupia, "but why should you molest us while we are at sea? As we do not wish to fight, we shall not accept your challenge to come on shore; and here there is no pretence for a quarrel, the sea being no more your property than the ship." This eloquence, which greatly surprised Lieutenant Cook and his friends, as he had not suggested to Tupia any of the arguments he made use of, produced no effect upon the minds of the Indians, who soon renewed their attack. The oratory of a musket, which was fired through one of their boats, quelled their courage, and sent them instantly away.

While our commander was in the Bay of Islands, he had a favourable opportunity of examining the interior part of the country and its produce. At day-break, therefore, on the 20th of the month, he set out in the pinnace and long-boat, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, and found the inlet, at which they entered, end in a river, about nine miles above the ship. Up this river, to which was given the name of the Thames, they proceeded till near noon, when they were fourteen miles within its entrance. As the gentlemen then found the face of the country to continue the same without any alteration in the course of the stream, and had no hope of tracing it to its source, they landed on the west side to take a view of the lofty trees which every where adorned its banks. The trees were of a kind which they had seen before, both in Poverty Bay and Hawke's Bay, though only at a distance. They had not walked a hundred yards into the woods, when they met with one of the trees, which, at the height of six feet above the ground, was nineteen feet eight inches in the girth. Lieut. Cook, having a quadrant with him, measured its height from the root to the first branch, and found it to be eighty-nine feet. It was as straight as an

age, "Come  
ell." replied  
while we are  
shall not ac-  
d here there  
ng no more  
ence, which  
his friends,  
f the argu-  
t upon the  
eir attack.  
ed through  
e, and sent

of Islands,  
mining the  
e. At day-  
nth, he set  
panied by  
found the  
ver, about  
to which  
ceeded till  
within its  
he face of  
hout any  
and had  
ey landed  
ofty trees  
The trees  
fore, both  
ugh only  
red yards  
the trees,  
e ground,  
e. Lieut.  
sured its  
found it  
ht as an

arrow, and tapered but very little in proportion to its height; so that, in the lieutenant's judgment, there must have been three hundred and fifty-six feet of solid timber in it, exclusive of the branches. As the party advanced, they saw many other trees which were still larger. A young one they cut down, the wood of which was heavy and solid, not fit for masts, but such as would make the finest plank in the world. The carpenter of the ship, who was with the party, said that the timber resembled that of the pitch-pine, which is lightened by tapping. If it should appear that some such method would be successful in lightening these trees, they would then furnish masts superior to those of any country in Europe. As the wood was swampy, the gentlemen could not range far: but they found many stout trees of other kinds with which they were totally unacquainted, and specimens of which they brought away.

On the 22nd, another instance occurred in which the commanding officer left on board did not know how to exercise his power with the good sense and moderation of Mr. Cook. While some of the natives were in the ship below with Mr. Banks, a young man who was upon the deck stole a half-minute glass, and was detected just as he was carrying it off. Mr. Hicks, in his indignation against the offender, was pleased to order that he should be punished, by giving him twelve lashes with a cat-o'nine tails. When the other Indians, who were on board, saw him seized for the purpose, they attempted to rescue him; and being resisted they called for their arms, which were handed from the canoes. At the same time, the people of one of the canoes attempted to come up the side of the Endeavour. The tumult having called up Mr. Banks and Tupia, the natives ran to the latter, and solicited his interposition. All, however, which he could do, as Mr. Hicks continued inexorable, was to assure them that nothing was intended against the life of their companion and that it was

necessary that he should suffer some punishment for his offence. With this explanation they appeared to be satisfied; and when the punishment had been inflicted, an old man among the spectators, who was supposed to be the criminal's father, gave him a severe beating, and sent him down into his canoe. Notwithstanding this, the Indians were far from being reconciled to the treatment which their countryman had received. Their cheerful confidence was gone; and though they promised, at their departure, to return with some fish, the English saw them no more.

On the 29th of November, Lieut. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others with them, were in a situation somewhat critical and alarming. Having landed upon an island in the neighbourhood of Cape Bret, they were in a few moments surrounded by two or three hundred people. Though the Indians were all armed, they came on in so confused and straggling a manner, that it did not appear that any injury was intended by them; and the English gentlemen were determined that hostilities should not begin on their part. At first the natives continued quiet; but their weapons were held ready to strike, and they seemed rather irresolute than peaceable. While the lieutenant and his friends remained in a state of suspense, another party of Indians came up; and the boldness of the whole body being increased by an augmentation of their numbers, they began the dance and song, which are their preludes to a battle. An attempt that was made by a number of them to seize the two boats which had brought our voyagers to land, appeared to be the signal for a general attack. It now became necessary for Mr. Cook to exert himself with vigour. Accordingly he discharged his musket, which was loaded with small shot, at one of the most forward of the assailants; and Mr. Banks, and two of our men, fired immediately afterwards. Though this made the natives fall back in some confusion,

ishment for  
appeared to  
d been in-  
who was  
ve him a  
his canoe.  
far from  
their coun-  
confidence  
their de-  
English saw

Mr. Banks,  
in a situ-

Having  
d of Cape  
ed by two  
ians were  
straggling  
injury was  
men were  
n on their  
but their  
y seemed  
lieutenant  
suspense,  
e boldness  
ugmenta-  
and song,  
a attempt  
e the two  
land, ap-

It now  
himself  
s musket,  
the most  
and two  
Though  
onfusion,

nevertheless one of the chiefs, who was at the distance of about twenty yards, had the courage to rally them, and calling loudly to his companions led them on to the charge. Dr. Solander instantly discharged his piece at this champion, who, upon feeling the shot, stopped short and then ran away with the rest of his countrymen. Still, however, they did not disperse, but got on rising ground, and seemed only to want some leader of resolution to renew the assault. As they had now got beyond the reach of small shot, the English fired with ball, none of which taking effect, the Indians continued together in a body. While our people were in this doubtful situation, which lasted about a quarter of an hour, the ship, from which a much greater number of natives were seen than could be discovered on shore, brought her broadside to bear, and entirely dispersed them, by firing a shot over their heads. In this skirmish only two of them were hurt with the small shot, and not a single life was lost—a case which would not have happened, if Lieut. Cook had not restrained his men, who either from fear or the love of mischief, showed as much impatience to destroy the Indians, as a sportsman to kill his game. Such was the difference between the disposition of the common seamen and marines, and that of their humane and judicious commander.

On the same day Mr. Cook displayed a very exemplary act of discipline. Some of the ship's people, who when the natives were to be punished for a fraud, assumed the inexorable justice of a Lycurgus, thought fit to break into one of their plantations, and to dig up some potatoes. For this the lieutenant ordered each of them to receive twelve lashes, after which two of them were discharged; but the third, in a singular strain of morality, insisted upon it that it was no crime in an Englishman to plunder an Indian plantation. The method taken by our commander to refute his casuistry was to send him back to his

confinement, and not permit him to be released till he had been punished with six lashes more.

The Endeavour, on the 5th of December, was in the most imminent hazard of being wrecked. At four o'clock in the morning of that day, our voyagers weighed with a light breeze; but it being variable, with frequent calms, they made little way. From that time till the afternoon, they kept turning out of the bay, and about ten at night were suddenly becalmed, so that the ship could neither wear nor exactly keep her station. The tide or current setting strong, she drove toward land so fast, that, before any measures could be taken for her security, she was within a cable's length of the breakers. Though our people had thirteen fathom's water, the ground was so foul that they did not dare to drop their anchor. In this crisis, the pinnace being immediately hoisted out to take the ship in tow, and the men, sensible of their danger, exerting themselves to the utmost, a faint breeze sprang off the land, and our navigators perceived, with unspeakable joy, that the vessel made head-way. So near was she to the shore, that Tupia, who was ignorant of the hair's-breadth escape the company had experienced, was at this very time conversing with the Indians upon the beach, whose voices were distinctly heard, notwithstanding the roar of the breakers. Mr. Cook and his friends now thought that all danger was over; but about an hour afterwards, just as the man in the chains had cried "seventeen fathom," the ship struck. The shock threw them into the utmost consternation, and almost instantly the man in the chains cried out "five fathom." By this time the rock on which the ship had struck being to the windward, she went on without having received the least damage; and the water very soon deepening to twenty fathoms, she again sailed in security.

The inhabitants in the Bay of Islands were found to be far more numerous than in any other part of

New Zealand which Lieut. Cook had hitherto visited. It did not appear that they were united under one head; and though their towns were fortified, they seemed to live together in perfect amity.

The Endeavour, on the 9th of December, lying becalmed in Doubtless Bay, an opportunity was taken to inquire of the natives concerning their country; and our navigators learned from them, by the help of Tupia, that at a distance of three days' rowing in their canoes, at a place called Moore-Whennua, the land would take a short turn to the southward, and thence extend no more to the west. This place the English gentlemen concluded to be the land discovered by Tasman, and which had been named by him Cape Maria van Diemen. The lieutenant, finding the inhabitants so intelligent, inquired further if they knew of any country besides their own. To this they answered, that they had never visited any other; but that their ancestors had told them that there was a country of great extent to the north-west by north, or north-north-west, called Ulimaroa, to which some people had sailed in a very large canoe; and that only a part of them had returned, who reported that, after a passage of a month, they had seen a country, where the people ate hogs.

On the 30th of December, our navigators saw the land, which they judged to be Cape Maria van Diemen, and which corresponded with the account that had been given of it by the Indians. The next day, from the appearance of Mount Camel, they had a demonstration that, where they now were, the breadth of New Zealand could not be more than two or three miles from sea to sea. During this part of the navigation, two particulars occurred, which are very remarkable. In latitude 35 deg. S., and in the midst of summer, Lieut. Cook met with a gale of wind, which from its strength and continuance, was such as he had scarcely ever been in before; and he was three weeks in getting ten leagues to the west-

ward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues; for at this time, being the 1st of January, 1770, it was so long since he had passed Cape Bret. While the gale lasted our voyagers were happily at a considerable distance from the land: since, otherwise, it was highly probable that they would never have returned to relate their adventures.

The shore at Queen Charlotte's Sound, where the English had arrived on the 14th of January, seemed to form several bays, into one of which the lieutenant proposed to carry the ship, which was now become very foul, in order to careen her, to repair some defects, and to obtain a recruit of wood and water. At day-break the next morning, he stood in for an inlet, and at eight got within the entrance. At nine o'clock, there being little wind, and what there was being variable, the Endeavour was carried by the tide or current within two cables' length of the north-west shore, where she had fifty-four fathom water. By the help of the boats she was got clear, and about two our people anchored in a very safe and convenient cove. Soon after Mr. Cook, with most of the gentlemen, landed upon the coast, where they found a fine stream of excellent water, and wood in the greatest plenty. Indeed the land in this part of the country was one forest of vast extent. As the gentlemen had brought the seine with them, it was hauled once or twice, and with such success that different sorts of fish were caught, amounting to nearly three hundred weight. The equal distribution of these among the ship's company furnished them with a very agreeable refreshment.

When Lieut. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia and some others, landed on the 16th, they met with an Indian family, among whom they found horrid and indisputable proofs of the custom of eating human flesh. Not to resume so disagreeable a subject, it may here be observed, once for all, that evidences of the same custom appeared on various occasions.

On the next day a delightful object engaged the attention of our voyagers. The ship lying at the distance of somewhat less than a quarter of a mile from the shore, they were awakened by the singing of an incredible number of birds which seemed to strain their throats in emulation of each other. This wild melody was infinitely superior to any they had ever heard of the same kind, and seemed to be like small bells most exquisitely tuned. It is probable that the distance, and the water between might be of no small advantage to the sound. Upon inquiry, the gentlemen were informed that the birds here always began to sing about two hours after midnight; and that, continuing their music till sun-rise, they were silent the rest of the day. In this last respect they resembled the nightingales of our own country.

On the 18th, Lieut. Cook went out in the pinnace to take a view of the bay in which the ship was now at anchor, and found it to be of great extent, consisting of numberless small harbours and coves in every direction. The lieutenant confined his excursion to the western side: and the coast where he landed being an impenetrable forest, nothing could be seen worthy of notice. As our commander and his friends were returning, they saw a single man in a canoe fishing. Rowing up to him, to their great surprise, he took not the least notice of them, and, even when they were alongside of him, continued to follow his occupation, without adverting to them, any more than if they had been invisible. This behaviour was not, however, the result of either sullenness or stupidity; for upon being requested to draw up his net, that it might be examined, he readily complied. He showed likewise to our people his mode of fishing, which was simple and ingenious.

When on the 19th, the armourer's forge was set up, and all hands on board were busy in careening, and in other necessary operations about the vessel, some Indians who had brought plenty of fish ex-

changed them for nails, of which they had now begun to perceive the use and value. This may be considered as one instance in which they were enlightened and benefited by their intercourse with our navigators.

While, on the 22d, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander employed themselves in botanizing near the beach, our commander, taking a seaman with him, ascended one of the hills of the country. Upon reaching its summit, he found the view of the inlet, the head of which he had a little before in vain attempted to discover in the pinnace, intercepted by hills still higher than that on which he stood, and which were rendered inaccessible by impenetrable woods. He was, however, amply rewarded for his labour; for he saw the sea on the eastern side of the country, and a passage leading from it to that on the west, a little to the eastward of the entrance of the inlet where the ship lay. The main land, which was on the south-east side of this inlet, appeared to be a narrow ridge of very high hills, and to form part of the south-west side of the strait. On the opposite side, the land trended away east as far as the eye could reach; and to the south-east there was discerned an opening to the sea, which washed the eastern coast. The lieutenant saw also on the east side of the inlet some islands, which he had before taken to be part of the main land. In returning to the ship, he examined the harbours and coves, that lie behind the islands which he had seen from the hills. The next day was employed by him in further surveys and discoveries.

During a visit to the Indians on the 24th, Tupia being of the party, they were observed to be continually talking of guns and shooting people. For this subject of their conversation, the English gentlemen could not at all account. But, after perplexing themselves with various conjectures, they at length learned that, on the 21st, one of our officers, under the pretence of going out to fish, had rowed up to a hippah or village on the coast. When he had done so,

now begun considered intended and rigators.

. Solander the beach, ascended reaching its the head of ted to distill higher were ren-

He was, for he saw and a pas- a little to where the he south- row ridge outh-west, the land each; and ppening to The lieu- nlet some rt of the examined e islands t day was coveries. h, Tupia be conti- For this entlemen rplexing t length s, under up to a done so.

two or three canoes coming off towards his boat, his fears suggested that an attack was intended, in consequence of which three muskets were fired, one with small shot, and two with ball, at the Indians, who retired with the utmost precipitation. It is highly probable that they had come out with friendly intentions, for such intentions were expressed by their behaviour, both before and afterwards. This action of the officer exhibited a fresh instance of how little some of the people under Lieutenant Cook had imbibed of the wise, discreet, and humane spirit of their commander.

On the morning of the 26th, the lieutenant went again out in a boat, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and entered one of the bays which lie on the east side of the inlet, in order to obtain another sight of the strait which passed between the eastern and western seas. Having landed for this purpose at a convenient place, they climbed a hill of very considerable height, from which they had a full view of the strait, with the land on the opposite shore, which they judged to be about four leagues distant. As it was hazy in the horizon, they could not see far to the south-east; but Mr. Cook saw enough to determine him to search the passage with the ship as soon as he should put to sea. The gentlemen found on the top of the hill a parcel of loose stones, with which they erected a pyramid, and left in it some musket-balls, small shot, beads, and such other things which they happened to have about them, as were likely to stand the test of time. These, not being of Indian workmanship, would convince any European who should come to the place and pull it down, that natives of Europe had been there before. After this, the lieutenant and his friends went to a town of which the Indians had informed them, and which, like one they had already seen, was built upon a small island or rock, so difficult of access, that they gratified their curiosity at the risk of their lives.

Here, as had been the case in former visits to the inhabitants of that part of the country near which the ship now lay, they were received with open arms, carried through the whole of the place, and shown all that it contained. The town consisted of between eighty and a hundred houses, and had only one fighting stage. Mr. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, happened to have with them a few nails and ribands, and some paper, with which the people were so highly gratified, that when the gentlemen went away, they filled the English boat with dried fish, of which it appeared that they laid up large quantities.

A report was spread, that one of the men who had been so rashly fired upon by the officer who had visited the hippah under the pretence of fishing, was dead of his wounds. But, on the 29th, the lieutenant had the great consolation of discovering that this report was groundless. On the same day he went again on shore upon the western point of the inlet, and from a hill of considerable height had a view of the coast to the north-west. The furthest land he could see in that quarter was an island at the distance of about ten leagues, lying not far from the main. Between this island and the place where he stood, he discovered, close under the shore, several other islands, forming many bays in which there appeared to be good anchorage for shipping. After he had set off the different points for his survey, he erected another pile of stones, in which he left a piece of silver coin, with some musket-balls and beads, and a fragment of an old pendant flying at the top.

On the 30th of January, the ceremony was performed of giving name to the inlet where our voyagers now lay, and of erecting a memorial of the visit which they had made to this place. The carpenter having prepared two posts for the purpose, our commander ordered them to be inscribed with the ship's name, and the dates of the year and the

to the in-  
which the  
open arms,  
and shown  
of between  
only one  
and Dr. So-  
v nails and  
the people  
gentlemen  
with dried  
d up large

en who had  
who had vi-  
ishing, was  
e lieutenant  
g that this  
ay he went  
of the inlet,  
d a view of  
est land he  
the distance  
the main.  
e he stood,  
veral other  
e appeared  
he had set  
he erected  
piece of sil-  
eads, and a  
op.

y was per-  
re our voy-  
rial of the  
The car-  
e purpose,  
cribed with  
ear and the

onth. One of these he set up at the watering-  
place, hoisting the union flag upon the top of it; and  
the other he carried over to the island that lies  
nearest the sea, and which is called by the natives  
Motuara. He went first, accompanied by Mr. Monk-  
house and Tupia, to the neighbouring village or hip-  
pah, where he met with an old man who had main-  
tained a friendly intercourse with the English. To  
his old man, and several Indians besides, the lieu-  
tenant, by means of Tupia, explained his design,  
which, he informed them, was to erect a mark upon  
the island, in order to show to any other ship which  
could happen to come thither, that our navigators  
had been there before. To this the inhabitants  
readily consented, and promised that they would  
never pull it down. He then gave something to every  
one present, and to the old man a silver three-pence  
and some spike nails, with the king's broad arrow  
cut deep upon them. These were things which Mr.  
Cook thought were the most likely to be long pre-  
served. After this, he conveyed the post to the  
highest part of the island; and having fixed it firmly  
in the ground, hoisted upon it the union flag, and  
honoured the inlet with the name of Queen Char-  
lotte's Sound. At the same time he took a formal  
possession of this and the adjacent country in the  
name and for the use of his Majesty King George  
the Third. The ceremony was concluded by the  
gentlemen drinking a bottle of wine to her Majesty's  
health; and the bottle being given to the old man,  
who had attended them up the hill, he was highly  
delighted with his present.

A philosopher perhaps might inquire on what  
ground Lieutenant Cook could take formal posses-  
sion of this part of New Zealand in the name and  
for the use of the King of Great Britain, when the  
country was already inhabited, and of course be-  
longed to those by whom it was occupied, and whose  
ancestors might have resided in it for many pre-

ceding ages. To this the best answer seems to be that the lieutenant, in the ceremony performed by him, had no reference to the original inhabitants, or any intention to deprive them of their natural rights, but only to preclude the claims of future European navigators, who, under the auspices and for the benefit of their respective states or kingdoms, might form pretensions to which they were not entitled by prior discovery.

On the 31st, our voyagers having completed their wooding, and filled their water-casks, Mr. Cook sent out two parties, one to cut and make brooms, and another to catch fish. In the evening there was a strong gale from the north-west, with such heavy rain, that the little wild musicians on shore suspended their song, which till now had been constantly heard during the night, with a pleasure that it was impossible to lose without regret. The gale, on the 1st of February, increased to a storm, with heavy gusts from the high land, one of which broke the hawser that had been fastened to the shore, and induced the necessity of letting go another anchor. Though, towards midnight, the gale became more moderate, the rain continued with so much violence, that the brook which supplied the ship with water overflowed its banks, in consequence of which ten small casks that had been filled the day before were carried away, and, notwithstanding the most diligent search for them, could not be recovered.

The Endeavour, on Monday the 5th, got under sail; but the wind soon failing, our commander was obliged again to come to an anchor a little above Motuara. As he was desirous of making still further inquiries whether any memory of Tasman had been preserved in New Zealand, he directed Tupia to ask of the old man before mentioned, who had come on board to take his leave of the English gentlemen, whether he had ever heard that such a vessel as theirs had before visited the country. To this he replied in the nega-

seems to be performed by inhabitants, or natural rights, pure European and for the kingdoms, might not entitled by

completed their Mr. Cook sent brooms, and there was a such heavy more suspended instantly heard it was impossible, on the 1st of a heavy gusts ke the hawser and induced the

Though, to-moderate, the that the brook overflowed its all casks that carried away, nt search for

not under sail; er was obliged ove Motuara. ther inquiries een preserved ask of the old e on board to n, whether he irs had before d in the nega-

ive; but said that his ancestors had told him that here once had arrived a small vessel from a distant land, called Ulimaroa, in which were four men, who upon reaching the shore, were killed. On being asked where this country lay, he pointed to the northward. Of Ulimaroa Lieutenant Cook had heard something before from the people about the Bay of Islands, who said that it had been visited by their ancestors. Tupia had also some confused traditionary notions concerning it; but no certain conclusion could be drawn from his account, or that of the old Indian.

Soon after the ship came to anchor the second time, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who had gone on shore to see if any gleanings of natural knowledge remained, fell in, by accident, with the most agreeable Indian family they had yet seen, and which afforded them a better opportunity of remarking the personal subordination among the natives than had before offered. The whole behaviour of this family was affable obliging and unsuspecting. It was matter of sincere regret to the two gentlemen that they had not sooner met with these people, as a better acquaintance with the manners and dispositions of the inhabitants of the country might hence have been obtained in a day, than had been acquired during the whole stay of the English upon the coast.

When, on the 6th of February, Lieutenant Cook had got out of the sound, he stood over to the eastward, in order to get the strait well opened before the tide of ebb approached. At seven in the evening two small islands, which lie off Cape Koamaroo, at the south-east head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, bore east, at the distance of about four miles. It was nearly calm, and the tide of ebb setting out, the Endeavour, in a very short time, was carried by the rapidity of the stream close upon one of the islands, which was a rock rising almost perpendicularly out of the sea. The danger increased every moment, and there was but one expedient to prevent the ship

being dashed to pieces, the success of which a few moments would determine. She was now within little more than a cable's length of the rock, and had above seventy-five fathom water. But, upon dropping an anchor, and veering above one hundred and fifty fathom of cable, she was happily brought up. This, however, would not have saved our navigators, if the tide, which set south by east, had not, upon meeting with the island, changed its direction to south-east, and carried them beyond the first point. In this situation they were not above two cables' length from the rocks; and here they remained in the strength of the tide, which set to the south-east after the rate of five miles an hour, from a little after seven till midnight, when the tide abated, and the vessel began to heave. By three in the morning, a light breeze at north-west having sprung up, our voyagers sailed for the eastern shore, though they made but little way in consequence of the tide being against them. The wind, however, having afterwards freshened, and come to north and north-east, with this and the tide of ebb, they were in a short time hurried through the narrowest part of the strait, and then stood away for the southernmost land they had in prospect. There appeared over this land a mountain of stupendous height, which was covered with snow. The narrowest part of the strait, through which the Endeavour had been driven with such rapidity, lies between Cape Tierawitte on the coast of Eaheinomauwe, and Cape Koamaroo; the distance between which our commander judged to be four or five leagues. Notwithstanding the difficulties arising from this tide, now its strength is known, the strait may be passed without danger. Some of the officers started a notion that Eaheinomauwe was not an island, and that the land might stretch away to the south-east, from between Cape Turnagain and Cape Palliser, there being a space of between twelve and fifteen leagues which had not yet been seen. Though

which a few  
now within  
ock, and had  
upon drop-  
hundred and  
brought up.  
r navigators,  
ad not, upon  
direction to  
e first point.  
e two cables'  
remained in  
he south-east  
a little after  
ated, and the  
e morning, a  
ung up, our  
though they  
he tide being  
ng afterwards  
th-east, with  
a short time  
he strait, and  
and they had  
land a moun-  
covered with  
rait, through  
en with such  
on the coast  
; the distance  
to be four or  
ulties arising  
wn, the strait  
of the officers  
was not an  
away to the  
in and Cape  
n twelve and  
een. Though

ient. Cook, from what he had observed the first  
ime he had discovered the strait, and from many  
ther concurrent circumstances, had the strongest  
onviction that they were mistaken, he nevertheless  
esolved to leave no possibility of doubt with respect  
o an object of so much importance. For this pur-  
ose he gave such a direction to the navigation of  
he ship as would most effectually tend to determine  
he matter. After a course of two days he called the  
fficers upon deck, and asked them whether they  
ere now satisfied that Eaheinomauwe was an island.  
o this question they readily answered in the affir-  
native; and all doubts being removed, the lieutenant  
roceeded to further researches.

During Mr. Cook's long and minute examination  
f the coast of New Zealand, he gave names to tho  
ays, capes, promontories, islands, and rivers, and  
ther places which were seen and visited by him,  
xcepting in those cases where their original appel-  
ations were learned from the natives. The names  
e fixed upon were either derived from certain cha-  
acteristic or adventitious circumstances, or were  
onferred in honour of his friends and acquaintance,  
hiefly those of the naval line. Such of the readers  
f the present work as desire to be particularly in-  
ormed concerning them, will naturally have recourse  
o the indications of them in the several maps on  
hich they are described.

The ascertaining of New Zealand to be an island  
id not conclude Lieutenant Cook's examination of  
he nature, situation, and extent of the country.  
After this, he completed his circumnavigation, by  
anging from Cape Turnagain southward along the  
astern coast of Poenamoo, round Cape South, and  
ack to the western entrance of the strait he had  
assed, and which was very properly named Cook's  
trait. This range, which commenced on the 9th of  
ebruary, I shall not minutely and regularly pursue;  
ut content myself, as in the former course, with

mentioning such circumstances as are more directly adapted to my immediate design.

In the afternoon of the 14th, when Mr. Banks was out in the boat shooting, our voyagers saw with their glasses, four double canoes put off from the shore towards him, having on board fifty-seven men. The lieutenant being alarmed for the safety of his friend, immediately ordered signals to be made for his return, but he was prevented from seeing them by the situation of the sun with regard to the ship. However, it was soon with pleasure observed that his boat was in motion; and he was taken on board before the Indians, who perhaps had not discerned him, came up. Their attention seemed to be wholly fixed upon the ship. They came within about a stone's cast of her, and then stopped, gazing at the English with a look of vacant astonishment. Tupia in vain exerted his eloquence to prevail upon them to make a nearer approach. After surveying our navigators some time, they left them, and made towards the shore. The gentlemen could not help remarking on this occasion, the different dispositions and behaviour of the different inhabitants of the country at the first sight of the Endeavour. The people now seen kept aloof with a mixture of timidity and wonder; others had immediately commenced hostilities: the man who was found fishing alone in his canoe appeared to regard our voyagers as totally unworthy of notice; and some had come on board almost without invitation, and with an air of perfect confidence and good will. From the conduct of the last visitors, Lieutenant Cook gave the land from which they had put off, and which had the appearance of an island, the name of Lookers-on.

When an island which lies about five leagues from the coast of Tovy-Poenammoo, and which was named Banks' Island, was first discovered in the direction of south by west, some persons on board were of opinion that they saw land bearing south-south-east,

more directly

r. Banks was  
 w with their  
 m the shore  
 n men. The  
 of his friend,  
 or his return,  
 by the situ-  
 . However,  
 his boat was  
 d before the  
 d him, came  
 y fixed upon  
 one's cast of  
 glish with a  
 vain exerted  
 ke a nearer  
 gators some  
 s the shore.  
 g on this oc-  
 behaviour of  
 at the first  
 ow seen kept  
 nder; others  
 s: the man  
 e appeared to  
 y of notice;  
 hout invita-  
 ce and good  
 tors, Lieute-  
 ey had put  
 n island, the  
 leagues from  
 h was named  
 the direction  
 ard were of  
 -south-east,

nd south-east by east. Our commander who was  
 himself upon deck at the time, told them that in his  
 judgment it was no more than a cloud, which, as the  
 sun rose, would dissipate and vanish. Being, how-  
 ever, determined to leave no subject for disputation  
 which experiment could remove, he ordered the ship  
 to steer in the direction which the supposed country  
 was said to bear. Having gone in this direction  
 eight-and-twenty miles without discovering any signs  
 of land, the Endeavour resumed her intended course  
 to the southward, it being the particular view of the  
 lieutenant to ascertain whether Poenamoo, was an  
 island or a continent.

In passing some rocks on the 9th of March in the  
 night, it appeared in the morning that the ship had  
 been in the most imminent danger. Her escape was  
 indeed critical in the highest degree. To these rocks  
 therefore, which, from their situation, are so well  
 adapted to catch unwary strangers, Mr. Cook gave  
 the name of the Traps. On the same day he reached  
 a point of land which he called the South Cape, and  
 which he supposed, as proved in fact to be the case,  
 the southern extremity of the country.

In sailing on Wednesday the 14th, the Endeavour  
 passed a small narrow opening in the land, where  
 there seemed to be a very safe and convenient har-  
 bour, formed by an island, which lay eastward in the  
 middle of the opening. On the land, behind the  
 opening, are mountains, the summits of which were  
 covered with snow that appeared to have recently  
 fallen. Indeed our voyagers, for two days past, had  
 found the weather extremely cold. On each side the  
 entrance of the opening, the land rises almost per-  
 pendicularly from the sea to a stupendous height.  
 For this reason Lieutenant Cook did not choose to  
 carry the ship into the harbour. He was sensible  
 that no wind could blow there but right in or right  
 out; and he did not think it by any means advisable  
 to put into a place whence he could not have got out;

but with a wind which, experience had taught him, did not blow more than one day in a month. Sagacious as this determination of our commander was, it did not give universal satisfaction. He acted in it contrary to the opinion of some persons on board, who expressed in strong terms their desire of coming to harbour, not sufficiently considering that present convenience ought not to be purchased at the expense of incurring great future disadvantages.

By the 27th of March, Mr. Cook had circumnavigated the whole country of Tovy-Poenammoo, and arrived within sight of the island formerly mentioned, which lies at the distance of nine leagues from the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound. Having at this time thirty tons of empty water-casks on board, it was necessary to fill them before he finally proceeded on his voyage. For this purpose he hauled round the island, and entered a bay situated between that and Queen Charlotte's Sound, and to which the name was given of Admiralty Bay.

The business of wooding and watering being completed on the 30th, and the ship ready for sea, the point now to be determined was, what route should be pursued in returning home, that would be of most advantage to the public service. Upon this subject the lieutenant thought proper to take the opinion of his officers. He had himself a strong desire to return by Cape Horn, because that would have enabled him to determine whether there is or is not a southern continent. But against this scheme it was a sufficient objection that our navigators must have kept in a high southern latitude in the very depth of winter, and in a vessel which was not thought to be in a condition fit for the undertaking. The same reason was urged with still greater force against their proceeding directly for the Cape of Good Hope, because no discovery of moment could be expected in that route. It was therefore resolved that they should return by the East Indies : and that, with this

view, they should steer westward, till they should fall in with the east coast of New Holland, and then follow the direction of that coast to the northward, till they should arrive at its northern extremity. If that should be found impracticable, it was further resolved that they should endeavour to fall in with the land or islands said to have been discovered by Quiros.

In the six months which Lieutenant Cook had spent in the examination of New Zealand, he made very large additions to the knowledge of geography and navigation. That country was first discovered in the year 1642, by Abel Jansen Tasman, a Dutch navigator. He traversed the eastern coast from latitude 34 deg. 43 min., and entered the strait now called Cook's Strait; but being attacked by the natives, soon after he came to an anchor, in the place which he named Murderer's Bay, he never went on shore. Nevertheless he assumed a kind of claim to the country, by calling it Staten Land, or the Land of the States, in honour of the States-General. It is now usually distinguished in maps and charts by the name of New Zealand. The whole of the country, excepting that part of the coast which was seen by Tasman from on board his ship, continued from his time to the voyage of the Endeavour, altogether unknown. By many persons it has been supposed to constitute a part of the southern continent; but it was now ascertained by Mr. Cook to consist of two large islands, divided from each other by a strait or passage which is about four or five leagues broad. These islands are situated between the latitudes of 34 deg. and 48 deg. south, and between the longitudes of 181 deg. and 194 deg. west. a matter which Mr. Green determined with uncommon exactness, from innumerable observations of the sun and moon, and one of the transits of Mercury. The northernmost of these islands is called by the natives Eaheinomauwe and the southernmost Tovv. or Tavai

Poenammoo. It is not, however, certain whether the whole southern island, or only part of it, be comprehended under the latter name.

Tovy Poenammoo is principally a mountainous and to all appearance a barren country. The only inhabitants, and signs of inhabitants, that were discovered upon all the islands, were the people whom our voyagers saw in Queen Charlotte's Sound, some that came off to them under the snowy mountains, and several fires which were discerned to the west of Cape Saunders. Eaheinomauwe has a much better appearance. Though it is not only hilly but mountainous, even the hills and mountains are covered with wood, and every valley has a rivulet of water. The soil in these valleys, and in the plains, many of which are not overgrown with wood, is in general light, but fertile. It was the opinion of Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, as well as of the other gentlemen on board, that all kinds of European grain, plants, and fruit, would flourish here in the utmost luxuriance. There is reason to conclude, from the vegetables which our navigators found in Eaheinomauwe, that the winters are milder than those in England; and the summer was experienced not to be hotter, though it was more equally warm. If this country, therefore, should be settled by people from Europe, they might, with a little industry, very soon be supplied, in great abundance, not merely with the necessaries, but even with the luxuries of life.

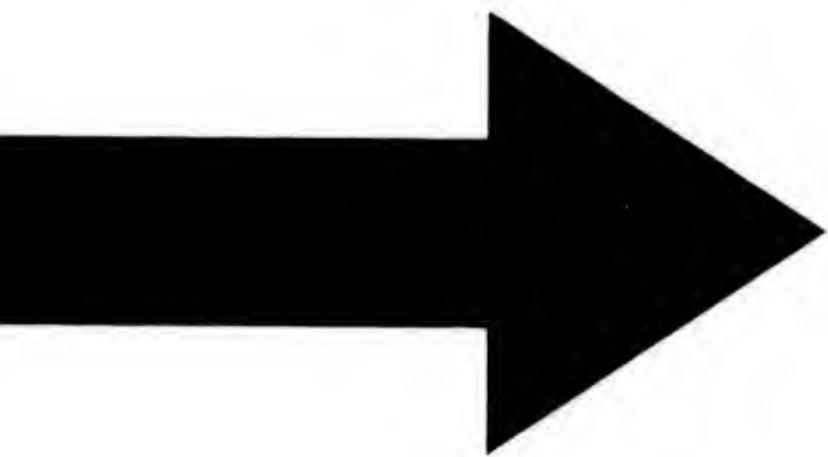
In Eaheinomauwe there are no quadrupeds but dogs and rats—at least no other were seen by our voyagers; and the rats are so scarce, that they wholly escaped the notice of many on board. Of birds the species are not numerous; and of these no one kind, excepting perhaps the gannet, is exactly the same with those of Europe. Insects are not in greater plenty than birds. The sea makes abundant recompense for this scarcity of animals upon the land. Every creek swarms with fish, which are not only

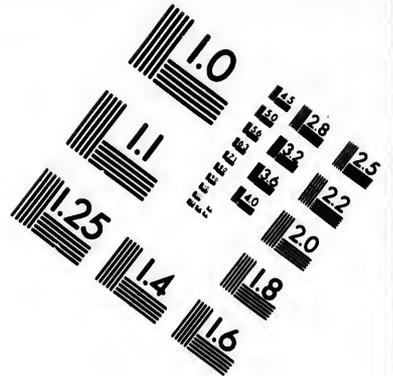
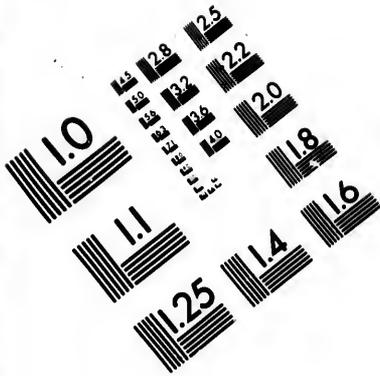
wholesome, but equally delicious with those in our part of the world. The Endeavour seldom anchored in any station, or with a light gale passed any place, that did not afford enough, with hook and line, to serve the whole ship's company. If the seine was made use of, it seldom failed of producing a still more ample supply. The highest luxury of this kind, with which the English were gratified, was the lobster, or sea cray fish. Among the vegetable productions of the country, the trees claim a principal place; there being forests of vast extent, full of the straightest, the cleanest, and the largest timber Mr. Cook and his friends had ever seen. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were gratified by the novelty, if not by the variety of the plants. Out of about four hundred species, there were not many which had hitherto been described by botanists. There is one plant that serves the natives instead of hemp and flax, and which excels all that are applied to the same purposes in other countries.

If the settling of New Zealand should ever be deemed an object deserving the attention of Great Britain, our commander thought that the best place for establishing a colony would either be on the banks of the Thames, or in the Territory adjoining to the Bay of Islands. Each of these places possesses the advantage of an excellent harbour. By means of the river, settlements might be extended, and a communication established with the inland parts of the country. Vessels might likewise be built of the fine timber which is every where to be met with, at very little trouble and expense.

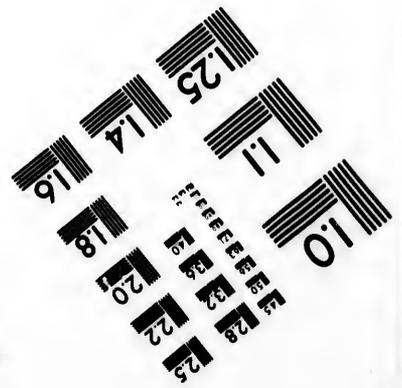
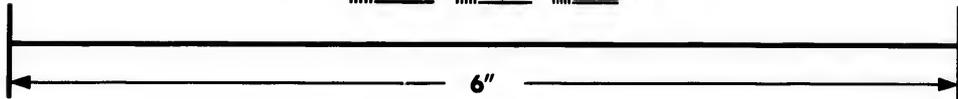
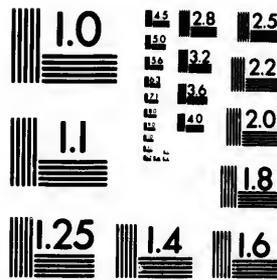
But I am in danger of forgetting myself, and of running into a detail which may be thought rather to exceed the intention of the present narrative. It is difficult to restrain the pen when such a variety of curious and entertaining matter lies before it, and I must entreat the indulgence of my readers while I mention two or three further particulars. One cir-







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

14  
15  
16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28

10  
11

cumstance peculiarly worthy of notice is the perfect and uninterrupted health of the inhabitants of New Zealand. In all the visits made to their towns, where old and young, men and women, crowded about our voyagers, they never observed a single person who appeared to have any bodily complaint; nor among the numbers that were seen naked, was once perceived the slightest eruption upon the skin, or the least mark which indicated that such an eruption had formerly existed. Another proof of the health of these people is the facility with which the wounds they at any time receive are healed. In the man who had been shot with a musket-ball through the fleshy part of his arm, the wound seemed to be so well digested, and in so fair a way of being perfectly healed, that if Mr. Cook had not known that no application had been made to it, he declared that he should certainly have inquired, with a very interested curiosity, after the vulnerary herbs, and surgical art of the country. An additional evidence of human nature's being untainted with disease in New Zealand is the great number of old men with whom it abounds. Many of them, by the loss of their hair and teeth, appeared to be very ancient, and yet none of them were decrepid. Although they were not equal to the young in muscular strength, they did not come in the least behind them with regard to cheerfulness and vivacity. Water, as far as our navigators could discover, is the universal and only liquor of the New Zealanders. It is greatly to be wished that their happiness in this respect may never be destroyed by such a connexion with the European nations, as shall introduce that fondness for spirituous liquors which has been so fatal to the Indians of North America.

From the observations which Lieut. Cook and his friends made on the people of New Zealand, and from the similitude which was discerned between them and the inhabitants of the South Sea Islands, a strong proof arose, that both of them had one common

origin; and this proof was rendered inubitable by the conformity of their language. When Tupia addressed himself to the natives of Eaheinomauwe and Poenamoo, he was perfectly understood. Indeed it did not appear that the language of Otaheite differed more from that of New Zealand than the language of the two Islands into which it is divided did from each other.

Hitherto the navigation of Lieut. Cook had been unfavourable to the notion of a southern continent, having swept away at least three-fourths of the positions upon which that notion had been founded. The track of the Endeavour had demonstrated that the land seen by Tasman, Juan Fernandez, Hermite, the commander of a Dutch squadron, Quiros, and Roggeveen, was not, as they had supposed, part of such a continent. It had also totally destroyed the theoretical arguments in favour of a southern continent, which had been drawn from the necessity of it to preserve an equilibrium between the two hemispheres. As, however, Mr. Cook's discoveries, so far as he had already proceeded, extended only to the northward of forty degrees south latitude, he could not, therefore give an opinion concerning what land might lie further to the southward. This was a matter, therefore, which he earnestly wished to be examined; and to him was at length reserved the honour, as we shall hereafter see, of putting a final end to the question.

On Saturday the 31st of March, our commander sailed from Cape Farewell in New Zealand, and pursued his voyage to the westward. New Holland, or, as it is now called, New South Wales, came in sight on the 11th of April; and on the 27th of that month the ship anchored in Botany Bay. On the preceding day, in consequence of its falling calm when the vessel was not more than a mile and a half from the shore, and within some breakers, our navigators had been in a very disagreeable situation; but happily a light

breeze had sprung up from the land, and carried them out of danger.

In the afternoon the boats were manned; and Lieut. Cook and his friends, having Tupia of their party, set out from the Endeavour. They intended to land where they had seen some Indians, and began to hope that as these Indians had paid no regard to the ship when she came into the bay, they would be as inattentive to the advances of the English towards the shore. In this, however, the gentlemen were disappointed; for as soon as they approached the rocks, two of the men came down upon them to dispute their landing, and the rest ran away. These champions, who were armed with lances about ten feet long, called to our navigators in a very loud tone, and in a harsh dissonant language, of which even Tupia did not understand a single word. At the same time they brandished their weapons, and seemed resolved to defend their coast to the utmost, though they were but two to forty. The lieutenant, who could not but admire their courage, and who was unwilling that hostilities should commence with such inequality of force on our side, ordered his boat to lie upon their oars. He and the other gentlemen then parlied with them by signs; and, to obtain their good-will, he threw them nails, beads, and several trifles besides, with which they appeared to be well pleased. After this our commander endeavoured to make them understand that he wanted water, and attempted to convince them, by all the methods in his power, that he had no injurious design against them. Being willing to interpret the waving of their hands as an invitation to proceed, the boat put into the shore; but no sooner was this perceived, than it was opposed by the two Indians, one of whom seemed to be a youth about nineteen or twenty years old, and the other a man of middle age. The only resource now left for Mr. Cook was to fire a musket between them, which being done, the

youngest of them brought a bundle of lances on the rock, but recollecting himself in an instant, he snatched them up again in great haste. A stone was then thrown at the English, upon which the lieutenant ordered a musket to be fired with small shot. This struck the eldest upon the legs, and he immediately ran to one of the houses, which was at about an hundred yards distance. Mr. Cook, who now hoped that the contest was over, instantly landed with his party; but they had scarcely quitted the boat when the Indian returned, having only left the rock to fetch a shield or target for his defence. As soon as he came up, he and his comrade threw each of them a lance in the midst of our people, but happily without hurting a single person. At the firing of a third musket, one of the two men darted another lance, and then both of them ran away. After this the gentlemen repaired to the huts, and threw into the house where the children were, some beads, ribands, pieces of cloth, and other presents. These they hoped would procure them the good-will of the inhabitants. When, however, the lieutenant and his companions returned the next day, they had the mortification of finding that the beads and ribands which they had left the night before, had not been removed from their places, and that not an Indian was to be seen.

Several of the natives of the country came in sight on the 30th, but they could not be engaged to begin an intercourse with our people. They approached within a certain distance of them, and after shouting several times, went back into the woods. Having done this once more, Mr. Cook followed them himself, alone and unarmed, a considerable way along the shore, but without prevailing upon them to stop.

On the 1st of May he resolved to make an excursion into the country. Accordingly our commander, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and seven others, all of them properly accoutred for the expedition, set out,

and repaired first to the huts near the watering-place, whither some of the Indians continued every day to resort. Though the little presents which had been left there before had not yet been taken away, our gentlemen added others of still greater value, consisting of cloth, beads, combs, and looking-glasses.

In cultivating the ground, there would be no obstruction from the trees, which are tall, straight, and without underwood, and stand a sufficient distance from each other. Between the trees, the land is abundantly covered with grass. Our voyagers saw many houses of the inhabitants, but met with only one of the people, who ran away as soon as he discovered the English. At every place where they went they left presents, hoping that at length they might procure the confidence and good-will of the Indians. They perceived some traces of animals; and the trees over their heads abounded with birds of various kinds, among which were many of exquisite beauty. Loriquets and cockatoos, in particular, were so numerous, that they flew in flocks of several scores together.

While the lieutenant and his friends were upon this excursion, Mr. Gore, who had been sent out in the morning to dredge for oysters, having performed that service, dismissed his boat, and taking a midshipman with him, set out to join the waterers by land. In his way he fell in with a body of two-and-twenty Indians, who followed him, and were often at no greater distance than that of twenty yards. When he perceived them so near, he stopped, and faced about, upon which they likewise stopped; and when he went on again, they continued their pursuit. But though they were all armed with lances, they did not attack Mr. Gore; so that he and the midshipman got in safety to the watering-place. When the natives came in sight of the main body of the English, they halted at about the distance of a quarter of a mile, and stood still. By this Mr. Monkhouse

and two or three of the waterers were encouraged to march up to them; but seeing the Indians keep their ground, they were seized with a sudden fear, which is not uncommon to the rash and fool-hardy, and made a hasty retreat. This step increased the danger which it was intended to avoid. Four of the Indians immediately ran forward, and discharged their lances at the fugitives with such force that they went beyond them. Our people, recovering their spirits, stopped to collect the lances, upon which the natives, in their turn, began to retire. At this time Mr. Cook came up, with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia; and being desirous of convincing the Indians that they were neither afraid of them, nor designed to do them any injury, they advanced towards them, endeavouring by signs of expostulation and entreaty, to engage them to an intercourse, but without effect.

From the boldness which the natives discovered on the first landing of our voyagers, and the terror that afterwards seized them at the sight of the English, it appears that they were sufficiently intimidated by our fire arms. There was not, indeed, the least reason to believe that any of them had been much hurt by the small shot which had been fired at them when they attacked our people on their coming out of the boat. Nevertheless they had probably seen, from their lurking places, the effects which the muskets had upon birds. Tupia, who was become a good marksman, frequently strayed abroad to shoot parrots; and while he was thus employed, he once met with nine Indians, who, as soon as they perceived that he saw them, ran from him in great alarm and confusion.

While, on the 3d of May, Mr. Banks was gathering plants, near the watering-place, Lieut. Cook went with Dr. Solander and Mr. Monkhouse to the head of the bay, for the purpose of examining that part of the country, and of making further attempts to form

some connexions with the natives. In this excursion they acquired additional knowledge concerning the nature of the soil, and its capacities for cultivation, but had no success in their endeavours to engage the inhabitants in coming to a friendly intercourse. Several parties that were sent into the country on the next day, with the same view, were equally unsuccessful. Among the articles of fish which at different times were caught, were large sting-rays, One of them, when his entrails were taken out, weighed three hundred and thirty-six pounds.

It was upon account of the great quantity of plants which Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander collected in this place, that Lieut. Cook was induced to give it the name of Botany Bay. It is situated in the latitude of 34 deg. south, and in the longitude of 208 deg. 37 min. west; and affords a capacious, safe, and convenient shelter for shipping. The Endeavour anchored near the south shore, about a mile within the entrance, for the convenience of sailing with a southerly wind, and because the lieutenant thought it the best situation for watering. But afterwards he found a very fine stream on the north shore, where was a sandy cove, in which a ship might lie almost landlocked, and procure wood and water in the greatest abundance. Though wood is every where plentiful, our commander only saw two species of it that could be considered as timber. Not only the inhabitants who were first discovered, but all who afterwards came in sight, were entirely naked. Of their mode of life our voyagers could know but little, as not the least connexion could be formed with them; but it did not appear that they were numerous, or that they lived in societies. They seemed like other animals, to be scattered about along the coast, and in the woods. Not a single article was touched by them of all that were left at their huts, or at the places where they frequented; so little sense had they of those small conveniences and ornaments which are

generally very alluring to the uncivilized tribes of the globe. During Mr. Cook's stay in this place, he caused the English colours to be displayed every day on shore, and took care that the ship's name, and the date of the year, should be inscribed upon one of the trees near the watering place.

At day-break, on Sunday the 6th of May, our navigators sailed from Botany Bay; and as they proceeded on their voyage, the lieutenant gave the names that are indicated upon the map to the bays, coves, points, and remarkable hills which successively appeared in sight. On the 14th, as the Endeavour advanced to the northward, being then in latitude 30 deg. 22 min. south, and longitude 206 deg. 39 min. west, the land gradually increased in height, so that it may be called a hilly country. On the next day, the vessel being about a league from the shore, our navigators discovered smoke in many places; and having recourse to their glasses, they saw about twenty of the natives, who had each of them a large bundle upon his back. The bundles our people conjectured to be palm leaves for covering the houses of the Indians, and continued to observe them above an hour, during which they walked upon the beach, and up a path that led over a hill of gentle ascent. It was remarkable that not one of them was seen to stop and look towards the Endeavour. They marched along without the least apparent emotion either of curiosity or surprise, though it was impossible that they should not have discerned the ship by some casual glance as they went along the shore, and though she must have been the most stupendous and unaccountable object they had ever beheld.

While, on the 17th, our navigators were in a bay to which Lieut. Cook had given the name of Moreton's Bay, and at a place where the land was not at that time visible, some on board, having observed that the sea looked paler than usual, were of opinion that the bottom of the bay opened into a river. The

lieutenant was sensible that there was no real ground for this supposition. As the Endeavour had here thirty-four fathom water, and a fine sandy bottom, these circumstances alone were sufficient to produce the change which had been noticed in the colour of the sea. Nor was it by any means necessary to suppose a river, in order to account for the land at the bottom of the bay not being visible. If the land there was as low as it had been experienced to be in a hundred other parts of the coast, it would be impossible to see it from the station of the ship. Our commander would, however, have brought the matter to the test of experiment, if the wind had been favourable to such a purpose. Should any future navigator be disposed to determine the question whether there is or is not a river in this place, Mr. Cook has taken care to leave the best directions for finding its situation.

On the 22nd, as our voyagers were pursuing their course from Harvey's Bay, they discovered with their glasses, that the land was covered with palm-nut trees, which they had not seen from the time of their leaving the islands within the tropic. They saw also two men walking along the shore, who paid them as little attention as they had met with on former occasions. At eight o'clock in the evening of this day, the ship came to an anchor in five fathoms, with a fine sandy bottom. Early in the morning of the next day, the lieutenant, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, Tupia, and a party of men, went on shore in order to examine the country. The wind blew fresh, and the weather was so cold, that, being at a considerable distance from land, they took their cloaks as a necessary equipment for the voyage. When they landed, they found a channel leading into a large lagoon. Both the channel and the lagoon were examined by our commander with his usual accuracy. There is in the place a small river of fresh water, and

real ground  
had here  
dy bottom,  
to produce  
e colour of  
ary to sup-  
land at the  
f the land  
d to be in a  
d be impos-  
ship. Our  
t the matter  
d had been  
any future  
estion whe-  
e, Mr. Cook  
s for finding

rsuing their  
d with their  
th palm-nut  
ime of their

They saw  
e, who paid  
et with on  
e evening of  
ve fathoms,  
e morning of  
hied by Mr.  
men, Tupia,  
rder to ex-  
sh, and the  
considerable  
aks as a ne-  
When they  
into a large  
oon were ex-  
ual accuracy.  
h water, and

room for a few ships to lie in great security. Near the lagoon grows the true mangrove, such as exists in the West India islands, and the first of the kind that had yet been met with by our navigators. Among the shoals and sand-banks of the coast they saw many large birds, and some in particular of the same kind which they had seen in Botany Bay. These they judged to be pelicans; but they were so shy as never to come within reach of a musket. On the shore was found a species of the bustard, one of which was shot was equal in size to a turkey, weighing seventeen pounds and a half. All the gentlemen agreed that this was the best bird they had eaten since they had left England, and in honour of it they called the inlet Bustard Bay. Upon the mud banks, and under the mangroves, were innumerable oysters of various kinds, and among others the hammer-oyster, with a large proportion of small pearl oysters. If in deeper water there should be equal plenty of such oysters at their full growth, Mr. Cook was of opinion that a pearl fishery might be established here to very great advantage.

The people who were left on board the ship asserted, that, while the gentlemen were in the woods, about twenty of the natives came down to the beach, abreast of the Endeavour, and, after having looked at her for some time, went away. Not a single Indian was seen by the gentlemen themselves, though they found various proofs, in smoke, fires, and the fragments of recent meals, that the country was inhabited. The place seemed to be much trodden, and yet not a house, or the remains of a house, could be discerned. Hence the lieutenant and his friends were disposed to believe that the people were destitute of dwellings, as well as of clothes; and that, like the other commoners of nature, they spent their nights in the open air. Tupia himself was struck with their apparently unhappy condition; and, shaking his head with an air of superiority and com-

passion, said that they were "taata enos," poor wretches.

On the 25th, our voyagers, at the distance of one mile from the land, were abreast of a point which Mr. Cook found to lie directly under the tropic of Capricorn; and for this reason he called it Cape Capricorn. In the night of the next day, when the ship had anchored at a place which was distant four leagues from Cape Capricorn, the tide rose and fell near seven feet; and the flood set to the westward, and the ebb to the eastward. This circumstance was just the reverse of what had been experienced when the Endeavour was at anchor to the eastward of Bustard Bay.

While our people were under sail on the 26th, and were surrounded with islands which lay at different distances from the main land, they suddenly fell into three fathoms of water. Upon this the lieutenant anchored, and sent away the master to sound the channel which lay between the northernmost island and the main. Though the channel appeared to have a considerable breadth, our commander suspected it to be shallow, and such was in fact the case. The master reported, at his return, that he had only two fathoms and a half in many places; and where the vessel lay at anchor, she had only sixteen feet, which was not two feet more than she drew. Mr. Banks, who, while the master was sounding the channel, tried to fish from the cabin window with hook and line, was successful in catching two sorts of crabs, both of them such as our navigators had not seen before. One of them was adorned with a most beautiful blue, in every respect equal to the ultra-marine. With this blue all his claws and joints were deeply tinged: while the under part of him was white, and so exquisitely polished, that in colour and brightness, it bore an exact resemblance to the white of old china. The other crab was also marked, though somewhat more sparingly, with the ultra-marine on

enos," poor

stance of one point which the tropic of led it Cape y, when the distant four rose and fell e westward, circumstance experienced the eastward

the 26th, and at different enly fell into e lieutenant o sound the umost island eared to have suspected it e case. The had only two d where the n feet, which

Mr. Banks, the channel, ith hook and rts of crabs, had not seen a most beau-ultra-marine. s were deeply as white, and d brightness, white of old ked, though ra-marine on

his joints and his toes; and on his back were three brown spots of a singular appearance.

Early the next morning, Lieut. Cook having found the passage between the islands, sailed to the northward, and, on the evening of the succeeding day, anchored at about two miles distance from the main. At this time a great number of islands, lying a long way without the ship, were in sight. On the 29th, the lieutenant sent away the master with two boats, to sound the entrance of an inlet which lay to the west, and into which he intended to go with the vessel, that he might wait a few days for the moon's increase, and have an opportunity of examining the country. As the tide was observed to ebb and flow considerably, when the Endeavour had anchored within the inlet, our commander judged it to be a river that might run pretty far up into land. Thinking that this might afford a commodious situation for laying the ship ashore and cleaning her bottom, he landed with the master, in search of a proper place for the purpose. He was accompanied in the excursion by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; and they found walking exceedingly troublesome, in consequence of the ground being covered with a kind of grass, the seeds of which were very sharp and bearded. Whenever these seeds stuck into their clothes, which happened at every step, they worked forward by means of the beard till they got at the flesh. Another disagreeable circumstance was, that the gentlemen were incessantly tormented with the stings of a cloud of musquitos. They soon met with several places where the ship might be conveniently laid ashore, but were much disappointed in not being able to find any fresh water. In proceeding up the country they found gum trees, the gum upon which existed only in very small quantities. Gum trees of a similar kind, and as little productive, had occurred in other parts of the coast of New South Wales. Upon the branches of the trees were ants' nests

made of clay, as big as a bushel. The ants themselves by which the nests were inhabited, were small, and their bodies white. Upon another species of the gum tree was found a small black ant, which perforated all the twigs, and having worked out the pith, occupied the pipe in which it had been contained. Notwithstanding this, the parts in which these insects, to an amazing number, had formed a lodgment, bore leaves and flowers, and appeared to be entirely in a flourishing state. Butterflies were found in such multitudes, that the account of them seems almost to be incredible. The air was so crowded with them for the space of three or four acres, that millions might be seen in every direction; and the branches and twigs of the trees were at the same time covered with others that were not upon the wing. A small fish of a singular kind was likewise met with in this place. Its size was about that of a minnow, and it had two very strong breast-fins. It was found in places which were quite dry, and where it might be supposed that it had been left by the tide; and yet it did not appear to have become languid from that circumstance; for when it was approached, it leaped away as nimbly as a frog. Indeed it did not seem to prefer water to land.

Though the curiosity of Mr. Cook and his friends was gratified by the sight of these various objects, they were disappointed in the attainment of their main purpose, the discovery of fresh water; and a second excursion which was made by them on the afternoon of the same day was equally unsuccessful. The failure of the lieutenant's hopes determined him to make but a short stay in the place. Having, however, observed from an eminence, that the inlet penetrated a considerable way into the country, he formed a resolution of tracing it in the morning. Accordingly, at sun-rise, on Wednesday, the 30th of May, he went on shore, and took a view of the coast, and the islands that lie off it, with their bearings. For

this purpose he had with him an azimuth compass ; but he found that the needle differed very considerably in its position, even to thirty degrees, the variations being in some places more, in other places less. Once the needle varied from itself no less than two points in the distance of fourteen feet. Mr. Cook having taken up some of the loose stones which lay upon the ground, applied them to the needle, but they produced no effect ; whence he concluded that in the hills there was iron ore, traces of which he had remarked both here and in the neighbouring parts. After he had made his observations upon the hill, he proceeded with Dr. Solander up the inlet. He set out with the first of the flood, and had advanced about eight leagues before it was high water. The breadth of the inlet, thus far, was from two to five miles, upon a direction south-west by south ; but here it opened every way, and formed a large lake, which to the north-west communicated with the sea. Our commander not only saw the sea in this direction, but found the tide of flood coming strongly in from that point. He observed also an arm of this lake extending to the eastward. Hence he thought it not improbable, that it might communicate with the sea in the bottom of the bay, which lies to the westward of the Cape that on the chart is designated by the name of Cape Townshend. On the south side of the lake is a ridge of hills, which the lieutenant was desirous of climbing. As, however, it was high water, and the day was far spent, and as the weather, in particular, was dark and rainy, he was afraid of being bewildered among the shoals in the night, and therefore was obliged to give up his inclination, and to make the best of his way to the ship. Two people only were seen by him, who followed the boat along the shore a good way at some distance ; but he could not prudently wait for them, as the tide ran strongly in his favour. Several fires in one direction, and smoke in another, exhibited further

proofs of the country being in a certain degree inhabited.

While Mr. Cook, with Dr. Solander, was tracing the inlet, Mr. Banks and a party with him engaged in a separate excursion, in which they had not proceeded far within land before their course was obstructed by a swamp covered with mangroves. This, however, they determined to pass; and having done it with great difficulty, they came up to a place where there had been four small fires, near to which lay some shells, and bones of fish that had been roasted. Heaps of grass were also found lying together, on which four or five people appeared to have slept. Mr. Gore, in another place, observed the track of a large animal. Some bustards were likewise seen, but not any other bird, except a few beautiful loriquets, of the same kind with those which had been noticed in Botany Bay. The country in general in this part of New South Wales appeared sandy and barren, and destitute of accommodations which could fit it for being possessed by settled inhabitants. From the ill success that attended the searching for fresh water, Lieutenant Cook called the inlet in which the ship lay, Thirsty Sound. No refreshment of any other sort was here procured by our voyagers.

Our commander, not having a single inducement to stay longer in this place, weighed anchor in the morning of the 31st, and put to sea. In the prosecution of the voyage, when the Endeavour was close under Cape Upstart, the variation of the needle at sunset on the 4th of June was 9 deg. east, and at sun-rise the next day it was no more than 5 degrees 35 min. Hence the lieutenant concluded that it had been influenced by iron ore, or by some other magnetical matter contained under the surface of the earth. In the afternoon of the 7th, our navigators saw upon one of the islands what had the appearance of cocoa-nut trees; and as a few nuts would at

in degree  
 as tracing  
 engaged  
 did not pro-  
 e was ob-  
 es. This,  
 ving done  
 o a place  
 r to which  
 had been  
 and lying  
 eared to  
 served the  
 were like-  
 few beau-  
 ose which  
 ountry in  
 appeared  
 odations  
 ettle in-  
 ended the  
 called the  
 No re-  
 ed by our  
 luement  
 or in the  
 he prose-  
 was close  
 needle at  
 t, and at  
 degrees  
 at it had  
 er mag-  
 e of the  
 vigators  
 appear-  
 would at

This time have been very acceptable, Mr. Cook sent Lieutenant Hicks ashore, to see if he could procure any refreshment. He was accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; and in the evening the gentlemen returned with an account that what had been taken for cocoa-nut trees were a small kind of cabbage-palm, and that, excepting about fourteen or fifteen plants, nothing could be obtained which was worth bringing away. On the 8th, when the Endeavour was in the midst of a cluster of small islands, our voyagers discerned with their glasses, about thirty of the natives, men, women, and children, all standing together, and looking with great attention at the ship. This was the first instance of curiosity that had been observed among the people of the country. The present Indian spectators were entirely naked. Their hair was short, and their complexion the same with that of such of the inhabitants as had been seen before.

In navigating the coast of New South Wales, where the sea in all parts conceals shoals which suddenly project from the shore, and rocks that rise abruptly like a pyramid from the bottom, our commander had hitherto conducted his vessel in safety for an extent of two-and-twenty degrees of latitude, being more than one thousand three hundred miles. But, on the 10th of June, as he was pursuing his course from a bay to which he had given the name of Trinity Bay, the Endeavour fell into a situation as critical and dangerous as any that is recorded in the history of navigation—a history which abounds with perilous adventures, and almost miraculous escapes. Our voyagers were now near the latitude assigned to the islands that were discovered by Quiros, and which, without sufficient reason, some geographers have thought proper to join to this land. The ship had the advantage of a fine breeze and a clear moonlight night; and in standing off from six till near nine o'clock, she had deepened her water from four-

teen to twenty-one fathoms. But while our navigators were at supper, it suddenly shoaled, and they fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathoms, within the compass of a few minutes. Mr. Cook immediately ordered every man to his station, and all was ready to put about, and come to an anchor; when deep water being met with again at the next cast of the lead, it was concluded that the vessel had gone over the tail of the shoals which had been seen at sun-set, and that the danger was now over. This idea of security was confirmed by the water continuing to deepen to twenty and twenty-one fathoms, so that the gentlemen left the deck in great tranquillity, and went to bed. However, a little before eleven, the water shoaled at once from twenty to seventeen fathoms; and before the lead could be cast again, the ship struck, and remained immoveable, excepting so far as she was influenced by the heaving of the surge, which beat her against the crags of the rock upon which she lay. A few moments brought every person upon deck, with countenances suited to the horrors of the situation. As our people knew, from the breeze which they had in the evening, that they could not be very near the shore, there was too much reason to conclude that they were upon a rock of coral, which, on account of the sharpness of its points, and the roughness of its surface, is more fatal than any other. On examining the depth of water round the ship, it was speedily discovered that the misfortune of our voyagers was equal to their apprehensions. The vessel had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it, in some places of which hollow there were from three to four fathoms, and in others not so many feet of water. To complete the scene of distress, it appeared from the light of the moon that the sheathing boards from the bottom of the ship were floating away all around her, and at last her false keel; so that every moment was making way for the whole company's being swal-

our naviga-  
l, and they  
, within the  
immediately  
l was ready  
when deep  
cast of the  
d gone over  
n at sun-set,  
his idea of  
ontinuing to  
ms, so that  
quillity, and  
eleven, the  
o seventeen  
cast again,  
ble, except-  
e heaving of  
crags of the  
nts brought  
ces suited to  
eople knew,  
vening, that  
ere was too  
upon a rock  
ppness of its  
is more fatal  
th of water  
red that the  
their appre-  
er a ledge of  
it, in some  
hree to four  
et of water.  
peared from  
boards from  
y all around  
ery moment  
being swal-

owed up by the rushing in of the sea. There was  
now no chance but to lighten her, and the opportunity  
had unhappily been lost of doing it to the best ad-  
vantage; for, as the Endeavour had gone ashore just  
at high water, and by this time it had considerably  
fallen, she would when lightened, be but in the same  
situation as at first. The only alleviation of this cir-  
cumstance was, that as the tide ebbed the vessel set-  
tled to the rocks, and was not beaten against them  
with so much violence. Our people had indeed some  
hope from the next tide, though it was doubtful whe-  
ther the ship would hold together so long, especially  
as the rock kept grating part of her bottom with  
such force as to be heard in the fore store-room. No  
effort, however, was remitted from despair of success.  
That no time might be lost, the water was immedi-  
ately started in the hold, and pumped up; six guns  
being all that were upon the deck, a quantity of iron  
and stone ballast, casks, hoop-staves, oil jars, decayed  
stores, and a variety of things besides, were thrown  
overboard with the utmost expedition. Every one  
exerted himself not only without murmuring and  
discontent, but even with an alacrity which almost  
approached to cheerfulness. So sensible, at the same  
time, were the men of the awfulness of their situa-  
tion, that not an oath was heard amongst them, the  
detestable habit of profane swearing being instantly  
suppressed by the dread of incurring guilt when a  
speedy death was in view.

While Lieutenant Cook and all the people about  
him were thus employed, the opening of the morning  
of the 11th of June presented them with a fuller  
prospect of their danger. The land was seen by them  
at about eight leagues distance, without any island  
in the intermediate space, upon which, if the ship  
had gone to pieces, they might have been sent on  
shore by the boats, and carried thence by different  
turns to the main. Gradually, however, the wind  
died away, and early in the forenoon it became a

dead calm—a circumstance this, peculiarly happy in the order of Divine Providence: for, if it had blown hard the vessel must inevitably have been destroyed. High water being expected at eleven in the morning, and every thing being made ready to heave her off, if she could float, to the inexpressible surprise and concern of our navigators, so much did the day-tide fall short of that of the night, that though they had lightened the ship nearly fifty tons, she did not float by a foot and a half. Hence it became necessary to lighten her still more, and every thing was thrown overboard that could possibly be spared. Hitherto the Endeavour had not admitted much water; but as the tide fell, it rushed in so fast, that she could scarcely be kept free, though two pumps were incessantly worked. There were now no hopes but from the tide at midnight, to prepare for taking the advantage of which the most vigorous efforts were exerted. About five o'clock in the afternoon the tide began to rise; but at the same time, the leak increased to a most alarming degree. Two more pumps, therefore, were manned, one of which unhappily, would not work. Three pumps, however, were kept going, and at nine o'clock the ship righted. Nevertheless, the leak had gained so considerably upon her, that it was imagined she must go to the bottom as soon as she ceased to be supported by the rock. It was, indeed, a dreadful circumstance to our commander and his people, that they were obliged to anticipate the floating of the vessel, not as an earnest of their deliverance, but as an event which probably would precipitate their destruction. They knew that their boats were not capable of carrying the whole of them on shore, and that when the dreadful crisis should arrive, all command and subordination being at an end, a contest for preference might be expected, which would increase even the horrors of shipwreck, and turn their rage against each other. Some of them were sensible, that if they should

liarily happy  
 or, if it had  
 y have been  
 at eleven in  
 ade ready to  
 inexpressible  
 so much did  
 night, that  
 ly fifty tons,  
 F. Hence it  
 re, and every  
 l possibly be  
 not admitted  
 ed in so fast,  
 though two  
 re were now  
 at, to prepare  
 most vigorous  
 k in the after-  
 e same time,  
 degree. Two  
 one of which  
 ps, however,  
 ship righted.  
 considerably  
 ust go to the  
 orted by the  
 stance to our  
 were obliged  
 l, not as an  
 event which  
 action. They  
 e of carrying  
 en the dread-  
 nd subordina-  
 erence might  
 n the horrors  
 st each other,  
 they should

escape to the main land, they were likely to suffer more, upon the whole, than those who would be left on board to perish in the waves. The latter would only be exposed to instant death; whereas the former, when they got on shore, would have no lasting or effectual defence against the natives, in a part of the country where even nets and fire-arms could scarcely furnish them with food. But supposing that they should find the means of subsistence, how horrible must be their state to be condemned to languish out the remainder of their lives in a desolate wilderness, without the possession or hope of domestic comfort; and to be cut off from all commerce with mankind, excepting that of the naked savages who prowl the desert, and who perhaps are some of the most rude and uncivilized inhabitants of the earth!

The dreadful moment which was to determine the fate of our voyagers now drew on; and every one saw, in the countenances of his companions, the picture of his own sensations. Not, however, giving way to despair, the lieutenant ordered the capstan and windlass to be manned with as many hands as could be spared from the pumps, and the ship having floated about twenty minutes after ten o'clock, the grand effort was made, and she was heaved into deep water. It was no small consolation to find that she did not now admit of more water than she had done when upon the rock. By the gaining, indeed, of the leak upon the pumps, three feet and nine inches of water were in the hold; notwithstanding which, the men did not relinquish their labour. Thus they held the water as it were at bay; but having endured excessive fatigue of body, and agitation of mind, for more than twenty-four hours, and all this being attended with little hope of final success, they began at length to flag. None of them could work at the pump above five or six minutes together, after which, being totally exhausted, they threw themselves down

upon the deck, though a stream of water, between three and four inches deep, was running over it from the pumps. When those who succeeded them had worked their time, and in their turn were exhausted, they threw themselves down in the same manner, and the others started up again to renew their labour. While they were thus employed in relieving each other, an accident was very nearly putting an immediate end to all their efforts. The planking which lines the ship's bottom is called the ceiling, between which and the outside planking there is a space of about eighteen inches. From this ceiling only, the man who had hitherto attended the well had taken the depth of the water, and had given the measure accordingly. But, upon his being relieved, the person who came in his room reckoned the depth to the outside planking, which had the appearance of the leak having gained upon the pumps eighteen inches in a few minutes. The mistake, however, was soon detected; and the accident, which in its commencement was very formidable to them, became, in fact highly advantageous. Such was the joy which every man felt at finding his situation better than his fears had suggested, that it operated with wonderful energy, and seemed to possess him with a strong persuasion that scarcely any real danger remained. New confidence and new hope inspired fresh vigour; and the efforts of the men were exerted with so much alacrity and spirit, that before eight o'clock in the morning the pumps had gained considerably upon the leak. All the conversation now turned upon carrying the ship into some harbour, as a thing not to be doubted; and as hands could be spared from the pumps, they were employed in getting up the anchors. It being found impossible to save the little bower anchor, it was cut away at a whole cable, and the cable of the stream anchor was lost among the rocks; but, in the situation of our people, these were trifles which scarcely attracted their notice. The fore-top mast

er, between  
ver it from  
them had  
exhausted,  
ne manner,  
eir labour.  
ieving each  
g an imme-  
king which  
g, between  
a space of  
g only, the  
had taken  
the measure  
l, the person  
to the out-  
of the leak  
inches in a  
was soon  
commence-  
ame, in fact  
hich every  
an his fears  
erful energy,  
g persuasion  
New con-  
ur; and the  
uch alacrity  
the morning  
on the leak.  
arrying the  
be doubted;  
pumps, they  
s. It being  
r anchor, it  
cable of the  
cks; but, in  
trifles which  
ore-top mast

nd fore-yard were now erected, and there being a  
reeze from the sea, the Endeavour, at eleven o'clock,  
ot once more under sail, and stood for the land.  
Notwithstanding these favourable circumstances,  
r voyagers were still very far from being in a state  
safety. It was not possible long to continue the  
hour by which the pumps had been made to gain  
on the leak; and as the exact place of it could  
ot be discovered, there were no hopes of stopping it  
ithin. At this crisis, Mr. Monkhouse, one of the  
dshipmen, came to Lieut. Cook, and proposed an  
pedient he had once seen used on board a merchant  
ip, which had sprung a leak that admitted more  
an four feet water in an hour, and which by this  
eans had been safely brought from Virginia to Lon-  
on. To Mr. Monkhouse, therefore, the care of the  
pedient, which is called fothering the ship, was  
ith proper assistance, committed; and his method  
proceeding was as follows:—He took a lower stud-  
ng sail, and having mixed together a large quantity  
oakum and wool, he stitched it down, as lightly  
ossible, in handfuls upon the sail, and spread over  
the dung of the sheep of the vessel, and other filth.  
he sail being thus prepared, it was hauled under  
e ship's bottom by ropes, which kept it extended.  
hen it came under the leak, the suction that carried  
the water carried in with it the oakum and the  
ool from the surface of the sail. In other parts,  
e water was not sufficiently agitated to wash off  
e oakum and the wool. The success of the expe-  
ent was answerable to the warmest expectations;  
r hereby the leak was so far reduced, that, instead  
gaining upon the three pumps, it was easily kept  
nder with one. Here was such a new source of  
onfidence and comfort, that our people could scarcely  
ave expressed more joy if they had been already in  
ort. It had lately been the utmost object of their  
ope to run the ship ashore in some harbour, either  
an island or the main, and to build a vessel out of

her materials, to carry them to the East Indies. Nothing, however, was now thought of but to range along the coast in search of a convenient place to repair the damage the Endeavour had sustained, and then to prosecute the voyage upon the same plan as if no impediment had happened. In justice and gratitude to the ship's company, and the gentlemen on board, Mr. Cook has recorded, that although in the midst of their distress all of them seemed to have a just sense of their danger, no man gave way to passionate exclamations, or frantic gestures. "Every one appeared to have the perfect possession of his mind, and every one exerted himself to the utmost, with a quiet and patient perseverance, equally distant from the tumultuous violence of terror, and the gloomy inactivity of despair." Though the lieutenant has said nothing of himself, it was well known that his own composure, fortitude, and activity were equal to the greatness of the occasion.

To complete the history of this wonderful preservation, it is necessary to bring forward a circumstance which could not be discovered till the ship was laid down to be repaired. It was then found that one of her holes, which was large enough to have sunk our navigators if they had had eight pumps instead of four, and had been able to keep them incessantly going, was in a great measure filled up by a fragment of the rock upon which the Endeavour had struck. To this singular event, therefore, it was owing, that the water did not pour in with a violence which must speedily have involved the Endeavour and all her company in inevitable destruction.

Hitherto none of the names by which our commander had distinguished the several parts of the country seen by him, were memorials of distress. But the anxiety and danger which he and his people had now experienced, induced him to call a point in sight, which lay to the northward, Cape Tribulation.

The next object after his event was to look out

for a harbour, where the defects of the ship might be repaired, and the vessel put into proper order for future navigation. On the 14th, a small harbour was happily discovered, which was excellently adapted to the purpose. It was indeed remarkable, that, during the whole course of the voyage, our people had seen no place which, in their present circumstances, could have afforded them the same relief. They could not, however, immediately get into it; and, in the midst of all their joy for their unexpected deliverance, they had not forgot that there was nothing but a lock of wool between them and destruction.

At this time the scurvy, with many formidable symptoms, began to make its appearance among our navigators. Tupia, in particular, was so grievously affected by the disease, that all the remedies prescribed by the surgeon could not retard its progress. Mr. Green, the astronomer, was also upon the decline. These and other circumstances embittered the delay which prevented our commander and his companions from getting on shore. In the morning of the 17th, though the wind was still fresh, the lieutenant ventured to weigh, and to put in for the harbour, the entrance into which was by a very narrow channel. In making the attempt the ship was twice run aground. At the first time she went off without any trouble, but the second time she stuck fast. Nevertheless, by proper exertions, in conjunction with the rising of the tide, she floated about one o'clock in the afternoon, and was soon warped into the harbour. The succeeding day was employed in erecting two tents, in landing the provisions and stores, and in making every preparation for repairing the damages which the Endeavour had sustained. In the meanwhile, Mr. Cook, who had ascended one of the highest hills that overlooked the harbour, was by no means entertained with a comfortable prospect, the low land near the river being wholly overrun with mangroves.

among which the salt water flows at every tide, and the high land appearing to be altogether stony and barren. Mr. Banks also took a walk up the country, and met with the frames of several old Indian houses, and places where the natives, though not recently, had dressed shell-fish. The boat which had this day been dispatched to haul the seine, with a view of procuring some fish, for the refreshment of the sick, returned without success. Tupia was more fortunate, having employed himself in angling, and living entirely upon what he caught, he recovered in a surprising degree. Mr. Green, to the regret of his friends, exhibited no symptoms of returning health.

On the 19th, Mr. Banks crossed the river, to take a further view of the country, which he found to consist principally of sand-hills. Some Indian houses were seen by him, that appeared to have been very lately inhabited; and in his walk he met with large flocks of pigeons and crows. The pigeons were exceedingly beautiful. Of these he shot several; but the crows, which were exactly like those in England, were so shy, that they never came within reach of his gun.

It was not till the 22d that the tide so far left the Endeavour, as to give our people an opportunity of examining her leak. In the place where it was found, the rocks had made their way through four planks, and even into the timbers. Three more planks were greatly damaged, and there was something very extraordinary in the appearance of the breaches. Not a splinter was to be seen, but all was as smooth as if the whole had been cut away by an instrument. It was a peculiarly happy circumstance that the timbers were here very close, since otherwise, the ship could not possibly have been saved. Now also, it was that the fragment of the rock was discovered, which, by sticking in the leak of the vessel, had been such a providential instrument of her preservation.

On the same day, some of the people who had been

ent to shoot pigeons for the sick, and who had discovered many Indian houses, and a fine stream of fresh water, reported, at their return, that they had seen an animal as large as a greyhound, of a slender make, of a mouse colour, and extremely swift. As the lieutenant was walking, on the morning of the 24th, at a little distance from the ship, he had an opportunity of seeing an animal of the same kind. From the description he gave of it, and from an imperfect view which occurred to Mr. Banks, the latter gentleman was of opinion that its species was hitherto unknown.

The position of the vessel, while she was refitting for sea, was very near depriving the world of that botanical knowledge which Mr. Banks had procured at the expense of so much labour and such various perils. For the security of the curious collection of plants which he had made during the whole voyage, he had removed them into the bread-room. This room is in the after part of the ship, the head of which, for the purpose of repairing her, was laid much higher than the stern. No one having thought of the danger to which this circumstance might expose the plants, they were found to be under water. However, by the exercise of unremitting attention, the larger part of them was restored to a state of preservation.

Early in the morning of the 2d of July, Lieutenant Cook sent the master out of the harbour, in the pinnace to sound about the shoals, and to search for a channel to the northward. A second attempt which was made this day to heave off the ship, was as unsuccessful as a former one had been. The next day the master returned, and reported that he had found a passage out to sea between the shoals. On one of these shoals, which consisted of coral rocks, many of which were dry at low water, he had landed, and found there cockles of so enormous a size, that a single cockle was more than two men could eat. At

the same place he met with a great variety of other shell fish, and brought back with him a plentiful supply for the use of his fellow voyagers. At high-water this day, another effort was made to float the ship, which happily succeeded; but it being found that she had sprung a plank between decks, it became necessary to lay her ashore a second time. The lieutenant, being anxious to attain a perfect knowledge of the state of the vessel, got one of the carpenter's crew, a man in whom he could confide, to dive, on the 5th, to her bottom, that he might examine the place where the sheathing had been rubbed off. His report, which was, that three streaks of the sheathing, about eight feet long, were wanting, and that the main plank had been a little rubbed, was perfectly agreeable to the account that had been given before by the master and others, who had made the same examination: and our commander had the consolation of finding, that, in the opinion of the carpenter, this matter would be of little consequence. The other damage, therefore, being repaired, the ship was again floated at high water, and all hands were employed in taking the stores on board, and in putting her into a condition for proceeding on her voyage. To the harbour in which she was refitted for the sea, Mr. Cook gave the name of the Endeavour River.

On the morning of the 6th, Mr. Banks, accompanied by Lieut. Gore, and three men, set out in a small boat up the river, with a view of spending a few days in examining the country. In this expedition nothing escaped his notice, which related either to the natural history or the inhabitants of the places he visited. Though he met with undoubted proofs that several of the natives were at no great distance, none of them came within sight. Having found, upon the whole, that the country did not promise much advantage from a further search, he and his party re-embarked in their boat, and returned,

On the 8th, to the ship. During their excursion, they had slept on the ground in perfect security, and without once reflecting upon the danger they would have incurred, if in that situation they had been discovered by the Indians.

Lieut. Cook had not been satisfied with the account which the master had given of his having traced a passage between the shoals into the sea. He sent him out, therefore, a second time upon the same business; and, on his return, he made a different report. Having been seven leagues out at sea, the master was now of opinion that there was no such passage as he had before imagined. His expedition however, though in this respect unsuccessful, was not wholly without its advantage. On the very rock where he had seen the large cockles, he met with a great number of turtle; and though he had no better instrument than a boat-hook, three of them were caught, which together weighed seven hundred and ninety-one pounds. An attempt, which by order of the lieutenant, was made next morning to obtain some more turtle, failed through the misconduct of the same officer who had been so fortunate on the preceding day.

Hitherto the natives of this part of the country had eagerly avoided holding any intercourse with our people; but at length their minds, through the good management of Mr. Cook, became more favourably disposed. Four of them having appeared on the 10th, in a small canoe, and seeming to be busily employed in striking fish, some of the ship's company were for going over to them in a boat. This, however, the lieutenant would not permit, repeated experience having convinced him that it was more likely to prevent than to procure an interview. He determined to pursue a contrary method, and try what could be done by letting them alone, and not appearing to make them, in the least degree, the objects of his notice. So successful was this plan,

that, after some preparatory intercourse, they came alongside the ship, without expressing any fear or distrust. The conference was carried on by signs, with the utmost cordiality, till dinner-time, when, being invited by our people to go with them and partake of their provision, they declined it, and went away in their canoe. One of these Indians was somewhat above the middle age; the three others were young. Their stature was of the common size, but their limbs were remarkably small. The colour of their skin was a dark chocolate. Their hair was black, but not woolly; and their features were far from being disagreeable. They had lively eyes, and their teeth were even and white. The tones of their voices were soft and musical, and there was a flexibility in their organs of speech, which enabled them to repeat with great facility, many of the words pronounced by the English.

On the next morning, our voyagers had another visit from four of the natives. Three of them were the same who had appeared the day before; but the fourth was a stranger, to whom his companions gave the name of Yaparico. He was distinguished by a very peculiar ornament; this was the bone of a bird, nearly as thick as a man's finger, and five or six inches long, which he had thrust into a hole made in the gristle that divides the nostrils. An instance of the like kind, and only one, had been seen in New Zealand. It was found, however, that among all these people, the same part of the nose was perforated; that they had holes in their ears; and that they had bracelets made of plaited hair, upon the upper part of their arms. Thus the love of ornament takes place among them, though they are absolutely destitute of apparel.

Three Indians, on the 12th, ventured down to Tupia's tent, and were so pleased with their reception, that one of them went with his canoe to fetch two others, who had never been seen by the English.

On his return, he introduced the strangers by name—a ceremony which was never omitted upon such occasions. From a further acquaintance with the natives, it was found that the colour of their skins was not so dark as had at first been apprehended, and that all of them were remarkably clean limbed, and extremely active and nimble. Their language appeared to be more harsh than that of the islanders in the South Sea.

On the 17th, Mr. Cook sent the master and one of the mates in the pinnace to search for a channel northward; after which, accompanied by Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, he went into the woods on the other side of the water. In this excursion, the gentlemen had a further opportunity of improving their acquaintance with the Indians, who by degrees became so familiar, that several of them, the next day, ventured on board the ship. There the lieutenant left them, apparently much entertained, that he might go with Mr. Banks to take a further survey of the country, and especially to indulge an anxious curiosity they had of looking round about them upon the sea, of which they earnestly wished, but scarcely dared to hope, that they might obtain a favourable and encouraging prospect. When, after having walked along the shore for seven or eight miles to the northward, they ascended a very high hill, the view which presented itself to them inspired nothing but melancholy apprehensions. In every direction they saw rocks and shoals without number; and there appeared to be no passage out to sea but through the winding channels between them, the navigation of which could not be accomplished without the utmost degree of difficulty and danger. The spirits of the two gentlemen were not raised by this excursion.

On the 19th, our voyagers were visited by ten of the natives; and six or seven more were seen at a distance, chiefly women, who were as naked as the

male inhabitants of the country. There being at that time a number of turtles on the deck of the ship; the Indians who came on board were determined to get one of them, and expressed great disappointment and anger when our people refused to comply with their wishes. Several attempts were made by them to secure what they wanted by force, but all their efforts proving unsuccessful, they suddenly leaped into their canoe in a transport of rage, and paddled towards the shore. The lieutenant, with Mr. Banks, and five or six of the ship's crew, immediately went into the boat, and got ashore, where many of the English were engaged in various employments. As soon as the natives reached the land, they siezed their arms, which had been laid up in a tree, and having snatched a brand from under a pitch-kettle that was boiling, made a circuit to the westward of the few things our people had on shore, and with surprising quickness and dexterity set fire to the grass in their way. The grass, which was as dry as stubble, and five or six feet high, burned with surprising fury; and a tent of Mr. Banks' would have been destroyed, if that gentleman had not immediately got some of the men to save it by hauling it down upon the beach. Every part of the smith's forge, that would burn, was consumed. This transaction was followed by one of the same nature. In spite of threats and entreaties, the Indians went to a different place, where several of the Endeavour's crew were washing, and where the seine, the other nets, and a large quantity of linen, were laid out to dry, and again set fire to the grass. The audacity of this fresh attack rendered it necessary that a musket loaded with small shot should be fired at one of them, who being wounded at the distance of about forty yards, they all betook themselves to flight. In the last instance the fire was extinguished before it had made any considerable progress; but where it had first begun, it spread far into the woods. The natives being still in sight, Mr.

Cook, to convince them that they had not got out of his reach, fired a musket, charged with ball, abreast of them, among the mangroves, upon which they quickened their pace, and were soon out of view. It was now expected that they would have given our navigators no further trouble; but in a little time their voices were heard in the woods, and it was perceived that they came nearer and nearer. The lieutenant, therefore, together with Mr. Banks and three or four more persons, set out to meet them; and the result of the interview, in consequence of the prudent and lenient conduct of our commander and his friends, was a complete reconciliation. Soon after the Indians went away, the woods were seen to be on fire, at the distance of two miles. This accident, if it had happened a little sooner, might have produced dreadful effects; for the powder had been but a few days on board, and it was not many hours that the store tent, with all the valuable things contained in it, had been removed. From the fury with which the grass would burn in this hot climate, and the difficulty of extinguishing the fire, our voyagers determined never to expose themselves to the like danger, but to clear the ground around them, if ever again they should be under the necessity of pitching their tents in such a situation.

In the evening of this day, when every thing was got on board the ship, and she was nearly ready for sailing, the master returned with the disagreeable account that there was no passage for her to the northward. The next morning, the lieutenant himself sounded and buoyed the bar. At this time the hills for many miles round were on fire, and the appearance they assumed at night was eminently striking and splendid.

In an excursion that was made by Mr. Banks, on the 23rd, to gather plants, he found the greatest part of the cloth that had been given to the Indians lying in a heap together. This, as well as the trinkets

which had been bestowed upon them, they probably regarded as useless lumber. Indeed they seemed to set little value on any thing possessed by our people, excepting their turtle, and that was a commodity which could not be spared.

As Lieutenant Cook was prevented by blowing weather from attempting to get out to sea, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander seized another opportunity, on the 24th, of pursuing their botanical researches. Having traversed the woods the greater part of the day without success, as they were returning through a deep valley, they discovered lying upon the ground several marking nuts, the *anacardium orientale*. Animated with the hope of meeting with the tree that bore them, a tree which perhaps, no European botanist had ever seen, they sought for it with great diligence and labour, but to no purpose. While Mr. Banks was again gleaning the country, on the 26th, to enlarge his treasure of natural history, he had the good fortune to take an animal of the opossum tribe, together with two young ones. It was a female, and though not exactly of the same species, much resembled the remarkable animal which Mons. Buffon has described by the name of phalanger.

Early on the 4th of August, the Endeavour got once more under sail with a light air from the land, which soon died away, and was followed by sea-breezes from south-east by south. With these breezes the ship stood off to sea, east by north, having the pinnace a head, which was ordered to keep sounding without intermission. A little before noon, the lieutenant anchored in fifteen fathoms water, with a sandy bottom; the reason of which was, that he did not think it safe to run in among the shoals, till, by taking a view of them from the mast-head at low water, he might be able to form some judgment which way it would be proper for him to steer. This was a matter of nice and arduous determination. As yet,

Mr. Cook was in doubt whether he should beat back to the southward, round all the shoals, or seek a passage to the eastward or the northward: nor was it possible to say whether each of these courses might not be attended with equal difficulty and danger.

The impartiality and humanity of Lieut. Cook's conduct in the distribution of provisions ought not to pass unnoticed. Whatever turtle or other fish were caught, they were equally divided among the whole ship's crew, the meanest person on board having the same share with the lieutenant himself. He has justly observed that this is a rule which every commander will find it his interest to follow in any voyage of a similar nature.

Great difficulties occurred in the navigation from the Endeavour river. On the 5th of August, the lieutenant had not kept his course long, before shoals were discovered in every quarter, which obliged him, as night approached, to come to an anchor. In the morning of the 6th, there was so strong a gale, that our voyagers were prevented from weighing. When it was low water, Mr. Cook, with several of his officers, kept a look out at the mast-head, to see if any passage could be discovered between the shoals. Nothing, however, was in view excepting breakers, which extended from the south round by the east as far to the north-west, and reached out to sea, beyond the sight of any of the gentlemen. It did not appear that these breakers were caused by one continued shoal, but by several which lay detached from each other. On that which was the furthest to the westward, the sea broke very high, so that the lieutenant was induced to think that it was the outermost shoal. He was now convinced that there was no passage to sea but through the labyrinth formed by these shoals; and at the same time he was wholly at a loss what course to steer, when the weather should permit the vessel to sail. The master's opinion was, that our navigators should beat back the way they came; but

as the wind blew strongly, and almost without intermission from that quarter, this would have been an endless labour, and yet, if a passage could not be found to the northward, there was no other alternative. Amidst these anxious deliberations, the gale increased, and continued with little remission, till the morning of the 10th, when the weather becoming more moderate, our commander weighed, and stood in for the land. He had now come to a final determination of seeking a passage along the shore to the northward.

In pursuance of this resolution, the Endeavour proceeded in her course, and at noon came between the furthestmost headland that lay in sight, and three islands which were four or five leagues to the north of it, out at sea. Here our navigators thought they saw a clear opening before them, and began to hope that they were once more out of danger. Of this hope, however, they were soon deprived; on which account the lieutenant gave the headland the name of Cape Flattery. After he had steered some time along the shore for what was believed to be the open channel, the petty officer at the mast-head cried out aloud that he saw land ahead, which extended quite round to the three islands, and that between the ship and them there was a large reef. Mr. Cook, upon this, ran up to the mast-head himself, and plainly discerned the reef, which was so far to the windward that it could not be weathered. As to the land which the petty officer had supposed to be the main, our commander was of opinion that it was only a cluster of small islands. The master, and some others, who went up the mast-head after the lieutenant, were entirely of a different opinion. All of them were positive that the land in sight did not consist of islands, but that it was a part of the main; and they rendered their report still more alarming by adding, that they saw breakers around them on every side. In a situation so critical and doubtful,

Mr. Cook thought proper to come to an anchor under a high point, which he immediately ascended, that he might have a further view of the sea and country. The prospect he had from this place, which he called Point Look-out, clearly confirmed him in his former opinion, the justness of which displayed one of those numerous instances wherein it was manifest how much he exceeded the people about him in the sagacity of his judgment concerning matters of navigation.

The lieutenant, being anxious to discover more distinctly the situation of the shoals, and the channel between them, determined to visit the northernmost and largest of the three islands before mentioned, which, from its height, and its lying five leagues out to sea, was peculiarly adapted to his purpose. Accordingly, in company with Mr. Banks, whose fortitude and curiosity stimulated him to take a share in every undertaking, he set out in the pinnace, on the morning of the eleventh, upon this expedition.

While the lieutenant was engaged in his survey, Mr. Banks, always attentive to the great object of natural history, collected some plants which he had never met with before. No animals were perceived upon the place, excepting lizards, for which reason the gentlemen gave it the name of Lizard Island. In their return to the ship, they landed on a low sandy island that had trees upon it, and which abounded with an incredible number of birds, principally sea-fowl. Here they found the nest of an eagle, and the nest of some other bird, of what species they could not distinguish; but it must certainly be one of the largest kinds that exist. This was apparent from the enormous size of the nest, which was built with sticks upon the ground, and was no less than six-and-twenty feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches in height. The spot which the gentlemen were now upon they called Eagle Island.

When Lieut. Cook got on board, he entered into a very serious deliberation concerning the course he

should pursue. After considering what he had seen himself, and the master's report, he was of opinion, that by keeping in with the main land, he should run the risk of being locked in by the great reef, and of being compelled at last to return back in search of another passage. By the delay that would hence be occasioned, our navigators would almost certainly be prevented from getting in time to the East Indies, which was a matter of the utmost importance, and indeed of absolute necessity; for they had now not much more than three months' provision on board, at short allowance. The judgment the lieutenant had formed, together with the facts and appearances on which it was grounded, he stated to his officers, by whom it was unanimously agreed that the best thing they could do would be to quit the coast entirely, till they could approach it again with less danger.

In pursuance of this resolution, the Endeavour early in the morning of the 13th, got under sail, and successfully passed through one of the channels, or openings in the outer reef, which Mr. Cook had seen from the island. When the ship had got without the breakers, there was no ground within one hundred and fifty fathoms, and our people found a large sea rolling in upon them from the south-east. This was a certain sign that neither land nor shoals were near them in that direction.

So happy a change in the situation of our voyagers was sensibly felt in every breast, and was visible in every countenance. They had been little less than three months in a state that perpetually threatened them with destruction. Frequently had they passed their nights at anchor within hearing of the surge that broke over the shoals and rocks; and they knew that if by any accident the anchors should not hold against an almost continual tempest, they must in a few minutes inevitably perish. They had sailed three hundred and sixty leagues without once, even for a moment, having a man out of the chains heaving the

lead. This was a circumstance which perhaps never had happened to any other vessel. But now our navigators found themselves in an open sea with deep water; and the joy they experienced was proportioned to their late danger, and their present security. Nevertheless, the very waves, which proved by their swell that our people had no rocks or shoals to fear, convinced them, at the same time, that they could not put a confidence in the ship equal to what they had done before she struck. So far were her leaks widened by the blows she received from the waves, that she admitted no less than nine inches of water in an hour. If our company had not been lately in so much more imminent danger, this fact, considering the state of the pumps, and the navigation which was still in view, would have been a matter of very serious concern.

The passage or channel through which the Endeavour passed into the open sea beyond the reef, lies in latitude 14 deg. 32 min. south. It may always be known by the three high islands within it, to which, on account of the use they may be of in guiding the way of future voyagers, our commander gave the appellation of the Islands of Direction.

It was not a long time that our navigators enjoyed the satisfaction of being free from the alarm of danger. As they were pursuing their course in the night of the 15th, they sounded frequently, but had no bottom with one hundred and fifty fathoms, nor any ground with the same length of line. Nevertheless, at four in the morning of the 16th, they plainly heard the roaring of the surf, and at break of day saw it foaming to a vast height, at not more than the distance of a mile. The waves, which rolled in upon the reef, carried the vessel towards it with great rapidity; and, at the same time, our people could reach no ground with an anchor, and had not a breath of wind for a sail. In a situation so dreadful, there was no recourse but in the boats; and most

unhappily, the pinnace was under repair. By the help, however, of the long-boat, and the yawl, which were sent ahead to tow, the ship's head was got round to the northward—a circumstance which might delay, if it could not prevent destruction. This was not effected till six o'clock, and our voyagers were not then a hundred yards from the rock, upon which the same billow that washed the side of the vessel broke to a tremendous height the very next time it rose. There was only, therefore, a dreary valley between the English and destruction—a valley no wider than the base of one wave, while the sea under them was unfathomable. The carpenter, in the mean while, having hastily patched up the pinnace, she was hoisted out, and sent ahead to tow in aid of the other boats. But all these efforts would have been ineffectual, if a light air of wind had not sprung up just at the crisis of our people's fate. It was so light an air, that at any other time it would not have been observed; but it was sufficient to turn the scale in favour of our navigators; and, in conjunction with the assistance which was afforded by the boats, it gave the ship a perceptible motion obliquely from the reef. The hopes of the company now revived; but in less than ten minutes a dead calm succeeded, and the vessel was again driven towards the breakers, which were now at the distance of two hundred yards. However, before the ground was lost which had already been gained, the same light breeze returned, and lasted ten minutes more. During this time a small opening, about a quarter of a mile distant was discovered in the reef; upon which Mr. Cook immediately sent one of the mates to examine it, who reported that its breadth was not more than the length of the ship, but that within it there was smooth water. This discovery presented the prospect of a possibility of an escape, by pushing the vessel through the opening. Accordingly the attempt was made, but it failed of success: for when our pe ple, by the

joint assistance of their boats and the breeze, had reached the opening, they found that it had become high water; and to their great surprise, they met the tide of ebb running out like a mill stream. In direct contrariety to their expectations, some advantage was gained by this event. Though it was impossible to go through this opening, the stream, which prevented the Endeavour from doing it, carried her out about a quarter of a mile; and the boats were so much assisted in towing her, by the tide of ebb, that at noon she had gained the distance of nearly two miles. However, there was yet too much reason to despair of deliverance; for even if the breeze which had now died away, had revived, our navigators were still embayed in the reef; and the tide of ebb being spent, the tide of flood, notwithstanding their utmost efforts, drove the ship back again into her former perilous situation. Happily, about this time, another opening was perceived, nearly a mile to the westward. Our commander immediately sent Mr. Hicks, the first lieutenant, to examine it; and in the meanwhile the Endeavour struggled hard with the flood, sometimes gaining and sometimes losing ground. During this severe service, every man did his duty with as much calmness and regularity as if no danger had been near. At length Mr. Hicks returned with the intelligence that the opening, though narrow and hazardous, was capable of being passed. The bare possibility of passing it was encouragement sufficient to make the attempt; and indeed all danger was less to be dreaded by our people than that of continuing in their present situation. A light breeze having fortunately sprung up, this, in conjunction with the aid of boats, and the very tide of flood, that would otherwise have been their destruction, enabled them to enter the opening, through which they were hurried with amazing rapidity. Such was the force of the torrent by which they were carried along, that they were

kept from driving against either side of the channel, which in breadth was not more than a quarter of a mile. While they were sounding this gulf, their soundings were remarkably irregular, varying from thirty to seven fathoms, and the ground at bottom was foul.

As soon as our navigators had got within the reef, they came to an anchor: and their joy was exceedingly great at having regained a situation which, three days before, they had quitted with the utmost pleasure and transport. Rocks and shoals, which are always dangerous to the mariner, even when they are previously known and marked, are peculiarly dangerous in seas which have never been navigated before; and in this part of the globe they are more perilous than in any other. Here they consist of reefs of coral rock, which rise like a wall almost perpendicularly out of the deep, and are always overflowed at high water. Here, too, the enormous waves of the vast southern coast, meeting with so abrupt a resistance, break, with inconceivable violence, in a surf which cannot be produced by any rocks or storms in the northern hemisphere. A crazy ship, shortness of provisions, and a want of every necessary, greatly increased the danger to our present voyagers of navigating in this ocean. Nevertheless, such is the ardour of the human mind, and so flattering is the distinction of a first discoverer, that Lieut. Cook and his companions cheerfully encountered every peril, and submitted to every inconvenience. They choose rather to incur the charge of imprudence and temerity, than to leave a country unexplored which they had discovered, or to afford the least colour for its being said that they were deficient in perseverance and fortitude. It scarcely needs to be added, that it was the high and magnanimous spirit of our commander in particular which inspired his people with so much resolution and vigour.

The lieutenant, having now got within the reef, determined, whatever might be the consequence, to keep the main land on board, in his future route to the northward. His reason for this determination was, that if he had gone without the reef again, he might have been carried by it so far from the coast, as to prevent his being able to ascertain whether this country did or did not join to New Guinea—a question which he had fixed upon resolving from the first moment that he had come within sight of land. To the opening through which the Endeavour had passed, our commander, with a proper sense of gratitude to the Supreme Being, gave the name of Providential Channel. In the morning of the 17th, the boats had been sent out to see what refreshments could be procured, and returned in the afternoon with two hundred and forty pounds of the meat of shell-fish, chiefly of cockles. Some of the cockles were as much as two men could move, and contained twenty pounds of good meat. Mr. Banks, who had gone out in his little boat, accompanied by Dr. Solander, brought back a variety of curious shells, and many species of coral.

In the prosecution of the voyage, our people, on the 19th, were encompassed on every side with rocks and shoals: but, as they had lately been exposed to great danger, and these objects were now become familiar, they began to regard them with comparatively little concern. On the 21st, there being two points in view, between which our navigators could see no land, they conceived hopes of having at last found a passage into the Indian Sea. Mr. Cook, however, that he might be able to determine the matter with greater certainty, resolved to land upon an island which lies at the south-east point of the passage. Accordingly he went into the boat, with a party of men, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. As they were getting on shore, some of the natives seemed inclined to oppose their landing,

but soon walked leisurely away. The gentlemen immediately climbed the highest hill, from which no land could be seen between the south-west and west-south-west; so that the lieutenant had not the least doubt of finding a channel through which he could pass to New Guinea. As he was now about to quit the coast of New Holland, which he had traced from latitude thirty-eight to this place, and which he was certain no European had ever seen before, he once more hoisted English colours. He had indeed already taken possession of several particular parts of the country. But he now took possession of the whole eastern coast, with all the bays, harbours, rivers, and islands situated upon it, from latitude 38 deg. to latitude 10 deg. 20 min. south, in right of his Majesty King George III., and by the name of New South Wales. The party then fired three volleys of small arms, which were answered by the same number from the ship. When the gentlemen had performed this ceremony upon the island, which they called Possession Island, they re-embarked in their boat, and, in consequence of a rapid ebb-tide, had a very difficult and tedious return to the vessel.

On the 23d, the wind had come round to the south-west; and though it was but a gentle breeze, yet it was accompanied by a swell from the same quarter, which, in conjunction with other circumstances, confirmed Mr. Cook in his opinion that he had arrived to the northern extremity of New Holland, and that he had now an open sea to the westward. These circumstances afforded him peculiar satisfaction, not only because the dangers and fatigues of the voyage were drawing to a conclusion, but because it could no longer be doubted whether New Holland and New Guinea were two separate islands. The north-east entrance of the strait lies in the latitude of 10 deg. 39 min. south, and in the longitude of 218 deg. 36 min. west; and the passage is formed by the main land, and by a congeries of islands to the north-

west, called by the lieutenant the Prince of Wales Islands, and which may probably extend as far as to New Guinea. Their difference is very great, both in height and circuit, and many seemed to be well covered with herbage and wood; nor was there any doubt of their being inhabited. Our commander was persuaded, that among these islands as good passages might be found as that through which the vessel came, and the access to which might be less perilous. The determination of this matter he would not have left to future navigators, if he had been less harassed by danger and fatigue, and had possessed a ship in better condition for the purpose. To the channel through which he passed he gave the name of Eudavour Straits.

New Holland, or, as the eastern part of it was called by Lieutenant Cook, New South Wales, is the largest country in the known world which does not bear the name of a continent. The length of coast along which our people sailed, when reduced to a strait line, was no less than twenty-seven degrees of latitude, amounting to nearly two thousand miles. In fact, the square surface of the island is much more than equal to the whole of Europe. We may observe with regard to the natives, that their number bears no proportion to the extent of their territory. So many as thirty of them had never been seen together but once, and that was at Botany Bay. Even when they appeared determined to engage the English, they could not muster above fourteen or fifteen fighting men; and it was manifest that their sheds and houses did not lie so close together, as to be capable of accommodating a larger party. Indeed, our navigators saw only the sea-coast on the eastern side, between which and the western shore there is an immense tract of land that is wholly unexplored. But it is evident, from the total uncultivated state of the country which was seen by our people, that this immense tract must either be altogether deso-

late, or at least more thinly inhabited than the parts which were visited. Of traffic the natives had no idea, nor could any be communicated to them. The things which were given they received, but did not appear to understand the signs of the English requiring a return. There was no reason to believe that they ate animal food raw. As they have no vessel in which water can be boiled, they either broil their meat upon the coals, or bake it in a hole by the help of hot stones agreeably to the custom of the inhabitants of the South Sea Islands. Fire is produced by them with great facility, and they spread it in a surprising manner. For producing it, they take two pieces of soft wood, one of which is a stick about eight or nine inches long, while the other piece is flat. The stick they shape in an obtuse point at one end, and pressing it upon the flat wood, turn it nimbly by holding it between their hands. In doing this, they often shift their hands up, and then move them down, with a view of increasing the pressure as much as possible. By this process they obtain fire in less than two minutes, and from the smallest spark, they carry it to any height or extent with great speed and dexterity.

It was not possible, considering the limited intercourse which our navigators had with the natives of New South Wales, that much could be learned with regard to their language. Nevertheless, as this is an object of no small curiosity to the learned, and is indeed of peculiar importance in searching into the origin of the various nations that have been discovered, Mr. Cook and his friends took some pains to collect such a specimen of it as might in a certain degree answer the purpose. Our commander did not quit the country without making such observations relative to the currents and tides upon the coast, as, while they increase the general knowledge of navigation, may be of service to future voyagers. The irregularity of the tides is an object worthy of notice.

From the coast of New South Wales, the lieutenant steered, on the 23rd of August, for the coast of New Guinea, and, on the 25th, fell upon a dangerous shoal. The ship was in six fathoms, but scarcely two were found in sounding round her, at the distance of half a cable's length. This shoal was of such an extent, reaching from the east round by the north and west to the south-west, that there was no method for the vessel to get clear of it but by her going back the way by which she came. Here was another hair-breadth escape; for it was nearly high water, and there ran a short cockling sea, which, if the sea had struck, must very soon have bulged her. So dangerous was her situation, that if her direction had been half a cable's length more, either to the right or left, she must have struck before the signal for the shoal could have been made.

It had been Lieut. Cook's intention to steer north-west till he had made the south coast of New Guinea, and it was his purpose to touch upon it, if that could be found practicable. But, in consequence of the shoals he met with, he altered his course in the hope of finding a clearer channel, and deeper water. His hope was agreeably verified; for by noon on the 26th, the depth of water was greatly increased to seventeen fathoms. On the 28th, our voyagers found the sea to be in many places covered with a brown scum, such as the sailors usually call spawn. When the lieutenant first saw it, he was alarmed, fearing that the ship was again among the shoals; but the depth of water, upon sounding, was discovered to be equal to what it was in other places. The same appearance had been observed on the coasts of Brazil and New Holland, in which cases it was at no great distance from the shore. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander examined the scum, but could not determine what it was, any further than as they saw reason to suppose that it belonged to the vegetable kingdom. The sailors, upon meeting with more of it, gave up

the notion of its being spawn, and finding a new name for it, called it sea saw-dust.

At day-break, on the 3rd of September, our navigators came in sight of New Guinea, and stood in for it with a fresh gale till nine o'clock, when they brought to, being in three fathoms water, and within about three or four miles of land. Upon this the pinnace was hoisted, and the lieutenant set off from the ship with the boat's crew, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks' servants, being in all twelve persons, well armed. As soon as they came ashore, they discovered the prints of human feet, which could not long have been pressed upon the sand. Concluding, therefore, that the natives were at no great distance, and there being a thick wood which reached to within a hundred yards of the water, the gentlemen thought it necessary to proceed with caution, lest their retreat to the boat should be cut off. When they had walked some way along the skirts of the wood, they came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, at the fruit of which they looked very wishfully; but not thinking it safe to climb, they were obliged to leave it without tasting a single nut. After they had advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed out of the wood with a hideous shout, and, as they ran towards the English, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burned exactly like gunpowder, though without making any report. The two other natives having at the same instant discharged their arrows, the lieutenant and his party were under the necessity of firing, first with small shot, and a second time with ball. Upon this, the three Indians ran away with great agility. As Mr. Cook had no disposition forcibly to invade this country, either to gratify the appetites or the curiosity of his people, and was convinced that nothing was to be done upon friendly terms, he and his companions returned with all expedition towards

new  
navi-  
od in  
they  
ithin  
the  
from  
Mr.  
being  
they  
man  
upon  
tives  
thick  
ls of  
y to  
boat  
way  
ve of  
oked  
imb,  
ngle  
of a  
the  
ard's  
t of  
ned  
king  
the  
ant  
irst  
pon  
ity:  
ade  
the  
hat  
and  
rds

their boat. When they were aboard, they rowed abreast of the natives who had come down to the shore in aid of their countrymen, and whose numbers now amounted to between sixty and a hundred. Their appearance was much the same as that of the New Hollanders; they nearly resembled them in stature, and in having their hair short and cropped. Like them also, they were absolutely naked; but the colour of their skin did not seem quite so dark, which, however, might be owing to their being less dirty. While the English gentlemen were viewing them, they where shouting defiance, and letting off their fires by four or five at a time. Our people could not imagine what these fires were, or what purpose they were intended to answer. Those who discharged them had in their hands a short piece of stick, which they swung sideways from them, and immediately there issued fire and smoke, exactly resembling those of a musket, and of as short a duration. The men on board the ship, who observed this surprising phenomenon, were so far deceived by it, as to believe that the Indians had fire-arms. To the persons in the boat it had the appearance of the firing of volleys without a report.

The place where this transaction happened lies in the latitude of 6 deg. 15 min. south, and is about sixty-five leagues to the north-east of Port Saint Augustine, or Walcha Caep, and is near what is called in the charts C. de la Colta de St. Bonoventura. In every part of the coast, the land is covered with a vast luxuriance of wood and herbage. The cocoonut, the bread-fruit, and the plantain-tree, flourish here in the highest perfection; besides which, the country abounds with most of the trees, shrubs, and plants that are common to the South Sea Islands, New Zealand, and New Holland.

Soon after Mr. Cook and his party had returned to the ship, our voyagers made sail to the westward, the lieutenant having resolved to spend no more

time upon this coast—a resolution which was greatly to the satisfaction of a very great majority of his people. Some of the officers indeed were particularly urgent that a number of men might be sent on shore to cut down cocoa-nut trees for the sake of their fruit. This, however, our commander absolutely refused, as equally unjust and cruel. It was morally certain from the preceding behaviour of the natives, that if their property had been invaded, they would have made a vigorous effort to defend it, in which case the lives of many of them must have been sacrificed; and perhaps, too, several of the English would have fallen in the contest. The necessity of a quarrel with the Indians would have been regretted by the lieutenant, even if he had been impelled to it by a want of the necessaries of life; but to engage in it for the transient gratification that would arise from obtaining two or three hundred green cocoanuts, appeared in his view highly criminal. The same calamity, at least with regard to the natives, would probably have occurred if he had sought for any other place on the coast, to the northward and westward, where the ship might have lain so near the shore as to cover his people with the guns when they had landed. Besides, there was cause to believe that before such a place could have been found, our navigators would have been carried so far to the westward so as to be obliged to go to Batavia, on the north side of Java. This, in Mr. Cook's opinion, would not have been so safe a passage as that to the south of Java, through the straits of Sunda. Another reason for his making the best of his way to Batavia was the leakiness of the vessel, which rendered it doubtful whether it would not be necessary to heave her down when she arrived at the port. Our commander's resolution was further confirmed by the consideration that no discovery could be expected in seas which had already been navigated, and where the coast had been sufficiently described both by

3pa  
the  
in t  
it a  
and  
V  
Gu  
her  
Co  
for  
the  
isla  
day  
ten  
the  
ext  
its  
ren  
isla  
pla  
Ar  
tar  
wa  
Gu  
if  
lie  
20  
ou  
Is  
ta  
of  
of  
pl  
pr  
isl  
bo  
pe  
ad

Spanish and Dutch geographers, and especially by the latter. The only merit claimed by the lieutenant in this part of his voyage, was the having established it as a fact beyond all controversy, that New Holland and New Guinea are two distinct countries.

Without staying, therefore, on the coast of New Guinea, the Endeavour on the same day directed her course to the westward, in pursuing which, Mr. Cook had an opportunity of rectifying the errors of former navigators. Very early in the morning of the 6th of September, our voyagers passed a small island, which lay to the north-north-west, and at day-break they discovered another low island, extending from that quarter to north-north-east. Upon the last island, which appeared to be of considerable extent, the lieutenant would have landed to examine its produce, if the wind had not blown so fresh as to render his design impracticable. Unless these two islands belong to the Arrou islands, they have no place in the charts; and if they do belong to the Arrou islands, they are laid down at a great distance from New Guinea. Some other land which was seen this day ought by its distance from New Guinea, to have been part of the Arrou islands: but if any dependence can be placed on former charts, it lies a degree further to the south.

On the 7th, when the ship was in latitude 9 deg 20 min. south, and longitude 229 deg. 34 min. west, our people ought to have been in sight of the Weasel Isles, which, in the charts, are laid down at the distance of twenty or twenty-five leagues from the coast of New Holland. But as our commander saw nothing of them, he concluded that they must have been placed erroneously. Nor will this be deemed surprising, when it is considered that not only these islands, but the coast which bounds this sea, have been explored at different times, and by different persons, who had not all the requisites for keeping accurate journals which are now possessed, and

whose various discoveries have been delineated upon charts by others, perhaps at the distance of more than a century after such discoveries had been made.

In pursuing their course, our navigators passed the islands of Timor, Timor-lavet, Rotte, and Sëman. While they were near the two latter islands, they observed, about ten o'clock at night, on the 16th of the month, a phenomenon in the heavens, which in many particulars resembled the Aurora Borealis, though its extent at times varied much, it never comprehended less than eight or ten points of the compass. Through and out of the general appearance there passed rays of light of a brighter colour, which vanished and were renewed nearly in the same manner as those of the Aurora Borealis, but entirely without the tremulous or vibratory motion which is seen in that phenomenon. The body of this light bore south-south-east from the ship, and continued, without any diminution of its brightness, till twelve o'clock, and probably a longer time, as the gentlemen were prevented from observing it further by retiring to sleep.

By the 16th, Lieut. Cook had got clear of all the islands which had been laid down in the maps as situated between Timor and Java, and did not expect to meet with any other in that quarter. But the next morning an island was seen bearing west-south-west, and at first he believed that he had made a new discovery. As soon as our voyagers had come close in with the north side of it, they had the pleasing prospect of houses and cocoa-nut trees, and of what still more agreeably surprised them, numerous flocks of sheep. Many of the people on board were at this time in a bad state of health, and no small number of them had been dissatisfied with the lieutenant for not having touched at Timor. He readily embraced, therefore, the opportunity of landing at a place which appeared so well calculated to supply the necessities of the company, and to remove both the

sick  
the  
wh  
Du  
T  
pro  
jea  
den  
buf  
fow  
lim  
pal  
rea  
by  
cor  
The  
hos  
the  
par  
S  
kne  
in  
mi  
mi  
and  
not  
the  
hil  
rep  
of  
be  
rep  
th  
gi  
wa  
of  
  
of  
fl

sickness and the discontent which had spread among them. The place proved to be the island of Savu, where a settlement had lately been made by the Dutch.

The great design of our commander was to obtain provisions, which after some difficulty, and some jealousy on the part of Mr. Lange, the Dutch resident, were procured. These provisions were nine buffaloes, six sheep, three hogs, thirty dozens of fowls, many dozens of eggs, some cocoa-nuts, a few limes, a little garlic, and several hundred gallons of palm syrup. In obtaining these refreshments, at a reasonable price, the English were not a little assisted by an old Indian, who appeared to be a person of considerable authority under the king of the country. The lieutenant and his friends were one day very hospitably entertained by the king himself, though the royal etiquette did not permit his majesty to partake of the banquet.

So little, in general, had the island of Savu been known, that Mr. Cook had never seen a map or chart in which it is clearly or accurately laid down. The middle of it lies in about the latitude of 10 deg. 35. min. south, and longitude 237 deg. 30 min. west: and from the ship it presented a prospect, than which nothing can be more beautiful. This prospect, from the verdure and culture of the country, from the hills, richly clothed, which rise in a gentle and regular ascent, and from the stateliness and beauty of the trees, is delightful to a degree that can scarcely be conceived by the most lively imagination. With regard to the productions and natives of the island, the account which our navigators were enabled to give of them, and which is copious and entertaining, was in a great measure derived from the information of Mr. Lange.

An extraordinary relation is given of the morals of the people of this island, and which, if true, must fill every virtuous mind with pleasure. Their cba-

acter and conduct were represented as irreproachable even upon the principles of christianity. Though no man is permitted to have more than one wife, an illicit commerce between the sexes is scarcely known among them. Instances of theft are very rare; and so far are they from revenging a supposed injury by murder, that when any difference arises between them, they immediately and implicitly refer it to the determination of the king. They will not so much as make it the subject of private debate, lest they should hence be provoked to resentment and ill-will. Their delicacy and cleanliness are suited to the purity of their morals. From the specimen which is given of the language of Savu, it appears to have some affinity with that of the South Sea Islands. Many of the words are exactly the same, and the terms of numbers are derived from the same origin.

On the 21st of September, our navigators got under sail, and having pursued their voyage till the first of October, on that day they came within sight of the island of Java. During their course from Sav Lieut. Cook allowed twenty minutes a day for the westerly current, which he concluded must run strong at this time, especially on the coast of Java; and accordingly he found that this allowance was exactly equivalent to the effect of the current upon the ship. Such was the sagacity of our commander's judgment in whatever related to navigation.

On the 2nd, two Dutch ships being seen to lie off Anger point, the lieutenant sent Mr. Hicks on board one of them to inquire news concerning England, from which our people had so long been absent. Mr. Hicks brought back the agreeable intelligence, that the Swallow, commanded by Captain Carteret, had been at Batavia two years before. In the morning of the 5th, a prow came alongside of the Endeavour, with a Dutch officer, who sent down to Mr. Cook a printed paper in English, duplicates of which he had in other languages. This paper was regularly signed

in the name of the governor and council of the Indies by their secretary, and contained nine questions very ill expressed, two of which only the lieutenant thought proper to answer. These were what regarded the nation and name of the vessel, and whither she was bound. On the 9th, our voyagers stood in for the Batavia roads, where they found the Harcourt Indiaman from England, two English private traders, and a number of Dutch ships. Immediately a boat came on board the Endeavour, and the officer who commanded having inquired how our people were, and whence they came, instantly returned with such answers as were given him. In the meantime Mr. Cook sent a lieutenant ashore to acquaint the governor of his arrival, and to make an apology for not having saluted—a ceremony he had judged better to omit, as he could only make use of three guns, excepting the swivels, which he was of opinion would not be heard.

It being universally agreed that the ship could not safely proceed to Europe without an examination of her bottom, our commander determined to apply for leave to heave her down at Batavia; and for this purpose he drew up a request in writing, which after he had waited first upon the governor-general, and then upon the council, was readily complied with, and he was told that he should have every thing he wanted.

The English gentlemen had taken up their lodging and boarding at an hotel, or kind of inn, kept by the order of government. Here they met with those impositions, in point of expense and treatment, which are too common to admit of much surprise. It was not long, however, that they submitted to ill usage. By a further acquaintance with the manner of dealing with their host, and by spirited remonstrances, they procured a better furnished table. Mr. Banks in a few days hired a small house for himself and his party; and as soon as he was settled in his new

habitation, sent for Tupia, who had hitherto continued on board on account of sickness. When he quitted the ship, and after he came into the boat, he was exceedingly lifeless and dejected; but no sooner did he enter the town than he appeared to be inspired with another soul. A scene so entirely new and extraordinary filled him with amazement. The houses, carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, rushing upon him at once, produced an effect similar to what is ascribed to enchantment. His boy Tayeto expressed his wonder and delight in a still more rapturous manner. He danced along the streets in a kind of ecstasy, examining every object with a restless and eager curiosity, which was excited and gratified every moment. Tupia's attention was particularly excited by the various dresses of the passing multitude; and when he was informed that at Batavia every one wore the dress of his own country, he expressed his desire of appearing in the garb of Otakeite. Accordingly South Sea cloth being sent for from the ship, he equipped himself with great expedition and dexterity.

Lieut. Cook imagined that at Batavia he should find it easy to take up what money he might want for repairing and refitting the Endeavour: but in this he was mistaken. No private person could be found who had ability and inclination to furnish the sum which was necessary. In this exigency, the lieutenant had recourse by a written request to the governor, from whom he obtained an order for being supplied out of the Dutch company's treasury.

When our voyagers had been only nine days at Batavia, they began to feel the fatal effects of the climate and situation. Tupia, after his first flow of spirits had subsided, grew every day worse and worse, and Tayeto was seized with an inflammation upon the lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked with fevers, and in a little time almost every person, both on board and on shore, was sick

The distress of our people was indeed very great, and the prospect before them discouraging in the highest degree. Tupia being desirous of breathing a fiercer air than among the numerous houses that obstructed it ashore, had a tent erected for him on Cooper's Island, to which he was accompanied by Mr. Banks, who attended this poor Indian with the greatest humanity, till he was rendered incapable of doing it by the violent increase of his own disorder. On the 5th of November, Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon of the ship, a sensible skilful man, whose loss was not a little aggravated by the situation of the English, fell the first sacrifice to this fatal country. Tayeto died on the 9th, and Tupia, who loved him with the tenderness of a parent, sunk at once after the loss of the boy, and survived him only a few days. The disorders of Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander grew to such a height, that the physicians declared that they had no chance of preserving their lives but by removing into the country. Accordingly a house was hired for them at the distance of two miles from the town, where, in consequence of enjoying a purer air, and being better nursed by two Malayan women whom they had bought, they recovered by slow degrees. At length Lieutenant Cook was himself taken ill, and out of the whole ship's company not more than ten were able to do duty.

In the midst of these distresses, our commander was diligently and vigorously attentive to the repair of the vessel. When her bottom came to be examined, she was found to be in a worse condition than had been apprehended. Her false keel and main keel were both of them greatly injured; a large quantity of the sheathing was torn off, and among several planks which were much damaged, two of them, and the half of the third, were so worn for the length of six feet, that they were not above the eighth of an inch in thickness; and here the worms had made way quite into the timbers. In this state the

Endeavour had sailed many hundred leagues, in a quarter of the globe where navigation is dangerous in the highest degree. It was happy for our voyagers that they were ignorant of their perilous situation; for it must have deeply affected them to have known that a considerable part of the bottom of the vessel was thinner than the sole of a shoe, and that all their lives depended upon so slight and fragile a barrier between them and the unfathomable ocean.

The repair of the Endeavour was carried on very much to Mr. Cook's satisfaction. In justice to the Dutch officers and workmen, he has declared that in his opinion there is not a marine yard in the world where a ship can be laid with more convenience, safety, and dispatch, or repaired with greater diligence and skill. He was particularly pleased with the manner of heaving down by two masts, and gives it a decided preference to the method which had hitherto been practised by the English. The lieutenant was not one of those on whom the bigotry could be charged of adhering to old customs, in opposition to the dictates of reason and experience.

By the 8th of December, the Endeavour was perfectly refitted. From that time to the 24th, our people were employed in completing her stock of water, provisions, and stores, in erecting some new pumps, and in various other necessary operations. All this business would have been effected much sooner, if it had not been retarded by the general sickness of the men.

In the afternoon of the 24th, our commander took leave of the governor of Batavia, and of several other gentlemen belonging to the place, with whom he had formed connexions, and to whom he had been greatly obliged for their civility and assistance. In the mean while an accident intervened, which might have been attended with disagreeable effects. A seaman, who had run away from one of the Dutch ships in the road, entered on board the Endeavour. Upon

his being reclaimed as a subject of Holland, Mr. Cook, who was on shore, declared that if the man appeared to be a Dutchman he should certainly be delivered up. When, however, the order was carried to Mr. Hicks, who commanded on board, he refused to surrender the seaman, alleging that he was a subject of Great Britain, born in Ireland. In this conduct Mr. Hicks acted in perfect conformity to the lieutenant's intention and directions. The captain of the Dutch vessel, in the next place, by a message from the governor-general, demanded the man as a subject of Denmark. To this Mr. Cook replied, that there must be some mistake in the general's message, since he would never demand of him a Danish seaman, whose only crime was that of preferring the English to the Dutch service. At the same time the lieutenant added, that to show the sincerity of his desire to avoid disputes, if the man was a Dane, he should be delivered up as a courtesy; but that if he appeared to be an English subject, he should be kept at all events. Soon after, a letter was brought from Mr. Hicks, containing indubitable proofs that the seaman in question was a subject of his Britannic Majesty. This letter Mr. Cook sent to the governor, with an assurance to his excellency that he would not part with the man on any terms. Conduct so firm and decisive produced the desired effect, no more being heard of the affair.

In the evening of the 25th, our commander went on board, together with Mr. Banks and the rest of the gentlemen, who had constantly resided on shore. The gentlemen, though considerably better, were far from being perfectly recovered. At this time the sick persons in the ship amounted to forty, and the rest of the company were in a very feeble condition. It was remarkable that every individual had been ill, excepting the sail-maker, who was an old man between seventy and eighty years of age, and who was drunk every day during the residence of our

people at Batavia. Three seamen and Mr. Green's servant died, besides the surgeon, Tupia and Tayeto. Tupia did not entirely fall a sacrifice to the unwholesome, stagnant, and putrid air of the country. As he had been accustomed from his birth, to subsist chiefly upon vegetable food, and particularly on ripe fruit, he soon contracted the disorders which are incident to a sea life, and would probably have sunk under them before the voyage of the English could have been completed, even if they had not been obliged to go to Batavia to refit their vessel.

Our navigators did not stay at this place without gaining an extensive acquaintance with the productions of the country, and the manners and customs of the inhabitants. The information which was obtained on these heads, will be found to constitute a very valuable addition to what was heretofore known upon the subject.

On Thursday the 27th of December, the Endeavour stood out to sea; and, on the 5th of January, 1771, she came to an anchor under the south-east side of Prince's Island. The design of this was to obtain a supply of wood and water, and to procure some refreshments for the sick, many of whom had become much worse than they were when they left Batavia. As soon as the vessel was secured, the lieutenant, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore, and were conducted by some Indians they met with to a person who was represented to be the king of the country. After exchanging a few compliments with his majesty, the gentlemen proceeded to business, but could not immediately come to a settlement with him in the price of turtle. They were more successful in their search of a watering-place, having found water conveniently situated, and which they had reason to believe would prove good. As they were going off, some of the natives sold them three turtles, under a promise that the king should not be informed of the transaction.

On the next day a traffic was established with the Indians upon such terms as were offered by the English, so that by night our people had plenty of turtle. The three which had been purchased the evening before, were in the meantime dressed for the ship's company, who excepting on the preceding day, had not, for nearly the space of four months, been once served with fresh provisions. Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid his respects to the king at his palace, which was situated in the middle of a rice field. His majesty was busily employed in dressing his own supper, but this did not prevent him from receiving his visitant in a very gracious manner. During the following days, the commerce with the natives for provisions was continued; in the course of which they brought down to the trading place not only a quantity of turtle, but fowls, fish, monkeys, small deer, and some vegetables.

On the evening of the 11th, when Mr. Cook went on shore to see how those of his people conducted their business who were employed in wooding and watering, he was informed an axe had been stolen. As it was a matter of consequence to prevent others from being encouraged to commit thefts of the like kind, he resolved not to pass over the offence, but to insist upon redress from the king. Accordingly, after some altercation, his majesty promised that the axe should be restored in the morning, and the promise was faithfully performed.

On the 15th, our commander weighed, and stood out to sea. Prince's Island, where he lay about ten days, was formerly much frequented by the Indian ships of many nations, and especially those of England; but it had lately been forsaken on account of the supposed badness of its water. This supposition, however, arose from a want of duly examining the brook by which the water is supplied. It is indeed brackish at the lower part of the brook, but higher up it will be found excellent. The lieutenant

therefore, was clearly of opinion that Prince's Island is a more eligible place for ships to touch at than either North Island or New Bay, from neither of which places a considerable quantity of other refreshments can be procured.

As the Endeavour proceeded on her voyage to the Cape of Good Hope, the seeds of disease which had been received at Batavia appeared with the most threatening symptoms, and reduced our navigators to a very melancholy situation. The ship was in fact nothing better than an hospital, in which those who could go about were not sufficient for a due attendance upon those who were sick. Lest the water which had been taken in at Prince's Island should have had any share in adding to the disorder of the men, the lieutenant ordered it to be purified with lime; and as a further remedy against infection, he directed all the parts of the vessel between the decks to be washed with vinegar. The malady had taken too deep root to be speedily eradicated. Mr. Banks was reduced so low by it, that for some time there was no hope of his life; and so fatal was the disease to many others, that almost every night a dead body was committed to the sea. There were buried, in the course of about six weeks, Mr. Sporing, a gentleman who was one of Mr. Banks' assistants; Mr. Parkinson, his natural history painter; Mr. Green, the astronomer; the boatswain, the carpenter, and his mate; Mr. Monkhouse the midshipman, another midshipman, the jolly old sail-maker and his assistant, the ship's cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenter's crew, and nine seamen. In all, the loss amounted to three-and-twenty persons, besides the seven who died at Batavia. It is probable that these calamitous events, which could not fail to make a powerful impression on the mind of Lieut. Cook, might give occasion to his turning his thoughts more zealously to those methods of preserving the health of seamen, which he afterwards pursued with success.

On Friday the 15th of March, the Endeavour arrived off the Cape of Good Hope: and as soon as she was brought to an anchor, our commander waited upon the governor, from whom he received assurances that he should be furnished with every supply which the country could afford. His first care was to provide a proper place for the sick, whose number was not small; and a house was speedily found, where it was agreed that they should be lodged and boarded at the rate of two shillings a day for each person.

The run from Java Head to the Cape of Good Hope did not furnish many subjects of remark that could be of any great use to future voyagers. Such observations, however, as occurred to him, the lieutenant has been careful to record, not being willing to omit the least circumstance that may contribute to the safety and facility of navigation.

The lieutenant, having lain at the Cape to recover the sick, to procure stores, and to refit his vessel, till the 14th of April, then stood out of the bay, and proceeded on his voyage homeward. In the morning of the 29th, he crossed his first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe in the direction from east to west; the consequence of which was, that he lost a day, an allowance of which had been made at Batavia. On the first of May he arrived at St. Helena, where he staid till the 4th to refresh, during which time Mr. Banks employed himself in making the complete circuit of the island, and in visiting the places most worthy of observation.

When our commander departed from St. Helena, on the 4th, it was in company with the Portland man of war and twelve Indiamen. With this fleet he continued to sail till the 10th, when perceiving that the Endeavour proceeded much more heavily than any of the other vessels, and that she was not likely to get home so soon as the rest, he made a signal to speak with the Portland. Upon this, Captain Elliott himself came on board, and Mr. Cook

delivered to him the common log-books of his ship, and the journals of some of the officers. The Endeavour, however, kept in company with the fleet till the morning of the 23rd, at which time there was not a single vessel in sight. Mr. Charles Clerke, a young man extremely well qualified for the station, and whose name hereafter will frequently occur, received an order from Mr. Cook to act as lieutenant in Mr. Hicks' room.

The rigging and sails of the ship were now become so bad, that something was continually giving way. Nevertheless our commander pursued his course in safety: and, on the 10th of June, land which proved to be the Lizard, was discovered by Nicholas Young, the boy who had first seen New Zealand. On the 11th, the lieutenant ran up the channel. At six the next morning he passed Beachy Head, and in the afternoon of the same day he came to an anchor in the Downs, and went on shore at Deal.

Thus ended Mr. Cook's first voyage round the world, in which he had gone through so many dangers, explored so many countries, and exhibited the strongest proofs of his possessing an eminently sagacious and active mind—a mind that was equal to every perilous enterprise, and to the boldest and most successful efforts of navigation and discovery.

## CHAPTER II.

### ACCOUNT OF CAPTAIN COOK DURING THE PERIOD BETWEEN HIS FIRST AND SECOND VOYAGE.

THE manner in which Lieutenant Cook had performed his circumnavigation of the globe, justly entitled him to the protection of government, and the favour of his sovereign. Accordingly he was promoted to be a commander in his Majesty's navy, by commission bearing date the 29th of August, 1771. Mr. Cook, on this occasion, from a certain consciousness of his own merit, wished to have been appointed a post-captain. But the Earl of Sandwich, who was now at the head of the Admiralty-Board, though he had the greatest regard for our navigator, could not concede to his request, because a compliance with it would have been inconsistent with the order of the naval service. The difference was in point of rank only, and not of advantage. A commander has the same pay as a post-captain, and his authority is the same when he is in actual employment. The distinction is a necessary step in the progress to the higher honours of the profession.

It cannot be doubted but that the President and Council of the Royal Society were highly satisfied with the manner in which the transit of Venus had been observed. The papers of Mr. Cook and Mr. Green, relative to this subject, were put into the hands of the astronomer royal, to be by him digested, and that he might deduce from them the important consequences to science which resulted from the ob-

ervation. This was done by him with an accuracy and ability becoming his high knowledge and character. On the 21st of May, 1771, Captain Cook communicated to the Royal Society, in a letter addressed to Dr. Maskelyne, an "Account of the flowing of the Tides in the South Sea, as observed on board his Majesty's bark the Endeavour."

The reputation our navigator had acquired by his late voyage was deservedly great; and the desire of the public to be acquainted with the new scenes and new objects that were now brought to light, was ardently excited. It is not surprising, therefore, that different attempts were made to satisfy the general curiosity. There soon appeared a publication entitled, "A Journal of a Voyage Round the World." This was the production of some person who had been upon the expedition; and though his account was dry and imperfect, it served, in a certain degree, to relieve the eagerness of inquiry. The journal of Sidney Parkinson, draftsman to Sir Joseph Banks, to whom it belonged by ample purchase, was likewise printed from a copy surreptitiously obtained; but an injunction from the Court of Chancery for some time prevented its appearance. This work, though dishonestly given to the world, was recommended by plates. But it was Dr. Hawksworth's account of Lieutenant Cook's voyage which completely gratified the public curiosity. This account, which was written by authority, was drawn up from the journal of the lieutenant, and the papers of Sir Joseph Banks; and, besides the merit of the composition, it derived an extraordinary advantage from the number and excellence of its charts and engravings, which were furnished at the expense of government. The large price given by the booksellers for this work, and the avidity with which it was read, displayed in the strongest light, the anxiety of the nation to be fully informed in every thing that belonged to the late navigation and discoveries.

Captain Cook, during his voyage, had sailed over the Pacific Ocean in many of those latitudes in which a southern continent had been expected to lie. He had ascertained that neither New Zealand or New Holland were parts of such a continent. But the general question concerning its existence had not been determined by him, nor did he go out for that purpose, though some of the reasons on which the notion of it had been adopted were dispelled in the course of his navigation. It is well known how fondly the idea of a *Terra Australis Incognita* had for nearly two centuries been entertained. Many plausible philosophical arguments have been urged in its support, and many facts alleged in its favour.

When the design of accomplishing this great object was resolved upon, it did not admit of any hesitation by whom it was to be carried into execution. No person was esteemed equally qualified with Captain Cook for conducting an enterprise, the view of which was to give the utmost possible extent to the geography of the globe, and the knowledge of navigation. For the greater advantage of the undertaking, it was determined that two ships should be employed; and much attention was paid to the choice of them, and to their equipment for the service. After mature deliberation by the Navy Board, during which particular regard was had to the captain's wisdom and experience, it was agreed that no vessels were so proper for discoveries in distant unknown parts, as those which were constructed like the *Endeavour*. This opinion concurring with that of the Earl of Sandwich, the Admiralty came to the resolution that two ships of a similar construction should be provided. Accordingly two vessels, both of which had been built at Whitby, by the same person who built the *Endeavour*, were purchased from Captain William Hammond, of Hull. They were about fourteen or sixteen months old at the time when they were bought, and, in Captain Cook's judgment, were as

well adapted to the intended service, as if they had been expressly constructed for that purpose. The largest of the two, which consisted of four hundred and sixty-two tons burden, was named the Resolution. To the other, which was three hundred and thirty-six tons burden, was given the name of the Adventure. On the 28th of November, 1771, Captain Cook was appointed to the command of the former, and about the same time Mr. Tobias Furneaux was promoted to the command of the latter. The complement of the Resolution including officers and men, was fixed at one hundred and twelve persons, and that of the Adventure at eighty-one. In the equipment of these ships, every circumstance was attended to that could contribute to the comfort and success of the voyage. They were fitted in the most complete manner, and supplied with every extraordinary article which was suggested to be necessary or useful. Lord Sandwich, whose zeal was indefatigable upon this occasion, visited the vessels from time to time, to be assured that the whole equipment was agreeable to his wishes, and to the satisfaction of those who were to engage in the expedition. Nor were the navy and victualling boards wanting in procuring for the ships the very best of stores and provisions, with some alterations in the species of them that were adapted to the nature of the Enterprise; besides which, there was an ample supply of anti-scorbutic articles, such as malt, sour krout, salted cabbage, portable broth, saloop, mustard, marmalade of carrots, and inspissated juice of wort and beer.

No less attention was paid to the cause of science in general. The Admiralty engaged Mr. William Hodges, an excellent landscape painter, to embark in the voyage in order to make drawings and paintings of such objects as could not so well be comprehended from written descriptions. Mr. John Reinhold Forster and his son were fixed upon to explore and collect the natural history of the countries which

mi  
pa  
wa  
ex  
W  
ast  
in  
By  
of  
ple  
by

co

177

lon

wh

th

Ap

th

fo

ma

th

tal

Pa

ef

fo

sa

th

or

m

lo

th

co

th

m

er

t

u

they had  
se. The  
hundred  
Resolution  
dred and  
e of the  
Captain  
e former,  
aux was  
he com-  
and men,  
ons, and  
e equip-  
attended  
success  
st com-  
rdinary  
r useful.  
le upon  
o time,  
recreable  
se who  
he navy  
for the  
, with  
t were  
besides  
orbatic  
bbage,  
of car-

might be visited, and an ample sum was granted by parliament for the purpose. That nothing might be wanting to accomplish the scientific views of the expedition, the Board of Longitude agreed with Mr. William Wales and Mr. William Bayley to make astronomical observations. Mr. Wales was stationed in the Resolution, and Mr. Bayley in the Adventure. By the same board they were furnished with the best of instruments, and particularly with four time-pieces,—three constructed by Mr. Arnold, and one by Mr. Kendal, on Mr. Harrison's principles.

Though Captain Cook had been appointed to the command of the Resolution on the 28th of November, 1771, such were the preparations necessary for so long and important a voyage, and the impediments which occasionally and unavoidably occurred, that the ship did not sail from Deptford till the 9th of April following, nor did she leave Long Reach till the 10th of May. In plying down the river, it was found necessary to put into Sheerness, in order to make some alterations in her upper works. These the officers of the yard were directed immediately to take in hand; and Lord Sandwich and Sir Hugh Palliser came down to see them executed in the most effectual manner. The ship being again completed for sea by the 22d of June, Captain Cook on that day sailed from Sheerness, and on the 3d of July joined the Adventure in Plymouth Sound. Lord Sandwich, on his return from a visit to the dock-yards, having met the Resolution on the preceding evening, his lordship and Sir Hugh Palliser gave the last mark of their great attention to the object of the voyage, by coming on board to assure themselves that every thing was done which was agreeable to our commander's wishes, and that his vessel was equipped entirely to his satisfaction.

At Plymouth Captain Cook received his instructions, with regard to which, without entering into a minute detail of them, it is sufficient to say, that he

was sent out upon the most enlarged plan of discovery that is known in the history of navigation. He was instructed not only to circumnavigate the whole globe, but to circumnavigate it in high southern latitudes, making such traverses, from time to time, into every corner of the Pacific Ocean not before examined, as might finally and effectually resolve the much agitated question about the existence of a southern continent in any part of the southern hemisphere to which access could be had by the efforts of the boldest and most skilful navigators.

On  
mo  
in  
ob  
rie  
sai  
vo  
sp  
ve  
an  
all  
fro  
co  
va

w  
pu  
at  
su  
on  
co  
fr  
h  
to  
d  
st  
to

of disco-  
on. He  
ne whole  
southern  
to time,  
t before  
resolve  
nce of a  
rn hemi-  
fforts of

### CHAPTER III.

#### NARRATIVE OF CAPTAIN COOK'S SECOND VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

ON the 13th of July, Captain Cook sailed from Plymouth, and on the 29th of the same month, anchored in Funchiale Road, in the island of Madeira. Having obtained a supply of water, wine, and other necessaries at the island, he left it on the 1st of August, and sailed to the southward. As he proceeded in his voyage, he made three puncheons of beer of the inspissated juice of malt, and the liquor produced was very brisk and drinkable. The heat of the weather, and the agitation of the ship, had hitherto withstood all the endeavours of our people to prevent this juice from being in a high state of fermentation. If it could be kept from fermenting, it would be a most valuable article at sea.

The captain having found that his stock of water would not last to the Cape of Good Hope, without putting his men on scanty allowance, resolved to stop at St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verd islands, for a supply. At Port Praya, in this island, he anchored on the 10th of August, and by the 14th, he had completed his water, and procured some other refreshments; upon which he set sail, and prosecuted his course. He embraced the occasion, which his touching at St. Jago afforded him, by giving such a delineation and description of Port Praya, and of the supplies there to be obtained, as might be of service to future navigators.

Captain Cook on the 8th of September, crossed the Line in the longitude of 8 deg. west, and proceeded without meeting any thing remarkable.

Our commander had been informed before he left England, that he sailed at an improper season of the year, and that he should meet with much calm weather, near and under the Line. But though such weather may happen in some years, it is not always, or even generally to be expected. So far was it from being the case with Captain Cook, that he had a brisk south-west wind in those very latitudes where the calms had been predicted; nor was he exposed to any of the tornadoes which are so much spoken of by other navigators. On the 29th of the month, between eight and nine o'clock at night, when our voyagers were near the Cape of Good Hope, the whole sea within the compass of their sight became at once as it were illuminated. The captain had been formerly convinced by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander that such appearances in the ocean were occasioned by insects. Mr. Forster, however, seemed disposed to adopt a different opinion. To determine the question, our commander ordered some buckets of water to be drawn up from alongside the ship, which were found full of an innumerable quantity of small globular insects, about the size of a common pin's head, and quite transparent. Though no life was perceived in them, there could be no doubt of their being living animals when in their own proper element; and Mr. Forster became now well satisfied that they were the cause of the sea's illumination.

On the 30th, the Resolution and Adventure anchored in Table Bay; soon after which Captain Cook went on shore, and, accompanied by Captain Furneaux and the two Mr. Forsters, waited on Baron Plattenburg, the governor of the Cape of Good Hope, who received the gentlemen with great politeness, and promised them every assistance the place could afford. From him our commander learned that two

French ships from the Mauritius, about eight months before, had discovered land in the latitude of 41 deg. south, along which they sailed forty miles, till they came to a bay, into which they were upon the point of entering, when they were driven off and separated in a hard gale of wind. Previous to this misfortune, they had lost some of their boats and people, that had been sent out to sound the bay. Captain Cook was also informed by Baron Plattenburg, that in the month of March two other ships from the island of Mauritius had touched at the Cape, on their way to the South Pacific Ocean, where they were going to make discoveries, under the command of M. Marion.

On the 22d of November, our commander sailed from the Cape of Good Hope, and proceeded on his voyage in search of a southern continent. Having got clear of the land, he directed his course for Cape Circumcision; and judging that cold weather would soon approach, he ordered slops to be served to such of the people as were in want of them, and gave to each man the fearnought jacket and trousers allowed by the Admiralty. On the 29th, the wind, which was west-north-west, increased to a storm, that continued, with some few intervals of moderate weather, till the 6th of December. By this gale, which was attended with hail and rain, and which blew at times with such violence that the ships could carry no sails, our voyagers were driven far to the eastward of their intended course, and no hopes were left to the captain of reaching Cape Circumcision. A still greater misfortune was the loss of the principal part of the live stock on board, consisting of sheep, hogs, and geese. At the same time, the sudden transition from warm mild weather to weather which was extremely cold and wet, was so severely felt by our people, that it was necessary to make some addition to their allowance of spirits, by giving each of them a dram on particular occasions.

Our navigators, on the 10th of December, began

to meet with islands of ice. One of these islands was so much concealed from them by the haziness of the weather, accompanied with snow and sleet, that they were steering directly towards it, and did not see it till it was at a less distance than that of a mile. Captain Cook judged it to be about fifty feet high, and half a mile in circuit. It was flat at the top, and its sides rose in a perpendicular direction, against which the sea broke to a great height. The weather continuing to be hazy, the captain, on account of the ice islands, was obliged to proceed with the utmost caution. Six of them were passed on the 12th, some of which were nearly two miles in circuit, and sixty feet high; nevertheless, such were the force and height of the waves, that the sea broke quite over them. Hence was exhibited a view that for a few moments was pleasing to the eye; but the pleasure was soon swallowed up in the horror which seized upon the mind from the prospect of danger; for if a ship should be so unfortunate as to get on the weather side of one of these islands, she would be dashed to pieces in a moment.

The vessels, on the 14th, were stopped by an immense field of low ice, to which no end could be seen, either to the east, west, or south. In different parts of this field were highlands or hills of ice, like those which our voyagers had found floating in the sea, and twenty of which had presented themselves to view the day before. Some of the people on board imagined that they saw land over the ice, and Captain Cook himself at first entertained the same sentiment. But upon more narrowly examining these ice hills, and the various appearances they made when seen through the haze, he was induced to change his opinion. On the 18th, though in the morning our navigators had been quite embayed, they were, notwithstanding, at length enabled to get clear of the field of ice. They were, however, at the same time, carried in among the ice islands, which perpetually

succeeded one another; which were almost equally dangerous; and the avoiding of which was a matter of the greatest difficulty. But perilous as it is to sail in a thick fog, among these floating rocks, as our commander properly called them, this is preferable to the being entangled with immense fields of ice under the same circumstances. In this latter case the great danger to be apprehended is the getting fast in the ice—a situation which would be alarming in the highest degree.

It had been a generally received opinion, that such ice as has now been described is formed in bays and rivers. Agreeably to this supposition, our voyagers were led to believe that land was not far distant, and that it lay to the northward behind the ice. As, therefore, they had sailed above thirty leagues along the edge of the ice, without finding a passage to the south, Captain Cook determined to run thirty or forty leagues to the east, and afterwards to endeavour to get to the southward. If in this attempt, he met with no other land or impediment, his design was to stretch behind the ice, and thus to bring the matter to a decision. The weather at this time affected the senses with a feeling of cold much greater than that which was pointed out by the thermometer, so that the whole crew complained. In order the better to enable them to sustain the severity of the cold, the captain directed the sleeves of their jackets to be lengthened with baize, and had a cap made for each man of the same stuff, strengthened with canvass. These precautions greatly contributed to their comfort and advantage. It is worthy of observation, that although the weather was as sharp on the 25th of December as might have been expected, in the same month of the year, in any part of England, this was the middle of summer with our navigators. Some of the people now appearing to have symptoms of the scurvy, fresh wort was given them every day, prepared under the direction of the surgeons,

from the malt which had been provided for the purpose.

By the 29th, it became sufficiently ascertained, from the course our commander had pursued, that the field of ice, along which the ships had sailed, did not join to any land, as had been conjectured. At this time, Captain Cook came to a resolution, provided he met with no impediment, to run as far west as the meridian of Cape Circumcision. While he was prosecuting this design, a gale arose on the 31st, which brought with it such a sea as rendered it very dangerous for the vessels to remain among the ice; and the danger was increased by discovering an immense field to the north, which extended further than the eye could reach. As our voyagers were not above two or three miles from the field, and were surrounded by loose ice, there was no time to deliberate. They hauled to the south, and though they happily got clear, it was not till the ships had received several hard knocks from the loose pieces, which were of the largest kind. On Friday, the 1st of January, 1773, the gale abated; and on the next day, in the afternoon, our people had the felicity of enjoying the sight of the moon, the face of which had not been seen but once by them since they had departed from the Cape of Good Hope. Hence a judgment may be formed of the sort of weather they had been exposed to, from the time of their leaving that place. The present opportunity was eagerly seized for making several observations of the sun and moon.

Captain Cook was now nearly in the same longitude which is assigned to Cape Circumcision, and about ninety-five leagues to the south of the latitude in which it is said to lie. At the same time the weather was so clear, that land might have been seen at the distance of fourteen or fifteen leagues. He concluded it, therefore, to be very probable that what Bouvet took for land was nothing but mountains of ice, surrounded by loose or field ice. Our

present navigators had naturally been led into a similar mistake. The conjecture that such ice as had lately been seen was joined to land was a very plausible one, though not founded on fact. Upon the whole there was good reason to believe that no land was to be met with, under this meridian, between the latitude of fifty-five and fifty-nine, where some had been supposed to exist.

Amidst the obstructions Captain Cook was exposed to from the ice islands which perpetually succeeded each other, he derived one advantage from them, and that was a supply of fresh water. Though the melting and stowing away of the ice takes up some time, and is indeed rather tedious, this method of watering is otherwise the most expeditious our commander had ever known. The water produced was perfectly sweet and well tasted. Upon the ice islands, penguins, albatroses, and other birds were frequently seen. It had hitherto been the received opinion that such birds never go far from land, and that the sight of them is a sure indication of its vicinity. That this opinion is not well founded, at least where ice islands exist, was now evinced by multiplied experience.

By Sunday, the 17th of January, Captain Cook reached the latitude of 67 deg. 15 min. south, when he could advance no further. At this time the ice was entirely closed to the south, in the whole extent from east to west-south-west, without the least appearance of any opening. The captain, therefore, thought it no longer prudent to persevere in sailing southward, especially as the summer was already half spent, and there was little reason to hope that it would be found practicable to get round the ice. Having taken this resolution, he determined to proceed directly in search of the land which had lately been discovered by the French: and as, in pursuing his purpose, the weather was clear at intervals, he spread the ships abreast four miles from each other.

In order the better to investigate any thing that might lie in their way. On the 1st of February our voyagers were in the latitude of 48 deg. 30 min. south, and in longitude 58 deg. 7 min. east, nearly in the meridian of the island of St. Mauritius. This was the situation in which the land, said to have been discovered by the French, was to be expected; but as no signs of it had appeared, our commander bore away to the east. Captain Furneaux, on the same day, informed Captain Cook that he had just seen a large float of sea or rock weed, and about it several of the birds called divers. These were certain signs of the vicinity of land, though whether it lay to the east or west could not possibly be known. Our commander, therefore, formed the design of proceeding in his present latitude, four or five degrees of longitude to the west of the meridian he was now in, and then to pursue his researches eastward. The west and north-west winds, which had continued for some days, prevented him from carrying this purpose into execution. However, he was convinced, from the perpetual high sea he had lately met with, that there could be no great extent of land to the west.

While Captain Cook, on the next day, was steering eastward, Capt. Furneaux told him that he thought the land was to the north-west of them, as he had at one time observed the sea to be smooth when the wind blew in that direction. This observation was by no means conformable to the remarks which had been made by our commander himself. Nevertheless, such was his readiness to attend to every suggestion, that he resolved to clear up the point, if the wind would admit of his getting to the west in any reasonable time. The wind, by veering to the north, did admit of his pursuing the search; and the result of it was his conviction, that if any land was near, it could only be an island of no considerable extent.

Captain Cook and his philosophical friends, while they were traversing this part of the southern ocean

paid particular attention to the variation of the compass, which they found to be from 27 deg. 50 min., to 30 deg. 26 min. west. Probably the mean of the two extremes, viz. 29 deg. 4 min., was the nearest the truth, as it coincided with the variation observed on board the Adventure. One unaccountable circumstance is worthy of notice, though it did not now occur for the first time. It is, that when the sun was on the starboard of the ship, the variation was the least; and when on the larboard side, the greatest.

On the 8th, our commander, in consequence of no signals having been answered by the Adventure, had reason to apprehend that a separation had taken place. After waiting two days, during which guns were kept discharging, and false fires were burned in the night, the fact was confirmed; so that the Resolution was obliged to proceed alone in her voyage. As she pursued her course, penguins and other birds, from time to time, appeared in great numbers, the meeting with which gave our navigators some hopes of finding land, and occasioned various speculations with regard to its situation. Experience, however, convinced them that no stress was to be laid on such hopes. They were so often deceived, that they could no longer look upon any of the oceanic birds, which frequent high latitudes, as sure signs of the vicinity of land.

In the morning of the 17th, between midnight and three o'clock, lights were seen in the heavens, similar to those which are known in the northern hemisphere by the name of the Aurora Borealis. Captain Cook had never heard that an Aurora Borealis had been seen before. The officer of the watch observed that it sometimes broke out in spiral rays, and in a circular form; at which time its lights were very strong, and its appearance beautiful. It was not perceived to have any particular direction. On the contrary, at various times it was conspicuous in different parts

of the heavens, and diffused its light throughout the whole atmosphere.

On the 20th, our navigators imagined that they saw land to the south-west. Their conviction of its real existence was so strong, that they had no doubt of the matter; and accordingly they endeavoured to work up to it, in doing which the weather was favourable to their purpose. However, what had been taken for land proved only to be clouds, which in the evening entirely disappeared, and left a clear horizon, in which nothing could be discerned but ice islands. At night the Aurora Borealis was again seen, and the appearance it assumed was very brilliant and luminous. It first discovered itself in the east, and in a short time spread itself over the whole heavens.

In the night of the 23d, when the ship was in latitude 61 deg. 52 min. south, and longitude 95 deg. 2 min. east, the weather being exceeding stormy, thick and hazy, with sleet and snow, our voyagers were on every side surrounded with danger. In such a situation, it was natural for them to wish for daylight; but daylight, when it came, served only to increase their apprehensions, by exhibiting those huge mountains of ice to their view, which the darkness had prevented them from seeing. These unfavourable circumstances, at so advanced a season of the year, discouraged Captain Cook from putting into execution a resolution he had formed, of once more crossing the antarctic circle. Accordingly, early in the morning of the 24th, he stood to the north, with a very hard gale, and a very high sea, which made great destruction among the ice islands. But so far was this incident from being of any advantage to our navigators, that it greatly increased the number of pieces they had to avoid. The large pieces which broke from the ice islands were found to be much more dangerous than the islands themselves. While the latter rose so high out of the water that they could generally be seen, unless the weather was very

this  
the  
till  
hov  
and  
we  
was  
sup  
and  
and  
cav  
hei  
tha  
hor  
abl

I  
acc  
Cap  
abl  
and  
this  
wor  
or t  
of  
the  
car  
the  
hin  
and  
col  
sai  
our  
her  
wa

Fe  
to  
cu  
bu

thick and hazy, before our people nearly approached them, the others could not be discerned in the night till they were under the ship's bows. These dangers, however, were now become so familiar to the captain and his company, that the apprehensions they caused were never of long duration; and a compensation was in some degree made for them by the seasonable supplies of fresh water which the ice islands afforded, and by their very romantic appearance. The foaming and dashing of the waves into the curious holes and caverns which were formed in many of them, greatly heightened the scene, and the whole exhibited a view that at once filled the mind with admiration and horror, and could only be described by the hand of an able painter.

In sailing, from the 25th to the 28th, the wind was accompanied with a large hollow sea, which rendered Captain Cook certain that no land of any considerable extent could lie within a hundred or a hundred and fifty leagues from east to south-west. Though this was still the summer season in that part of the world, and the weather was become somewhat warmer than it had been before, yet such were the effects of the cold, that a sow having farrowed nine pigs in the morning, all of them, notwithstanding the utmost care to prevent it, were killed before four o'clock in the afternoon. From the same cause, the captain himself and several of his people had their fingers and toes chilblained. For some days afterwards, the cold considerably abated; but still it could not be said that there was summer weather, according to our commander's ideas of summer in the northern hemisphere, as far as sixty degrees of latitude, which was nearly as far as he had then been.

As he proceeded on his voyage, from the 28th of February, to the 11th of March, he had ample reason to conclude, from the swell of the sea and other circumstances, that there could be no land to the south but what must lie at a great distance.

The weather having been clear on the 13th and 14th, Mr. Wales had an opportunity of getting some observations of the sun and moon; the results of which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was 58 deg. 22 min. south, gave 136 deg. 22 min. east longitude. Mr. Kendal's and Mr. Arnold's watches gave each of them 134 deg. 42 min.; and this was the first and only time in which they had pointed out the same longitude since the ships had departed from England. The greatest difference, however, between them, since our voyagers had left the Cape had not exceeded two degrees.

From the moderate, and what might almost be called pleasant, weather, which had occurred for two or three days, Captain Cook began to wish that he had been a few degrees of latitude further south, and he was even tempted to incline his course that way. But he soon met with weather which convinced him that he had proceeded full far enough, and that the time was approaching when these seas could not be navigated without enduring intense cold. As he advanced in his course, he became perfectly assured, from repeated proofs, that he had left no land behind him in the direction of west-south-west, and that no land lay to the south on this side sixty deg. of latitude. He came, therefore, to a resolution, on the 17th, to quit the high southern latitudes, and to proceed to New Zealand, with a view of looking for the Adventure, and of refreshing his people. He had also some thoughts, and even a desire of visiting the east coast of Van Dieman's Land, in order to satisfy himself whether it joined the coast of New South Wales. The wind, however, not permitting him to execute this part of his design, he shaped his course for New Zealand, in sight of which he arrived on the 25th, and where he came to an anchor, on the day following, in Dusky Bay. He had now been a hundred and seventeen days at sea, during which time he had sailed three thousand six hundred and sixty

leag  
land  
A  
it m  
Cap  
This  
the  
prov  
swee  
on b  
the  
casi  
of o  
A  
he h  
to th  
and  
that  
whil  
with  
in th  
as s  
hope  
Nor  
of w  
enjo  
call  
stan  
in t  
one  
part  
O  
bou  
tlen  
for  
and  
hun  
voy  
vig

leagues, without having once come within sight of land.

After so long a voyage, in a high southern latitude, it might reasonably have been expected that many of Captain Cook's people would be ill of the scurvy. This, however, was not the case. So salutary were the effects of the sweet wort and several articles of provisions, and especially of the frequent airing and sweetening of the ship, that there was only one man on board who could be said to be much afflicted with the disease; and even in that man it was chiefly occasioned by a bad habit of body, and a complication of other disorders.

As our commander did not like the place in which he had anchored, he sent Lieutenant Pickersgill over to the south-east side of the bay in search of a better, and the lieutenant succeeded in finding an harbour that was in every respect desirable. In the mean while, the fishing-boat was very successful, returning with fish sufficient for the whole crew's supper; and, in the morning of the next day, as many were caught as served for dinner. Hence were derived certain hopes of being plentifully supplied with this article. Nor did the shores and woods appear more destitute of wild fowl; so that our people had the prospect of enjoying with ease what, in their situation, might be called the luxuries of life. These agreeable circumstances determined Captain Cook to stay some time in the bay, in order to examine it thoroughly, as no one had ever landed before on any of the southern parts of New Zealand.

On the 27th, the ship entered Pickersgill Harbour; for so it was called, from the name of the gentleman by whom it was first discovered. Here wood for fuel and other purposes was immediately at hand, and a fine stream of fresh water was not above a hundred yards from the stern of the vessel. Our voyagers, being thus advantageously situated, began vigorously to prepare for the necessary occupations,

by clearing places in the woods, in order to set up the astronomer's observatory, and the forge for the iron work, and to erect tents for the sail-makers and coopers. They applied themselves also to the brewing of beer from the branches or leaves of a tree which greatly resembled the American black spruce. Captain Cook was persuaded, from the knowledge which he had of this tree, and from the similarity it bore to the spruce, that, with the addition of inspissated juice of wort, and molasses, it would make a very wholesome liquor, and supply the want of vegetables, of which the country was destitute. It appeared, by the event, that he was not mistaken in his judgment.

Several of the natives were seen on the 28th, who took little notice of the English, and were very shy of access; and the captain did not choose to force an intercourse with them, as he had been instructed by former experience that the best method of obtaining it was to leave the time and place to themselves. While our commander continued in his present situation, he took every opportunity of examining the bay. As he was prosecuting his survey of it, on the 6th of April, his attention was directed to the north side, where he discovered a fine capacious cove, in the bottom of which is a fresh water river. On the west side are several beautiful cascades; and the shores are so steep, that water might be directly conveyed from them into the ship. Fourteen ducks, besides other birds, having been shot in this place, he gave it the name of Duck Cove. When he was returning in the evening, he met with three of the natives, one man and two women, whose fears he soon dissipated, and whom he engaged in a conversation that was little understood on either side. The youngest of the women had a volubility of tongue that could not be exceeded, and she entertained Capt. Cook, and the gentlemen who accompanied him with a dance.

By degrees, our commander obtained the good-will and confidence of the Indians. His presents, however, were at first received with much indifference, hatchets and spike nails excepted. At a visit on the 12th, from a family of the natives, the captain perceiving they approached the ship with great caution, met them in a boat, which he quitted when he came near them, and went into their canoe. After all, he could not prevail upon them to go on board the *Resolution*; but at length they put on shore in a little creek, and seating themselves abreast of the English vessel, entered into familiar conversation with several of the officers and seamen, in which they paid a much greater regard to some, whom they probably mistook for females, than to others. So well, indeed, were they now reconciled to our voyagers, that they took up their quarters nearly within the distance of a hundred yards from the ship's watering-place. Capt. Cook, in his interview with them, had caused the bagpipes and fifes to play, and the drum to beat. The two former they heard with apparent insensibility, but the latter excited in them a certain degree of attention.

On the 18th, a chief, with whom some connexions had already been formed, was induced, together with his daughter, to come on board the *Resolution*. Previously to his doing so, he presented the captain with a piece of cloth, and a green talc hatchet. He gave also a piece of cloth to Mr. Forster; and the girl gave another to Mr. Hodges. Though this custom of making presents, before any are received, is common with the natives of the South Sea isles, our commander had never till now seen it practised in New Zealand. Another thing performed by the chief, before he went on board, was the taking of a small green branch in his hand, with which he struck the ship's sides several times, repeating a speech or prayer. This manner, as it were, of making peace, is likewise prevalent among all the nations of the

South Seas. When the chief was carried into the cabin, he viewed every part of it with some degree of surprise; but it was not possible to fix his attention to any one object for a single moment. The works of art appeared to him in the same light as those of nature, and were equally distant from his powers of comprehension. He and his daughter seemed to be the most struck with the number of the decks, and other parts of the ship.

As Captain Cook proceeded in examining Dusky Bay, he occasionally met with some few more of the natives, with regard to whom he used every mode of conciliation. On the 20th, the chief and his family, who had been more intimate with our navigators than any of the rest of the Indians, went away, and never returned again. This was the more extraordinary, as in all his visits he had been gratified with presents. From different persons, he had got nine or ten hatchets, and three or four times that number of large spike-nails, besides a variety of other articles. So far as these things may be deemed riches in New Zealand, he was undoubtedly become by far the most wealthy man in the whole country.

One employment of our voyagers, while in Dusky Bay, consisted in seal-hunting, an animal which was found serviceable for three purposes. The skins were made use of for rigging, the fat afforded oil for the lamps, and the flesh was eaten. On the 24th, the Captain having five geese remaining of those he had brought with him from the Cape of Good Hope, went and left them at a place to which he gave the name of Goose Cove. This place he fixed upon for two reasons; first, because there were no inhabitants to disturb them; and secondly, because here was the greatest supply of proper food: so that he had no doubt of their breeding, and hoped that in time they might spread over the whole country, to its eminent advantage. Some days afterwards, when every thing belonging to the ship had been removed

frou  
dry  
with  
was  
plan  
T  
peo  
reas  
unc  
that  
affo  
plet  
sini  
25th  
war  
deg  
pre  
usu  
par  
New  
30 p  
ear  
jac  
:rav  
frou  
as  
use  
in t  
T  
con  
ne  
Ba  
ter  
ing  
na  
cir  
bla  
th

from the shore, he set fire to the topwood in order to dry a piece of ground, which he dug up and sowed with several sorts of garden seeds. The soil, indeed, was not such as to promise much success to the planter: but it was the best that could be discovered.

The 25th of April was the eighth fair day our people had successively enjoyed; and there was reason to believe that such a circumstance was very uncommon in the place where they now lay, and at that season of the year. This favourable weather afforded them the opportunity of more speedily completing their wood and water, and of putting the ship into a condition for sea. On the evening of the 25th, it began to rain; and the weather was afterwards extremely variable, being, at times, in a high degree wet, cold, and stormy. Nothing, however, prevented Captain Cook from prosecuting, with his usual sagacity and diligence, his search into every part of Dusky Bay; and as there are few places in New Zealand where necessary refreshments may be so plentifully obtained, as in this bay, he has taken care to give such a description of it, and of the adjacent country, as may be of service to succeeding navigators. Although this country lies far remote from what is now the trading part of the world, yet, as he justly observes, we can by no means tell what use future ages may derive from the discoveries made in the present.

The various anchoring places are delineated on our commander's chart, and the most convenient of them he has particularly described. Not only about Dusky Bay, but through all the southern parts of the western coast of Tavai-poenammo, the country is exceedingly mountainous.

As Dusky Bay presented many advantages to our navigators, so it was attended with some disagreeable circumstances. There were great numbers of small black sand flies, which were troublesome to a degree that our commander had never experienced before.

Another evil arose from the continual quantity of rain that occurred in the bay. This might, indeed, in part proceed from the season of the year; but it is probable that the country must at all times be subject to much wet weather, in consequence of the vast height and vicinity of the mountains. It was remarkable that the rain, though our people were perpetually exposed to it, was not productive of any evil consequences. On the contrary, such of the men as were sick and complaining when they entered the bay, recovered daily, and the whole crew soon became strong and vigorous. So happy a circumstance could only be attributed to the healthiness of the place, and the provisions which it afforded; among which the beer was a very material article.

The inhabitants of Dusky Bay are of the same race with the other natives of New Zealand, speak the same language, and adhere nearly to the same customs. Their mode of life appears to be a wandering one; and though they are few in number, no traces were remarked of their families being connected together in any close bonds of union or friendship.

While the Resolution lay in the bay, Mr. Wales made a variety of scientific observations relative to latitude and longitude, the variation of the compass, and the diversity of the tides.

When Captain Cook left Dusky Bay, he directed his course for Queen Charlotte's Sound, where he expected to find the Adventure. This was on the 11th of May, and nothing remarkable occurred till the 17th, when the wind at once flattened to a calm; the sky became suddenly obscured by dark dense clouds, and there was every prognostication of a tempest. Soon after, six water-spouts were seen, four of which rose and spent themselves between the ship and the land; the fifth was at a considerable distance, on the other side of the vessel; and the sixth, the progressive motion of which was not in a straight but in a

croo  
the  
As  
a g  
that  
he  
pur  
thes  
the  
O  
of Q  
the  
both  
after  
whic  
sepa  
imm  
suffi  
exar  
bith  
opin  
land  
met  
New  
TH  
Char  
to lo  
and  
in a  
quar  
crew  
shou  
day  
Exp  
men  
ficia  
comp  
Ou  
Vra  
20

crooked lined, passed within fifty yards of the stern of the *Resolution*, without producing any evil effect. As the captain had been informed that the firing of a gun would dissipate water-spouts, he was sorry that he had not tried the experiment. But though he was near enough, and had a gun ready for the purpose, his mind was so deeply engaged in viewing these extraordinary meteors, that he forgot to give the necessary directions.

On the next day, the *Resolution* came within sight of Queen Charlotte's Sound, where Captain Cook had the satisfaction of discovering the *Adventure*; and both ships felt uncommon joy at thus meeting again after an absence of fourteen weeks. As the events which happened to Captain Furneaux during the separation of the two vessels do not fall within the immediate design of the present narrative, it may be sufficient to observe, that he had an opportunity of examining, with somewhat more accuracy than had hitherto been done, Van Dieman's Land; and his opinion was, that there are no straits between this land and New Holland, but a very deep bay. He met likewise, with further proofs that the natives of New Zealand are eaters of human flesh.

The morning after Captain Cook's arrival in Queen Charlotte's Sound, he went himself, at day-break, to look for scurvy-grass, celery, and other vegetables, and had the good fortune to return with a boat-load in a very short time. Having found that a sufficient quantity of these articles might be obtained for the crews of both the ships, he gave orders that they should be boiled with wheat and portable broth every day for breakfast, and peas and broth for dinner. Experience had taught him that the vegetables now mentioned, when thus dressed, are extremely beneficial to seamen, in removing the various scorbutic complaints to which they are subject.

Our commander had entertained a desire of visiting Van Dieman's Land, in order to inform himself

whether it made a part of New Holland. But as this point had been in a great measure cleared up by Captain Furneaux, he came to a resolution to continue his researches to the east, between the latitudes of 41 deg. and 46 deg. ; and he directed accordingly that the ships should be got ready for putting to sea as soon as possible. On the 20th, he sent on shore the only ewe and ram that remained of those which, with the intention of leaving them in this country, he had brought from the Cape of Good Hope. Soon after he visited several gardens which, by order of Captain Furneaux, had been made, and planted with various articles ; all of which were in such a flourishing state, that, if duly attended to, they promised to be of great utility to the natives. The next day Captain Cook himself set some men to work to form a garden on Long Island, which he stocked with different seeds, and particularly with the roots of turnips, carrots, parsnips, and potatoes. These were the vegetables that would be of the most real use to the Indians, and of these it was easy to give them an idea, by comparing them with such roots as they themselves knew. On the 22d, Capt. Cook received the unpleasant intelligence that the ewe and ram which, with so much care and trouble, he had brought to this place, were both of them found dead. It was supposed that they had eaten some poisonous plant, and by this accident all the captain's hopes of stocking New Zealand with a breed of sheep were instantly blasted.

The intercourse which our great navigator had with the inhabitants of the country, during this his second visit to Queen Charlotte's Sound, was of a friendly nature. Two or three families took up their abode near the ships, and employed themselves daily in fishing and in supplying the English with the fruits of their labour. No small advantage hence accrued to our people, who were by no means such expert fishers as the natives nor were any of our

met  
eve  
ried  
mos  
bar

C  
ven  
sen  
goa  
nea  
The  
wou  
vide  
they  
dan  
beir  
time

I  
secc  
not  
who  
app  
ledg  
had  
tho  
the  
of t  
it, o  
si v  
ther  
stro  
and  
tion  
was  
been  
ages  
Eah  
stat  
P

methods of fishing equal to theirs. Thus, in almost every state of society, particular arts of life are carried to perfection; and there is something which the most polished nations may learn from the most barbarous.

On the 2d of June, when the Resolution and Adventure were almost ready to put to sea, Capt. Cook sent on shore, on the east side of the Sound, two goats, a male and female; and Captain Furneaux left near Cannibal Cove a boar and two breedings sows. The gentlemen had little doubt that the country would in time be stocked with these animals, provided they were not destroyed by the Indians before they became wild. Afterwards there would be no danger; and as the natives knew nothing of their being left behind, it was hoped that it might be some time before they would be discovered.

It is remarkable, that during Captain Cook's second visit to Queen Charlottes's Sound, he was not able to recollect the face of any one person whom he had seen three years before: nor did it once appear that even a single Indian had the least knowledge of our commander, or of any of our people who had been with him in his last voyage. Hence he thought it highly probable that the greatest part of the natives who inhabited this Sound in the beginning of the year 1770 had either since been driven out of it, or had removed, of their own accord, to some other situation. Not one-third of the inhabitants were there now that had been seen at that time. Their strong-hold on the point of Motuara was deserted, and in every part of the Sound many forsaken habitations were discovered. In the captain's opinion, there was not any reason to believe that the place had ever been very populous. From comparing the two voyages together, it may be collected that the Indians of Eaheinomauwe are in somewhat of a more improved state of society than those of Tavai-poenammo.

Part of the 4th of June was employed by Captain

Cook in visiting a chief and a whole tribe of the natives, consisting of between ninety and a hundred persons, including men, women, and children. After the captain had distributed some presents among these people, and shown to the chief the gardens which had been made, he returned on board, and spent the remainder of the day in the celebration of his royal master's nativity. Captain Furneaux and all his officers were invited upon the occasion; and the seamen were enabled, by a double allowance, to partake of the general joy.

As some might think it an extraordinary step in our commander to proceed in discoveries so far south as forty-six degrees of latitude in the very depth of winter, he has recorded his motives for this part of his conduct. Winter, he acknowledges is by no means favourable for discoveries. Nevertheless it appeared to him to be necessary that something should be done in that season, in order to lessen the work in which he was engaged, and lest he should not be able to finish the discovery of the southern part of the South Pacific Ocean in the ensuing summer. Besides, if he should discover any land in his route to the east, he would be ready to begin to explore it as soon as ever the season should be favourable. Independently of all these considerations, he had little to fear—having two good ships well provided, and both the crews being healthy. Where, then, could he better employ his time? If he did nothing more, he was at least in hopes of being enabled to point out to posterity that these seas may be navigated, and that it is practicable to pursue discoveries even in the depth of winter. Such was the ardour of our navigator for prosecuting the ends of his voyage, in circumstances which would have induced most men to act a more cautious part!

During Captain Cook's stay in the Sound, he had observed that the second visit to this country had not mended the morals of either sex. He had always

looked upon the females of New Zealand as more chaste than the generality of Indian women. Whatever favours a few of them might have granted to the people in the Endeavour, such intercourse usually took place in a private manner, and did not appear to be encouraged by the men. But now Captain Cook was told that the male Indians were the chief promoters of this shameful traffic, and that for a spike-nail, or any other thing that they valued, they would oblige the women to prostitute themselves, whether it were agreeable or contrary to their inclinations. At the same time no regard was paid to the privacy which decency required. The account of this fact must be read with concern by every well-wisher to the good order and happiness of society, even without adverting to considerations of a higher nature.

On the 7th of June, Captain Cook put to sea from Queen Charlotte's Sound, with the Adventure in company. I shall omit the nautical part of the route from New Zealand to Otaheite, which continued till the 15th of August; and shall only select such circumstances as are more immediately suitable to the design of the present narrative. It was found, on the 20th of July, that the crew of the Adventure were in a sickly state. Her cook was dead, and about twenty of her best men were rendered incapable of duty by the scurvy and flux. At this time no more than three men were on the sick list on board the Resolution, and only one of these was attacked with the scurvy. Some others, however, began to discover the symptoms of it; and accordingly recourse was had to wort, marmalade of carrots, and the rob of lemons and oranges, with the usual success.

Captain Cook could not account for the prevalence of the scurvy being so much greater in the Adventure than in the Resolution, unless it was owing to the crew of the former being more scorbutic when they arrived in New Zealand than the crew of the latter.

and to their eating few or no vegetables while they lay in Queen Charlotte's Sound. This arose partly from their want of knowing the right sorts, and partly from the dislike which seamen have to the introduction of a new diet. Their aversion to any unusual change of food is so great, that it can only be overcome by the steady and persevering example and authority of a commander. Many of Captain Cook's people, officers as well as common sailors, disliked the boiling of celery, scurvy-grass, and other greens, with peas and wheat: and by some the provisions thus prepared were refused to be eaten. But as this had no effect on the captain's conduct, their prejudice gradually subsided; they began to like their diet as much as the rest of their companions: and at length there was hardly a man in the ship who did not attribute the escape of the crew from the scurvy to the beer and vegetables which had been made use of at New Zealand. Henceforward, whenever the seamen came to a place where vegetables could be obtained, our commander seldom found it necessary to order them to be gathered; and if they were scarce, happy was the person who could first lay hold of them.

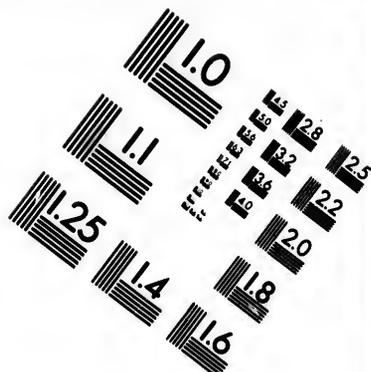
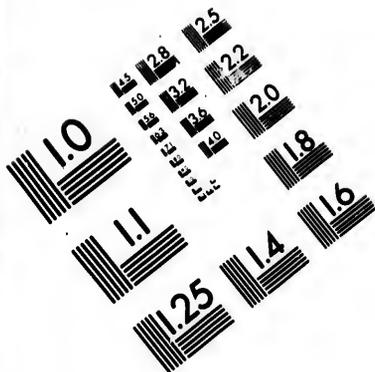
On the 1st of August, when the ships were in the latitude of 25 deg. 1 min. and the longitude of 134 deg. 6 min. west, they were nearly in the same situation with that which is assigned by Capt. Carteret for Pitcairn's Island, discovered by him in 1767. For this island, therefore, our voyagers diligently looked, but they saw nothing. According to the longitude in which he had placed it, Captain Cook must have passed it fifteen leagues to the west. But as this was uncertain, he did not think it prudent to lose any time in searching for it, as the sickly state of the Adventure's people required as speedy an arrival as possible to a place of refreshment. A sight of it, however, would have been of use in verifying or correcting, not only the longitude of Pitcairn's Island, but of the others discovered by Captain Carteret in

that neighbourhood. It is a diminution of the value of that gentleman's voyage, that his longitude was not confirmed by astronomical observations, and that hence it was liable to errors, the correction of which was out of his power.

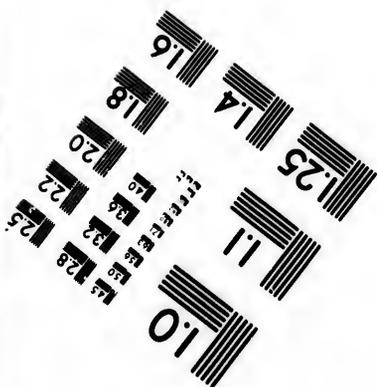
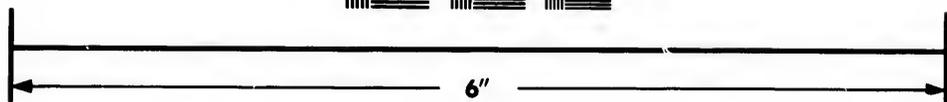
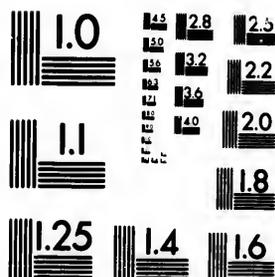
As Captain Cook had now got to the northward of Captain Carteret's tracks, he no longer entertained any hopes of discovering a continent. Islands were all that he could expect to find, until he returned again to the south. In this and his former voyage, he had crossed the ocean in the latitude of 40 deg. and upwards, without meeting any thing which could in the least induce him to believe that he should attain the great object of his pursuit. Every circumstance concurred to convince him, that between the meridian of America and New Zealand, there is no southern continent; and that there is no continent further to the south, unless in a very high latitude. This, however, was a point too important to be left to opinions and conjectures. It was to be determined by facts; and the ascertainment of it was appointed, by our commander, for the employment of the ensuing summer.

It was the 6th of August before the ships had the advantage of the trade wind. This they got at south-east, being at that time in the latitude of 19 deg. 36 min. south, and the longitude of 131 deg. 32 min. west. As Captain Cook had obtained the south-east trade wind, he directed his course to the west-north-west, not only with a view of keeping in with the strength of the wind, but also to get to the north of the islands discovered in his former voyage, that he might have a chance of meeting with any other islands which might lie in the way. It was in the track which had been pursued by M. de Bougainville that our commander now proceeded. He was sorry that he could not spare time to sail to the north of this track; but at present, on account of the sickly state of the Adventure's





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8  
1.8 3.2  
2.2 3.6  
2.5 4.0  
3.0 4.5  
3.6 5.4  
4.5 6.3  
5.4 7.2  
6.3 8.1  
7.2 9.0  
8.1 9.9  
9.0 10.8  
10.8 12.6  
12.6 14.4  
14.4 16.2  
16.2 18.0  
18.0 20.0

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20

crew, the arriving at a place where refreshments could be procured was an object superior to that of discovery. To four of the islands which were passed by Captain Cook, he gave the names of Resolution Island, Doubtful Island, Furneaux Island, and Adventure Island. They are supposed to be the same that were seen by M. de Bougainville, and these with several others, which constitute a cluster of low and half-drowned isles, that gentleman distinguished by the appellation of the Dangerous Archipelago. The smoothness of the sea sufficiently convinced our navigators that they were surrounded by them, and that it was highly necessary to proceed with the utmost caution, especially in the night.

Early on the morning of the 15th of August, the ships came within sight of Osnaburg Island, or Maitea, which had been discovered by Capt. Wallis. Soon after, Captain Cook acquainted Capt. Furneaux that it was his intention to put into Oaiti-piha Bay, near the south-east end of Otaheite, for the purpose of procuring what refreshments he could from that part of the island, before he went down to Matavia. At six in the evening the island was seen bearing west, and our people continued to advance towards it till midnight, when they brought to, till four o'clock in the morning; after which they sailed in for the land, with a fine breeze at east. At day-break they found themselves within the distance of half a league from the reef; and at the same time the breeze began to fail them, and was at last succeeded by a calm. It now became necessary for the boats to be hoisted out, in order to tow off the ships; but all the efforts of our voyagers to keep them from being carried near the reef were insufficient for the purpose. As the calm continued, the situation of the vessels became still more dangerous. Captain Cook, however, entertained hopes of getting round the western point of the reef, and into the bay. But, about two o'clock

in the afternoon, when he came before an opening or break of the reef, through which he had flattered himself that he might get with the ships, he found on sending to examine it, there was not a sufficient depth of water. Nevertheless this opening caused such an in-draught of the tide of flood through it, as was very near proving fatal to the Resolution: for as soon as the vessels got into the stream, they were carried towards the reef with great impetuosity. The moment the captain perceived this, he ordered one of the warping machines, which was held in readiness, to be carried out with about four hundred fathoms of rope; but it did not produce the least effect, and our navigators had now in prospect the horrors of shipwreck. They were not more than two cables' length from the breakers: and though it was the only probable method which was left of saving the ships, they could find no bottom to anchor. An anchor, however, they did drop; but before it took hold; and brought them up, the Resolution was in less than three fathom water, and struck at every fall of the sea, which broke close under her stern in a dreadful surf, and threatened her crew every moment with destruction. Happily the Adventure brought up without striking. Presently the Resolution's people carried out two kedge anchors, with hawsers to each; and these found ground a little without the bower. By heaving upon them, and cutting away the bower anchor, the ship was got afloat, where Captain Cook and his men lay for some time in the greatest anxiety, expecting every minute that either the kedges would come home, or the hawsers be cut in two by the rocks. At length the tide ceased to act in the same direction, upon which the captain ordered all the boats to try to tow off the vessel. Having found this to be practicable, the two kedges were hove up; and at that moment a light air came off from the land, by which the boats were so much assisted, that the Resolution soon got clear of all

danger. Our commander then ordered all the boats to assist the Adventure ; but, before they reached her, she was under sail with the land breeze, and in a little time joined her companion, leaving behind her three anchors, her coasting cable, and two hawsers, which were never recovered. Thus were our voyagers once more safe at sea, after narrowly escaping being wrecked on the very island at which, but a few days before, they had most ardently wished to arrive. It was a peculiar happy circumstance that the calm continued after bringing the ships into so dangerous a state ; for if the sea-breeze, as is usually the case, had set in, the Resolution must inevitably have been lost, and probably the Adventure likewise.

During the time in which the English were in this critical situation, a number of the natives were either on board, or near the vessels in their canoes. Nevertheless they seemed to be insensible of our people's danger, showing not the least surprise, joy, or fear, when the ships were striking ; and they went away a little before sun-set, quite unconcerned. Though most of them knew Captain Cook again, and many inquired for Mr. Banks and others who had been with the captain before, it was remarkable that not one of them asked for Tupia.

On the 17th, the Resolution and Adventure anchored in Oaiti-piha Bay, immediately upon which they were crowded with the inhabitants of the country, who brought with them cocoa-nuts, plantains, bananas, apples, yams, and other roots, which were exchanged for nails and beads. To some who called themselves chiefs, our commander made presents of shirts, axes, and several articles besides, in return for which they promised to bring him hogs and fowls—a promise which they did not perform, and which, as might be judged from their conduct, they had never had the least intention of performing. In the afternoon of the same day, Captain Cook landed, in company with Captain Furneaux, for the purpose of

viewing the watering-place, and of sounding the disposition of the natives. The article of water, which was now much wanted on board, he found might conveniently be obtained, and the inhabitants behaved with great civility. Notwithstanding this civility, nothing was brought to market the next day but fruit and roots, though it was said that many hogs were seen about the houses in the neighbourhood. The cry was, that they belonged to Waheatoua, the earee de hi, or king, who had not yet appeared. Nor indeed any other chief of note. Among the Indians who came on board the Resolution, and no small number of whom did not scruple to call themselves earees, there was one of this sort, who had been entertained in the cabin most of the day, and to all of whose friends Captain Cook had made presents, as well as liberally to himself. At length, however, he was caught taking things which did not belong to him, and handing them out of the quarter gallery. Various complaints of the like nature being, at the same time, made against the natives who were on deck, our commander turned them all out of the ship. His cabin guest was very rapid in his retreat, and the captain was so exasperated at his behaviour, that after the earee had got to some distance from the Resolution, he fired two muskets over his head, by which he was so much terrified that he quitted his canoe, and took to the water. Captain Cook then sent a boat to take the canoe; but when the boat approached the shore, the people on land began to pelt her with stones. The Captain, therefore, being in some pain for her safety, as she was unarmed, went himself in another boat to protect her, and ordered a great gun, loaded with ball, to be fired along the coast, which made all the Indians retire from the shore, and he was suffered to bring away two canoes without the least show of opposition. In a few hours peace was restored, and the canoes were returned to the first person who came for them.

It was not till the evening of this day that any one inquired after Tupia, and then the enquiry was made by only two or three of the natives. When they learned the cause of his death, they were perfectly satisfied; nor did it appear to our commander that they would have felt a moment's uneasiness, if Tupia's decease had proceeded from any other cause than sickness. They were as little concerned about Aotourou, the man who had gone away with M. de Bougainville, but they were continually asking for Mr. Banks, and for several others, who had accompanied Captain Cook in his former voyage.

On the 20th, one of the natives carried off a musket belonging to a guard on shore. Capt. Cook, who was himself a witness of the transaction, sent out some of his people after him; but this would have been to very little purpose, if the thief had not been intercepted by several of his own countrymen, who pursued him voluntarily, knocked him down, and returned the musket to the English. This act of justice prevented our commander from being placed in a disagreeable situation. If the natives had not given their immediate assistance, it would scarcely have been in his power to have recovered the musket by any gentle means whatever; and if he had been obliged to have recourse to other methods, he was sure of losing more than ten times its value.

The fraud of one who appeared as a chief is perhaps not unworthy of notice. This man, in a visit to Captain Cook, presented him with a quantity of fruit, among which were a number of cocoa-nuts that had already been exhausted of their liquor by our people, and afterwards thrown overboard. These the chief had picked up, and tied so artfully in bundles, that at first the deception was not perceived. When he was informed of it, without betraying the least emotion, and affecting a total ignorance of the matter, he opened two or three of the nuts himself, signified that he was satisfied of the fact, and then went on

any one as made when they perfectly er that Tupia's se than out Ao-M. de ing for accomi-

shore, and sent off a quantity of plaintains and bananas. The ingenuity and the impudence of fraud are not solely the production of polished society.

Captain Cook, on the 23d, had an interview with Waheatoua, the result of which was, that our navigators obtained on this day as much pork as furnished a meal to the crews of both vessels. In the captain's last voyage, Waheatoua, who was then little more than a boy, was called Tearce; but having succeeded to his father's authority, he had assumed his father's name.

The fruits which were procured at Oaiti-piha Bay contributed greatly to the recovery of the sick people belonging to the Adventure. Many of them, who had been so ill as to be incapable of moving without assistance, were, in the compass of a few days, so far recovered, that they were able to walk about of themselves. When the Resolution entered the bay, she had but one scorbutic man on board. A marine, who had long been sick, and who died the second day after her arrival, of a complication of disorders, had not the least mixture of the scurvy.

On the 24th, the ships put to sea, and arrived the next evening in Matavia Bay. Before they could come to an anchor, the decks were crowded with the natives, many of whom Captain Cook knew, and by most of whom he was well remembered. Among a large multitude of people, who were collected together upon the shore, was Otoo, the king of the island. Our commander paid him a visit on the following day at Oparre, the place of his residence; and found him to be a fine, personable, well-made man, six feet high, and about thirty years of age. The qualities of his mind, were not correspondent to his external appearance; for when Capt. Cook endeavoured to obtain from him the promise of a visit on board, he acknowledged that he was afraid of the guns, and indeed manifested in all his actions that he was a prince of a timorous disposition.

Upon the captain's return from Oparre, he found the tents, and the astronomer's observations set up, on the same spot from which the transit of Venus had been observed in 1769. The sick, being twenty in number from the Adventure, and one from the Resolution, all of whom were ill of the scurvy, he ordered to be landed: and he appointed a guard of marines on shore, under the command of Lieutenant Edgcumbe.

On the 27th, Otoo was prevailed upon, with some degree of reluctance, to pay our commander a visit. He came attended with a numerous train, and brought with him fruits, a hog, two large fishes, and a quantity of cloth, for which he and all his retinue were gratified with suitable presents. When Captain Cook conveyed his guests to land, he was met by a venerable lady, the mother of the late Toutaha, who seized him by both hands, and burst into a flood of tears, saying, *Toutaha tiyo no toutee matty Toutaha*; that is, "Toutaha, your friend, or the friend of Cook is dead." He was so much affected with her behaviour, that it would have been impossible for him to have refrained from mingling his tears with hers, had not Otoo, who was displeased with the interview, taken him from her. It was with difficulty that the captain could obtain permission to see her again, when he gave her an axe and some other articles. Captain Furneaux at this time presented the king with two fine goats, which, if no accident befell them, might be expected to multiply.

Several days had passed in a friendly intercourse with the natives, and in the procuring of provisions, when, in the evening of the 30th, the gentlemen on board the Resolution were alarmed with the cry of murder, and with a great noise on shore, near the bottom of the bay, and at a distance from the English encampment. Upon this, Capt. Cook, who suspected that some of his own men were concerned in the affair, immediately dispatched an armed boat to know the

cause of the disturbance, and to bring off such of his people as should be found in the place. He sent also to the Adventure, and to the post on shore, to learn who were missing; for none but those who were upon duty were absent from the Resolution. The boats speedily returned with three marines and a seaman. Some others likewise were taken, belonging to the Adventure; and all of them being put under confinement, our commander, the next morning, ordered them to be punished according to their deserts. He did not find that any mischief had been done, and the men would confess nothing. Some liberties which they had taken with the women had probably given occasion to the disturbance. To whatever cause it was owing, the natives were so much alarmed, that they fled from their habitation in the dead of the night, and the alarm was spread many miles along the coast. In the morning, when Capt. Cook went to visit Otoo by appointment, he found that he had removed, or rather fled, to a great distance from the usual place of his abode. After arriving where he was, it was some hours before the captain could be admitted to see him, and then he complained of the riot of the preceding evening.

The sick being nearly recovered, the water completed, and the necessary repairs of the ships finished, Captain Cook determined to put to sea without delay. Accordingly, on the 1st of September, he ordered every thing to be removed from the shore, and the vessels to be unmoored, in which employment his people were engaged the greater part of the day. In the afternoon of the same day, Lieutenant Pickersgill returned from Attahourou, to which place he had been sent by the captain for the purpose of procuring some hogs that had been promised. In this expedition the lieutenant had seen the celebrated Oberea, who has been so much the object of poetical fancy. Her situation was very humble, compared with what it had formerly been. She was not only altered

much for the worse in her person, but appeared to be poor, and of little or no consequence or authority in the island. In the evening, a favourable wind having sprung up, our commander put to sea, on which occasion he was obliged to dismiss his Otaheitan friends sooner than they wished to depart, but well satisfied with his kind and liberal treatment.

From Matavia bay, Captain Cook directed his course for the island of Huaheine, where he intended to touch. This island he reached the next day, and early in the morning of the 3d of September, made sail for the harbour of Owharre, in which he soon came to an anchor. The Adventure, not happening to turn into the harbour with equal facility, got ashore on the north side of the channel; but, by the timely assistance which Captain Cook had previously provided in case such an accident should occur, she was got off without receiving any damage. As soon as both the ships were in safety, our commander, together with Captain Furneaux, landed upon the island, and was received by the natives with the utmost cordiality. A trade immediately commenced; so that our navigators had a fair prospect of being plentifully supplied with fresh pork and fowls, which, to people in their situation, was a very desirable circumstance. On the 4th, Lieut. Pickersgill sailed with the cutter, on a trading party, towards the south end of the isle. Another trading party was also sent on shore, near the ships, which party Capt. Cook attended himself, to see that the business was properly conducted at the first setting out, this being a point of no small importance. Every thing being settled to his mind, he went, accompanied by Capt. Furneaux and Mr. Forster, to pay a visit to his old friend Oree, the chief of the island. This visit was preceded by many preparatory ceremonies. Among other things the chief sent to our commander the inscription engraved on a small piece of pewter, which he had left with him in July 1769. It was in

the bag that Captain Cook had made for it, together with a piece of counterfeit English coin, and a few beads, which had been put in at the same time; whence it is evident that particular care had been taken of the whole. After the previous ceremonies had been discharged, the captain wanted to go to the king, but he was informed that the king would come to him. Accordingly Oree went up to our commander, and fell on his neck, and embraced him; nor was it a ceremonious embrace, for the tears which trickled down the venerable old man's cheeks sufficiently bespoke the language of his heart. The presents which Captain Cook made to the chief on this occasion, consisted of the most valuable articles he had, for he regarded him as a father. Oree, in return, gave the captain a hog, and a quantity of cloth, promising that all the wants of the English should be supplied; and it was a promise to which he faithfully adhered. Indeed, he carried his kindness to Captain Cook so far, as not to fail sending him every day for his table a plentiful supply of the very best of ready-dressed fruit and roots.

Hitherto all things had gone on in the most agreeable manner; but on Monday the 6th several circumstances occurred, which rendered it an unpleasant and troublesome day. When our commander went to the trading-place, he was informed that one of the inhabitants had behaved with remarkable insolence. This man was completely equipped in the war habit, had a club in each hand, and seemed bent upon mischief. Captain Cook therefore took the clubs from him, broke them before his eyes, and with some difficulty compelled him to retire. About the same time Mr. Sparrman, who had imprudently gone alone to botanize, was assaulted by two men, who stripped him of every thing which he had about him, excepting his trousers, and struck him again and again with his own hanger, though happily without doing him any harm. When they had accomplished their

purpose, they made off; after which another of the natives brought a piece of cloth to cover him, and conducted him to the trading place, where the inhabitants, in a large number were assembled. The instant that Mr. Sparrman appeared in the condition now described, they all fled with the utmost precipitation. Captain Cook having recalled a few of the Indians, and convinced them that he should take no step to injure those who were innocent, went to Oree, to complain of the outrage. When the chief had heard the whole affair related, he wept aloud, and many other of the inhabitants did the same. After the first transports of his grief had subsided, he began to expostulate with his people, telling them, (for so his language was understood by the English) how well Captain Cook had treated them, both in this and his former voyage, and how base it was in them to commit such actions. He then took a minute account of the things of which Mr. Sparrman had been robbed, and, after having promised to use his utmost endeavours for the recovery of them, desired to go into the captain's boat. At this the natives, apprehensive doubtless for the safety of their prince, expressed the utmost alarm, and used every argument to dissuade him from so rash a measure. All their remonstrances, however, were in vain. He hastened into the boat; and as soon as they saw that their beloved chief was wholly in our commander's power, they set up a great outcry. Indeed, their grief was inexpressible; they prayed, entreated, nay, attempted to pull him out of the boat; and every face was bedewed with tears. Even Captain Cook himself was so moved by their distress, that he united his entreaties with theirs, but all to no purpose. Oree insisted upon the captain's coming into the boat, which was no sooner done than he ordered it to be put off. His sister was the only person among the Indians who behaved with a becoming magnanimity on this occasion; for with a spirit equal to that

of her royal brother, she alone did not oppose his going. It was his design, in coming into the boat of the English, to proceed with them in search of the robbers. Accordingly he went with Capt. Cook as far as it was convenient by water, when they landed, entered the country, and travelled some miles inland; in doing which the chief led the way, and inquired after the criminals of every person whom he saw. In this search he would have gone to the very extremity of the island, if our commander, who did not think the object worthy of so laborious a pursuit, had not refused to proceed any further. Besides, as he intended to sail the next morning, and all manner of trade was stopped in consequence of the alarm of the natives, it became the more necessary for him to return, that he might restore things to their former state. It was with great reluctance that Oree was prevailed upon to discontinue the search, and to content himself with sending, at Captain Cook's request, some of his people for the things which had been carried off. When he and the captain had got back to the boat, they found there the chief's sister, and several other persons, who had travelled by land to the place. The English gentlemen immediately stepped into the boat, in order to return on board, without so much as asking Oree to accompany them; notwithstanding which, he insisted upon doing it; nor could the opposition and entreaties of those who were about him induce him to desist from his purpose. His sister followed his example, uninfluenced, on this occasion, by the supplications and tears of her daughter. Captain Cook amply rewarded the chief and his sister, for the confidence they had placed in him; and, after dinner, conveyed them both on shore, where some hundreds of people waited to receive them, many of whom embraced Oree with tears of joy. All was now peace and gladness; the inhabitants crowded in from every part with such a plentiful supply of hogs, fowls, and vegetable productions.

that the English presently filled two boats, and the chief himself presented the captain with a large hog, and a quantity of fruit. Mr. Sparrman's hanger, the only thing of value which he had lost, was brought back, together with part of his coat, and our navigators were told that the remaining articles should be restored the next day. Some things which had been stolen from a party of officers, who had gone out a shooting, were returned in like manner.

The transactions of this day have been the more particularly related, as they show the high opinion which the chief had formed of our commander, and the unreserved confidence that he placed in his integrity and honour. Oree had entered into a solemn friendship with Captain Cook, according to all the forms which were customary in the country; and he seemed to think that his friendship could not be broken by the act of any other person. It is justly observed by the captain, that another chief may never be found, who, under similar circumstances, will act in the same manner. Oree, indeed, had nothing to fear; for it was not our commander's intention to hurt a hair of his head, or to detain him a moment longer than was agreeable to his own desire. But of this, how could he and his people be assured? They were not ignorant that when he was once in Captain Cook's power, the whole force of the island would not be sufficient to recover him, and that they must have complied with any demands, however great, for his ransom. The apprehensions, therefore, of the inhabitants, for their chief's and their own safety, had a reasonable foundation.

Early on the 7th, while the ships were unmooring, the captain went to pay his farewell visit to Oree, and took with him such presents as had not only a fancied value, but a real utility. He left also with the chief the inscription-plate that had before been in his possession, and another small copper-plate, on which were engraved these words: "Anchored here,

his Britannic Majesty's ships Resolution and Adventure, September, 1773." These plates, together with some medals, were put into a bag, of which Oree promised to take care, and to produce them to the first ship or ships that should arrive at the island. Having in return given a hog to Captain Cook, and loaded his boat with fruit, they took leave of each other, when the good old chief embraced our commander with tears in his eyes. Nothing was said, at this interview, as to the rest of Mr. Sparrman's property. As it was early in the morning, the captain judged that it had not been brought in, and he was not willing to speak of it to Oree, lest he should give him pain about things which there had not been time to recover. The robbers having soon afterwards been taken, Oree came on board again to request that our commander would go on shore, either to punish them, or to be present at their punishment; but this not being convenient to him, he left them to the correction of their own chief. It was from the island of Huaheine that Captain Furneaux received into the ship, a young man named Omai, a native of Ulitea, of whom so much has since been known and written. Of this choice Captain Cook at first disapproved, as thinking that the youth was not a proper sample of the inhabitants of the Society Islands, being inferior to many of them in birth and acquired rank, and not having any peculiar advantage in point of shape, figure, or complexion. The captain afterwards found reason to be better satisfied with Omai's having accompanied our navigators to England.

During the short stay of the vessels at Huaheine, our people were very successful in obtaining supplies of provisions. No less than three hundred hogs, besides fowls and fruit were procured; and had the ships continued longer at the place, the quantity might have been greatly increased. Such was the fertility of this small island, that none of these arti-

cles of refreshment were seemingly diminished, but appeared to be as plentiful as ever.

From Huaheine our navigators sailed for Ulietea, where trade was carried on in the usual manner, and a most friendly intercourse renewed between Captain Cook and Oree, the chief of the island. Here Tupia was inquired after with particular eagerness, and the inquirers were perfectly satisfied with the account which was given of the occasion of the Indian's decease.

On the morning of the 15th, the English were surprised at finding that none of the inhabitants of Ulietea came off to the ships, as had hitherto been customary. As two men belonging to the Adventure had stayed on shore all night contrary to orders, Captain Cook's first conjectures were, that the natives had stripped them, and were afraid of the revenge which would be taken of the insult. This, however, was not the case. The men had been treated with great civility, and could assign no cause for the precipitate flight of the Indians. All that the captain could learn was, that several were killed, and others wounded, by the guns of the English. This information alarmed him for the safety of some of our people who had been sent out in two boats to the island of Otaha. He determined, therefore, if possible, to see the chief himself. When he came up to him, Oree threw his arms round our commander's neck, and burst into tears, in which he was accompanied by all the women, and some of the men, so that the lamentation became general. Astonishment alone kept Captain Cook from joining in their grief. At least, the whole which he could collect from his inquiries was, that the natives had been alarmed on account of the absence of the English boats, and imagined that the captain, upon the supposition of the desertion of his men, would use violent means for the recovery of his loss. When the matter was explained, it was acknowledged that not a single

inhabitants, nor a single Englishman, had been hurt. This groundless consternation displayed in a strong light, the timorous disposition of the people of the Society Islands.

Our navigators were as successful in procuring provisions at Ulietea, as they had been at Huaheine. Captain Cook judged that the number of hogs obtained amounted to four hundred or upwards; many of them, indeed, were only roasters, while others exceeded one hundred pounds in weight; but the general run was from forty to sixty. A larger quantity was offered than the ships could contain; so that our countrymen were enabled to proceed on their voyage, with no small degree of comfort and advantage.

Our commander, by his second visit to the Society Islands, gained a further knowledge of their general state, and of the customs of the inhabitants. It appeared that a Spanish ship had been lately to Otaheite and the natives complained that a disease had been communicated to them by the people of the vessel which, according to their account, affected the head, the throat, and the stomach, and at length ended in death. With regard to a certain disorder, the effects of which have so fatally been felt in the later ages of the world, Captain Cook's inquiries could not absolutely determine whether it was known to the islanders before they were visited by the Europeans. If it were of recent origin, the introduction of it was, without a dissentient voice, ascribed to the voyage of M. de Bougainville.

One thing which our commander was solicitous to ascertain was, whether human sacrifices constituted a part of the religious customs of these people. The man of whom he made his inquiries, and several other natives, took some pains to explain the matter; but, from our people's ignorance of the language of the country, their explanation could not be understood. Captain Cook afterwards learned from Omai, that the inhabitants of the Society Islands offer human

sacrifices to the Supreme Being. What relates to funeral ceremonies excepted, all the knowledge he could obtain concerning their religion was very imperfect and defective.

The captain had an opportunity in this voyage, of rectifying the great injustice which had been done to the women of Otaheite, and the neighbouring isles. They had been represented as ready, without exception, to grant the last favour to any man who would come up to their price; but our commander found that this was by no means the case. The favours both of the married women and of the unmarried, of the better sort, were as difficult to be obtained in the Society Islands as in any other country whatever. Even with respect to the unmarried females of the lower class, the charge was not indiscriminately true. There were many of these who would not admit of indecent familiarities. The setting of this subject in a proper light must be considered as one of the agreeable effects of Captain Cook's second voyage. Every enlightened mind will rejoice at what conduces to the honour of human nature in general, and of the female sex in particular. Chastity is so eminently the glory of that sex, and indeed is so essentially connected with the good order of society, that it must be a satisfaction to reflect that there is no country, however ignorant or barbarous, in which this virtue is not regarded as an object of moral obligation.

This voyage enabled our commander to gain some further knowledge concerning the geography of the Society Isles; and he found it highly probable that Otaheite is of greater extent than he had computed it in his former estimation. The astronomers did not neglect to set up their observatories, and to make observations suited to their purpose.

On the 17th of September, Captain Cook sailed from Ulietea, directing his course to the west, with an inclination to the south. Land was discovered on

the 23d of the month, to which he gave the name of Harvey's Island. On the 1st of October he reached the island of Middleburg. While he was looking about for a landing place, two canoes, each of them conducted by two or three men, came boldly alongside the ship, and some of the people entered it without hesitation. This mark of confidence inspired our commander with so good an opinion of the inhabitants, that he determined, if possible, to pay them a visit, which he did the next day. Scarcely had the vessel got to an anchor, before they were surrounded by a great number of canoes, full of the natives, who brought with them cloth and various curiosities, which they exchanged for nails, and such other articles as were adapted to their fancy. Among those who came on board was a chief named Tioony, whose friendship Captain Cook immediately gained by proper presents, consisting principally of a hatchet and some spike-nails. A party of our navigators, with the captain at the head of them, having embarked in two boats, proceeded to shore, where they found an immense crowd of people, who welcomed them to the island with loud acclamations. There was not so much as a stick, or any other weapon, in the hands of a single native, so pacific were their dispositions and intentions. They seemed to be more desirous of giving than receiving; and many of them who could not approach near to the boats, threw into them, over the heads of others, whole bales of cloth, and then retired, without either asking or waiting for any thing in return. The whole day was spent by our navigators in the most agreeable manner. When they returned on board in the evening, every one expressed how much he was delighted with the country, and the very obliging behaviour of the inhabitants, who seemed to vie with each other in their endeavours to give pleasure to our people. All this conduct appeared to be the result of the most pure good nature, perhaps without being

accompanied with much sentiment or feeling; for when Captain Cook signified to the chief his intention of quitting the island, he did not seem to be the least moved. Among other articles presented by the captain to Tioony, he left him an assortment of garden-seeds, which, if properly used, might be of great future benefit to the country.

From Middleburg the ships sailed down to Amsterdam, the natives of which island were equally ready with those of the former place to maintain a friendly intercourse with the English. Like the people of Middleburg, they brought nothing with them but cloth, matting, and such other articles as could be of little service; and for these our seamen were so simple as to barter away their clothes. To put a stop, therefore, to so injurious a traffic, and to obtain the necessary refreshments, the captain gave orders that no sort of curiosities should be purchased by any person whatever. This injunction produced the desired effect. When the inhabitants saw that the English would deal with them for nothing but eatables, they brought off bananas and cocoa-nuts in abundance, together with some fowls and pigs, all of which they exchanged for small nails and pieces of cloth. Even a few old rags were sufficient for the purchase of a pig or fowl.

The method of carrying on trade being settled, and proper officers having been appointed to prevent disputes, our commander's next object was to obtain as complete a knowledge as possible of the island of Amsterdam. In this he was much facilitated by a friendship which he formed with Attago, one of the chiefs of the country. Captain Cook was struck with admiration when he surveyed the beauty and cultivation of the island. He thought himself transported into the most fertile plains of Europe. There was not an inch of waste ground. The roads occupied no larger space than was absolutely necessary and the fences did not take up above four inches

each. Even such a small portion of ground was not wholly lost : for many of the fences themselves contained useful trees or plants. The scene was every where the same : and nature, assisted by a little art, no where assumes a more splendid appearance than in this island.

Friendly as were the natives of Amsterdam, they were not entirely free from the thievish disposition which had so often been remarked in the islanders of the Southern Ocean. The instances, however, of this kind which occurred, were not of such a nature as to produce any extraordinary degree of trouble, or to involve our people in a quarrel with the inhabitants.

Captain Cook's introduction to the king of the island afforded a scene somewhat remarkable. His majesty was seated with so much sullen and stupid gravity, that the captain took him for an idiot, whom the Indians, for some superstitious reasons, were ready to worship. When our commander saluted and spoke to him, he neither answered, nor took the least notice of him : nor did he alter a single feature of his countenance. Even the presents which were made to him could not induce him to resign a bit of his gravity, or to speak one word, or to turn his head either to the right hand or to the left. As he was in the prime of life, it is possible that a false sense of dignity might engage him to assume so solemn a stupidity of appearance. In the history of mankind, instances might probably be found which would confirm this supposition.

It is observable that the two islands of Middleburg and Amsterdam are guarded from the sea by a reef of coral rocks which extend out from the shore about one hundred fathoms. On this reef the force of the sea is spent before it reaches the land. The same, indeed, is in a great measure the situation of all the tropical isles which our commander had seen in that part of the globe ; and hence arises an evi-

dence of the wisdom and goodness of Providence, as by such a provision, nature has effectually secured them from the encroachments of the sea, though many of them are mere points when compared with the vast ocean by which they are surrounded.

In Amsterdam Mr. Forster not only found the same plants that are at Otaheite, and the neighbouring islands, but several others which are not to be met with in those places. Captain Cook took care, by a proper assortment of garden-seeds and pulse, to increase the vegetable stock of the inhabitants.

Hogs and fowls were the only domestic animals that were seen in these islands. The former are of the same sort with those which had been met with in other parts of the Southern Ocean; but the latter are far superior, being as large as any in Europe, and equal, if not preferable, with respect to the goodness of their flesh.

Both men and women are of a common size with Europeans. Their colour is that of a lightish copper, and with a greater uniformity than occurs among the natives of Otaheite and the Society Isles. Some of the English gentlemen were of opinion that the inhabitants of Middleburg and Amsterdam were a much handsomer race: while others, with whom Captain Cook concurred, maintained a contrary sentiment. However this may be, their shape is good, their features regular, and they are active, brisk, and lively. The women, in particular, are the merriest creatures our commander had ever met with; and, provided any person seemed pleased with them, they would keep chattering by his side without the least invitation, or considering whether they were understood. They appeared in general to be modest, though there were several amongst them of a different character. As there were yet on board some complaints of a certain disorder, the captain took all possible care to prevent its communication. Our navigators were frequently entertained by the women with songs, and

this  
able.  
ping  
well  
degr  
A  
islan  
to h  
this  
the  
life.  
the  
A  
Mid  
duri  
Eng  
the  
whi  
The  
occe  
of E  
O  
his  
Que  
pur  
was  
east  
the  
cov  
C  
at  
Cap  
lea  
and  
fut  
thi  
con  
an  
Th

this in a manner which was by no means disagreeable. They had a method of keeping time by snapping their fingers. Their music was harmonious as well as their voices, and there was a considerable degree of compass in their notes.

A singular custom was found to prevail in these islands; the greater part of the people were observed to have lost one or both of their little fingers; and this was not peculiar to rank, age, or sex; nor was the amputation restricted to any specific period of life. Our navigators endeavoured in vain to discover the reason of so extraordinary a practice.

A very extensive knowledge of the language of Middleburg and Amsterdam could not be obtained during the short stay which was made there by the English. However, the more they inquired into it, the more they found that it was in general the same which is spoken at Otaheite and the Society Isles. The difference is not greater than what frequently occurs between the most northern and western parts of England.

On the 7th of October, Captain Cook proceeded on his voyage. His intention was to set sail directly to Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, for the purpose of taking in wood and water, after which he was to pursue his discoveries to the south and the east. The day after he quitted Amsterdam, he passed the island of Pilstart—an island which had been discovered by Tasman.

On the 21st he made the island of New Zealand, at the distance of eight or ten leagues from Table Cape. As our commander was very desirous of leaving in the country such an assortment of animals and vegetables as might greatly contribute to the future benefit of the inhabitants, one of the first things which he did was to give to a chief, who had come off in a canoe, two boars, two sows, four hens, and two cocks, together with a quantity of seeds. The seeds were of the most useful kind; such as

wheat, French and kidney beans, peas, cabbage, turnips, onions, carrots, parsnips, and yams. The man to whom these several articles were presented, though he was much more enraptured with a spike-nail half the length of his arm, promised, however, to take care of them, and in particular, not to kill any of the animals. If he adhered to his promise, they would be sufficient in due course of time, to stock the whole island.

It was the 3rd of November, before Captain Cook brought the Resolution into Ship Cove in Queen Charlotte's Sound. He had been beating about the island from the 21st of October, during which time his vessel was exposed to a variety of tempestuous weather. In one instance he had been driven off the land by a furious storm which lasted two days, and which would have been dangerous in the highest degree, had it not fortunately happened that it was fair overhead, and that there was no reason to be apprehensive of a lee-shore. In the course of the bad weather which succeeded this storm, the Adventure was separated from the Resolution, and was never seen or heard of during the remainder of the voyage.

The first object of our commander's attention, after his arrival in Queen Charlotte's Sound, was to provide for the repair of his ship, which had suffered in various respects, and especially in her sails and rigging. Another matter which called for his notice was the state of the bread belonging to the vessel, and he had the mortification of finding that a large quantity of it was damaged. To repair this loss in the best manner he was able, he ordered all the casks to be opened, the bread to be picked, and such parcels of it to be baked in the copper oven, as could by that means be recovered. Notwithstanding this care four thousand two hundred and ninety-two pounds were found totally unfit for use; and about three thousand pounds more could only be eaten by people, in the situation of our navigators.

Ca  
the a  
form  
the  
in C  
very  
man  
sepa  
goat  
dest  
biab  
that  
coun  
trat  
serv  
Eve  
bita  
perf  
a flo  
N  
New  
zea  
at t  
and  
Soc  
he  
the  
boa  
we  
mu  
or  
con  
and  
Th  
wh  
lea  
po  
his  
ran

Captain Cook was early in his inquiries concerning the animals which had been left at New Zealand in the former part of his voyage. He saw the youngest of the two sows that Capt. Furneaux had put on shore in Cannibal Cove. She was in good condition, and very tame. The boar and other sow, if our commander was rightly informed, were taken away and separated, but not killed. He was told that the two goats which he had landed up the Sound, had been destroyed by a rascally native of the name of Goubiah; so that the captain had the grief of discovering that all his benevolent endeavours to stock the country with useful animals were likely to be frustrated by the very people whom he was anxious to serve. The gardens had met with a better fate. Every thing in them, excepting potatoes, the inhabitants had left entirely to nature, who had so well performed her part, that most of the articles were in a flourishing condition.

Notwithstanding the inattention and folly of the New Zealanders, Captain Cook still continued his zeal for their benefit. To the inhabitants who resided at the Cove, he gave a boar, a young sow, two cocks and two hens, which had been brought from the Society Islands. At the bottom of the West bay, he ordered to be landed, without the knowledge of the Indians, four hogs, being three sows and one boar, together with two cocks and two hens. They were carried a little way into the woods, and as much food was left them as would serve them for ten or twelve days. This was done to prevent their coming down to the shore in search for sustenance, and by that means being discovered by the natives. The captain was desirous of replacing the two goats which Goubiah was understood to have killed, by leaving behind him the only two that remained in his possession. But he had the misfortune, soon after his arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound, to lose the ram, and this in a manner for which it was not easy

to assign the cause. Whether it was owing to any thing he had eaten, or to his being stung with nettles, which were very plentiful in the place, he was seized with fits that bordered on madness. In one of these fits he was supposed to have run into the sea, and to have been drowned, and thus every method which our commander had taken to stock the country with sheep and goats proved ineffectual. He hoped to be more successful with respect to the boars and sows, and the cocks and hens, which he left in the island.

One day, while the boatswain and a party of men were employed cutting broom, some of them stole several things from a private hut of the natives, in which were deposited most of the treasures they had received from the English, as well as property of their own. Complaint being made by the Indians to Capt. Cook, and a particular man of the boatswain's party having been pointed out to the captain as the person who had committed the theft, he ordered him to be punished in their presence. With this they went away seemingly satisfied, although they did not recover any of the articles which they had lost. It was always a maxim with our commander to punish the least crimes which any of his people were guilty of with regard to uncivilized nations. Their robbing us with impunity, he by no means considered as a reason for our treating them in the same manner. Addicted as the New Zealanders were, in a certain degree, to stealing, a disposition which must have been very much increased by the novelty and allurements of the objects presented to view, they had nevertheless, when injured themselves, such a sense of justice as to apply to Captain Cook for redress. The best method, in his opinion, of preserving a good understanding with the inhabitants of countries in this state of society, is first to convince them of the superiority we have over them in consequence of our fire-arms, and then to be always on our guard. Such a conduct, united with strict honesty and gentle

treatment, will convince them that it is their interest not to disturb us, and prevent them from forming any general plan of attack.

In this second visit of our navigators to New Zealand, they met with indubitable evidence that the natives were eaters of human flesh. The proof of this fact had a most powerful influence on the mind of Oedidee, a youth of Bolabola, whom Captain Cook had brought in the Resolution from Ulietea. He was so affected, that he became perfectly motionless, and exhibited such a picture of horror, that it would have been impossible for art to describe that passion with half the force with which it appeared in his countenance. When he was roused from this state by some of the English, he burst into tears; continued to weep and scold by turns; told the New Zealanders that they were vile men, and assured them that he would not be any longer their friend. He would not so much as permit them to come near him; and he refused to accept, or even to touch, the knife by which some human flesh had been cut off. Such was Oedidee's indignation against the abominable custom; and our commander has justly remarked, that it was indignation worthy to be imitated by every rational being. The conduct of this young man, upon the present occasion, strongly points out the difference which had taken place in the progress of civilization between the inhabitants of the Society Islands and those of New Zealand. It was our commander's firm opinion that the only human flesh which was eaten by these people was that of their enemies who had been slain in battle.

During the stay of our voyagers in Queen Charlotte's Sound, they were plentifully supplied with fish, procured from the natives at a very easy rate; and besides the vegetables afforded by their own gardens, they every where found plenty of scurvy-grass and celery. These Captain Cook ordered to be dressed every day for all his hands. By the attention which

he paid to his men in the article of provisions, they had for three months lived principally on a fresh diet, and at this time there was not a sick or scorbutic person on board.

The morning before the captain sailed, he wrote a memorandum, containing such information as he thought necessary for Captain Furneaux, in case he should put into the Sound. This memorandum was buried in a bottle under the root of a tree in the garden, and in such a manner that it could not avoid being discovered, if either Captain Furneaux, or any other European, should chance to arrive at the Cove.

Our commander did not leave New Zealand without making such remarks on the coast between Cape Teerawhitte, and Cape Palliser, as may be of service to future navigators. It being now the unanimous opinion that the Adventure was no where upon the island, Captain Cook gave up all expectations of seeing her any more during the voyage. This circumstance, however, did not discourage him from fully exploring the Southern parts of the Pacific Ocean, in the doing of which he intended to employ the whole of the ensuing season. When he quitted the coast, he had the satisfaction to find that not a man of the crew was dejected, or thought that the dangers they had to go through were in the least augmented by their being alone. Such was the confidence they placed in their commander, that they were as ready to proceed cheerfully to the south, or wherever he might lead them, as if the Adventure, or even a larger number of ships, had been in company.

On the 26th of November, Captain Cook sailed from New Zealand, in search of a continent, and steered to the south, inclining to the east. Some days after this, our navigators reckoned themselves to be antipodes to their friends in London, and consequently were at as great a distance from them as possible. The first ice island was seen on the 12th

of December, further south than the first ice which had been met with after leaving the Cape of Good Hope in the preceding year. In the progress of the voyage ice islands continually occurred, and the navigation became more and more difficult and dangerous. When our people were in the latitude of 67 deg. 5 min. south, they all at once got within such a cluster of these islands, together with a large quantity of loose pieces, that to keep clear of them was a matter of the utmost difficulty. On the 22d of the month, the Resolution was in the highest latitude she had yet reached : and circumstances now became so unfavourable that our commander thought of returning more to the north. Here there was no probability of finding any land, or a possibility of getting further south. To have proceeded, therefore, to the east in this latitude, must have been improper, not only on account of the ice, but because a vast space of sea to the north must have been left unexplored, in which there might lie a large tract of country. It was only by visiting those parts that it could be determined whether such a supposition was well founded. As our navigators advanced to the north-east on the 24th, the ice islands increased so fast upon them, that at noon they could see nearly a hundred around them, besides an immense number of small pieces. In this situation they spent Christmas day, much in the same manner as they had done in the former year. Happily our people had continual day light and clear weather ; for had it been so foggy as it was on some preceding days, nothing less than a miracle could have saved them from being dashed to pieces.

While the Resolution was in the high latitudes, many of her company were attacked with a slight fever, occasioned by colds. The disorder, however yielded to the simplest remedies, and was generally removed in a few days. On the 5th of January, 1774, the ship not being then in much more than fifty deg. of latitude, there were only one or two persons sick.

After Captain Cook, agreeably to his late resolution, had traversed a large extent of ocean without discovering land, he again directed his course to the southward. By the 30th of the month, through obstructions and difficulties, which, from their similar nature to those already mentioned, it would be tedious to repeat, he reached to the seventy-first degree of latitude. Thus far had he gone: but to have proceeded further would have been the height of folly and madness. It would have been exposing himself, his men, and his ship, to the utmost danger, and perhaps to destruction, without the least prospect of advantage. The captain was of opinion, as indeed were most of the gentlemen on board, that the ice now in sight extended quite to the pole, or might join to some land, to which it might be fixed from the earliest time. If, however, there be such land, it can afford no better retreat for birds, or any other animals, than the ice itself, with which it must be wholly covered. Though our commander had not only the ambition of going further than any one had done before, but of proceeding as far as it was possible for man to go, he was the less dissatisfied with the interruption he now met with, as it shortened the dangers and hardships inseparable from the navigation of the southern polar regions. In fact, he was impelled by inevitable necessity to tack and stand back to the north.

The determination which Capt. Cook now formed was to spend the ensuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no employment before he came there. He was well satisfied that no continent was to be found in this ocean, but what must lie so far to the south as to be wholly inaccessible on account of ice. If there existed a continent in the Southern Atlantic Ocean, he was sensible that he could not explore it, without having the whole summer before him. Upon a supposition, on the other hand, that there is no land there, he might undoubtedly have reached the Cape

of Good Hope by April. In that case, he would have put an end to the finding of a continent, which was indeed the first object of the voyage. But this could not satisfy the extensive and magnanimous mind of our commander. He had a good ship, expressly sent out on discoveries, a healthy crew, and was not in want either of stores or provisions. In such circumstances, to have quitted this Southern Pacific Ocean would, he thought, have been betraying not only a want of perseverance, but of judgment in supposing it to have been so well explored, that nothing further could be done. Although he had proved that there was no continent but what must lie far to the south, there remained, nevertheless, room for very large islands in places wholly unexamined. Many, likewise, of those which had formerly been discovered, had been but imperfectly explored, and their situations were as imperfectly known. He was also persuaded that his continuing some time longer in this sea would be productive of improvements in navigation and geography, as well as in other sciences.

In consequence of these views, it was Capt. Cook's intention first to go in search of the land said to have been discovered by Juan Fernandez in the last century. If he should fail in finding this land, he proposed to direct his course in quest of Easter Island or Davis's Land, the situation of which was known with so little certainty, that none of the attempts lately made for its discovery had been successful. He next intended to get within the tropic, and then to proceed to the west, touching at, and settling the situations of such islands, as he might meet with till he arrived at Otaheite, where it was necessary for him to stop to look for the Adventure. It was also in his contemplation to run as far west as the Tierra Anstra del Espiritu Santo, which was discovered by Quiros, and to which M. de Bougainville has given the name of the Great Cyclades. From this land it was the captain's plan to steer to the south, and so

back to the east, between the latitudes of fifty and sixty. In the execution of this plan, it was his purpose, if possible, to attain the length of Cape Horn in the ensuing November, when he should have the best part of the summer before him to explore the southern part of the Atlantic Ocean. Great as was this design, our commander thought it capable of being carried into execution; and when he communicated it to his officers, he had the satisfaction of finding that it received their zealous and cheerful concurrence. They displayed the utmost readiness for executing in the most effectual manner, every measure he thought proper to adopt. With such good examples to direct them, the seamen were always obedient and alert: and on the present occasion, so far were they from wishing the voyage to be concluded, that they rejoiced at the prospect of its being prolonged another year, and of soon enjoying the benefits of a milder climate.

In pursuing his course to the north, Capt. Cook became well assured that the discovery of Juan Fernandez, if any such were ever made, could be nothing more than a small island. At this time the captain was attacked by a bilious cholic, the violence of which confined him to his bed. The management of the ship upon this occasion was left to Mr. Cooper, the first officer, who conducted her entirely to his commander's satisfaction. It was several days before the most dangerous symptoms of Capt. Cook's disorder were removed; during which time Mr. Patten, the surgeon, in attending upon him, manifested not only the skilfulness of a physician, but the tenderness of a nurse. When the captain began to recover, a favourite dog belonging to Mr. Forster, fell a sacrifice to his tender stomach. There was no other fresh meat, whatever, on board, and he could eat not only of the broth which was made of it, but of the flesh itself, when there was nothing else he was capable of tasting. Thus did he derive nourishment and

strength from food which, to most people in Europe would have been in the highest degree disgusting, and productive of sickness. The necessity of the case overcame every feeling of dislike.

On the 11th of March, our navigators came within sight of Easter Island, or Davis's Land; their transactions at which place were of too little moment to deserve a particular recital. The inhabitants are in general, a slender race. In colour, features, and language, they bear such an affinity to the people of the more Western Isles, that there can be no doubt of their having been descended from one common original. It is indeed extraordinary that the same nation should have spread themselves to so wide an extent, as to take in almost a fourth part of the circumference of the globe. With regard to the disposition of the natives of Easter Island, it is friendly and hospitable, but they are as much addicted to stealing as any of their neighbours. The island itself has so little to recommend it, that no nation need to contend for the honour of its discovery. So sparing has Nature been of her favours to this spot, that there is in it no safe anchorage, no wood for fuel, no fresh water worth taking on board. The most remarkable objects in the country are some surprising gigantic statues, which were first seen by Roggwein.

It was with pleasure that our commander quitted a place which could afford such slender accommodations to voyagers, and directed his course for the Marquesas Islands. He had not been long at sea before he was again attacked by his bilious disorder. The attack, however, was not so violent as the former one had been. He had reason to believe that the return of his disease was owing to his having exposed and fatigued himself too much at Easter Island.

On the 6th and 7th of April, our navigators came within sight of four Islands, which they knew to be the Marquesas. To one of them, which was a new discovery, Captain Cook gave the name of Hood's

Island, after that of the young gentleman by whom it was first seen. As soon as the ship was brought to an anchor in Madre de Dios, or Resolution Bay in the island of St. Christina, a traffic commenced, in the course of which the natives would frequently keep our goods without making any return. At last the captain was obliged to fire a musket-ball over one man who had several times treated the English in this manner. This produced only a temporary effect. Too many of the Indians having come on board, our commander, who, was going in a boat to find a convenient place for mooring the ship, said to the officers, "You must look well after these people, or they will certainly carry off some thing or other." Scarcely had he got into the boat, when he was informed that one had stolen an iron stanchion from the opposite gangway, and was carrying it off. Upon this he ordered his men to fire over the canoc, till he could get round in the boat, but not to kill any one. Such, however, was the noise made by the natives, that the order was not heard, and the unhappy thief was killed at the first shot. All the Indians having retired with precipitation in consequence of this unhappy accident, Captain Cook followed them into the bay, prevailed upon some of them to come alongside his boat, and, by suitable presents, so far conciliated their minds, that their fears seemed to be in a great measure allayed. The death of their countryman did not cure them of their thievish disposition; but at length it was somewhat restrained by their conviction that no distance secured them from the reach of our muskets. Several smaller instances of their talent of stealing, the captain thought proper to overlook.

The provisions obtained at St. Christina, were yams, plantains, bread-fruit, a few cocoa-nuts, fowls, and small pigs. For a time, the trade was carried on upon reasonable terms; but the market was at last ruined by the indiscretion of some young gen-

whom brought on Bay nced, in quently At last all over English nporary come on boat to said to people, other." was in- From Upon , till he ny one. natives, py thief having his un- into the ongside ciliated a great man did but at convic- each of f their oper to a, were , fowls, carried was at ng gen-

tlemen, who gave away in exchange various articles which the inhabitants had not seen before, and which captivated their fancy above nails, or more useful iron tools. One of the gentlemen had given for a pig a very large quantity of red feathers, which he had got at Amsterdam. The effect of this was particularly fatal. It was not possible to support the trade, in the manner in which it was now begun, even for a single day. When, therefore, our commander found that he was not likely to be supplied, on any conditions, with sufficient refreshments, and that the island was neither very convenient for taking in wood and water, nor for affording the necessary repairs of the ship, he determined to proceed immediately to some other place, where the wants of his people could be effectually relieved. After having been nineteen weeks at sea, and having lived all that time upon salt diet, a change in their food could not avoid being peculiarly desirable; and yet, on their arrival at St. Christina, it could scarcely be asserted that a single man was sick; and there were but a few who had the least complaint of any kind. "This," says Captain Cook, "was undoubtedly owing to the many anti-scorbutic articles we had on board, and to the great attention of the surgeon, who was remarkably careful to apply them in time." It may justly be added, that this was likewise owing to the singular care of the captain himself, and to the exertions of his authority in enforcing the excellent regulations which his wisdom and humanity had adopted.

The chief reason for our commander's touching at the Marquesas Islands was to fix their situation, that being the only circumstance in which the nautical account of them given in Mr. Dalrymple's collection is deficient. It was further desirable to settle this point, as it would lead to a more accurate knowledge of Mendana's other discoveries. Accordingly, Capt. Cook has marked the situation of the Marquesas

with his usual correctness. He has also taken care to describe the particular cove in Resolution Bay in the island of St. Christina, which is most convenient for obtaining wood and water.

It is remarkable, with respect to the inhabitants of the Marquesas Islands, that, collectively taken, they are, without exception, the finest race of people in this sea. Perhaps they surpass all other nations in symmetry of form, and regularity of features. It is plain, however, from the affinity of their language to that of Otaheite and the Society Isles, that they are of the same origin. Of this affinity the English were fully sensible, though they could not converse with them; but Oedidee was capable of doing it tolerably well.

From the Marquesas Captain Cook steered for Otaheite with a view of falling in with some of the islands discovered by former navigators, and especially by the Dutch, the situation of which had not been accurately determined. In the course of the voyage, he passed a number of low islets, connected together by reefs of coral rocks. One of the islands on which Lieutenant Cooper went ashore with two boats well armed, was called by the natives Tiookea. It had been discovered and visited by Capt. Byron. The inhabitants of Tiookea are of a much darker colour than those of the higher island, and appeared to be more fierce in their dispositions. This may be owing to their manner of gaining their subsistence, which is chiefly from the sea, and to their being much exposed to the sun and the weather. Our voyagers observed that they were stout well-made men, and that they had marked on their bodies the figure of a fish, which was a good emblem of their profession.

Besides passing by St. George's Islands, which had been so named by Capt. Byron, our commander made the discovery of four others. These he called Palliser's Isles, in honour of his particular friend Sir Hugh Palliser. The inhabitants seemed to be the

same sort of people as those of Tiookea, and, like them, were armed with long pikes. Captain Cook could not determine, with any degree of certainty, whether the group of isles he had lately seen were, or were not, any of those that had been discovered by the Dutch navigators. This was owing to the neglect of recording, with sufficient accuracy, the situation of their discoveries. Our commander has, in general observed, with regard to this part of the ocean, that from the latitude of twenty down to fourteen or twelve, and from the meridian of an hundred and thirty-eight to an hundred and forty-eight or an hundred and fifty west, it is so strewed with low isles, that a navigator cannot proceed with too much caution.

On the 22d of April, Captain Cook reached the island of Otaheite, and anchored in Matavia Bay. As his chief reason for putting in at this place was to give Mr. Wales an opportunity of ascertaining the error of the watch by the known longitude, and to determine anew her rate of going, the first object was to land the instruments, and to erect tents for the reception of a guard, and such other people as was necessary to have on shore. Sick there were none; for the refreshments which had been obtained at the Marquesas had removed every complaint of that kind.

From the quantity of provisions which, contrary to expectation, our commander now found at Otaheite, he determined to make a longer stay in the island than he had at first intended. Accordingly he took measures for the repairs of the ship, which the high southern latitudes had rendered indispensably necessary.

During Captain Cook's stay at Otaheite, he maintained a most friendly connexion with the inhabitants, and a continual interchange of visits was preserved between him and Otoo, Towha, and other chiefs of the country. His traffic with them was greatly

facilitated by his having fortunately brought with him some red parrot feathers from the island of Amsterdam. These were jewels of high value in the estimation of the Otaheitans. The captain's stock in trade was by this time greatly exhausted: so that if it had not been for the feathers, he would have found it difficult to have supplied the ship with the necessary refreshments.

Among other entertainments which our commander and the rest of the English gentlemen met with at Otaheite, one was a grand naval review. The vessels of war consisted of an hundred and sixty large double canoes, well equipped, manned, and armed. They were decorated with flags and streamers; and the chiefs, together with all those who were on the fighting stages, were dressed in their war habits. The whole fleet made a noble appearance, such as our voyagers had never seen before in this sea, or could ever have expected. Besides the vessels of war, there were an hundred and seventy sail of smaller double canoes, which seemed to be designed for transports and victuallers. Upon each of them was a little house, and they were rigged with mast and sail, which was not the case with the war canoes. Captain Cook guessed that there were no less than seven thousand seven hundred and sixty men in the whole fleet. He was not able to obtain full information concerning the design of this armament.

Notwithstanding the agreeable intercourse that was in general maintained between our commander and the people of Otaheite, circumstances occasionally happened which called for peculiar exertions of his prudence and resolution. One of the natives, who had attempted to steal a water-cask from the watering-place, was caught in the act, sent on board, and put in irons. In this situation he was seen by King Otoo and other chiefs. Captain Cook having made known to them the crime of their countryman, Otoo

entreated that he might be set at liberty. This the captain however refused, alleging that since he punished his own people when they committed the least offence against Otoo's, it was but just that this man should also be punished. As Captain Cook knew that Otoo would not punish him, he resolved to do it himself. Accordingly he directed the criminal to be carried on shore to the tents, and having himself followed with the chief and other Otaheitans, he ordered the guard out under arms, and commanded the man to be tied up to a post. Otoo again solicited the culprit's release, and in this he was seconded by his sister, but in vain. The captain expostulated with him on the conduct of the man, and of the Indians in general, telling him that neither he, nor any of the ship's company, took the smallest matter of property from them without first paying for it; enumerating the articles which the English had given in exchange for such and such things, and urging that it was wrong in them to steal from those who were their friends. He added, that the punishing of the guilty person would be the means of saving the lives of several of Otoo's people, by deterring them from committing crimes of the like nature, and thus preventing them from the danger of being shot to death, which would certainly happen at one time or other, if they persisted in their robberies. With these arguments the king appeared to be satisfied, and only desired that the man might not be killed. Captain Cook then directed that the crowd, which was very great, should be kept at a proper distance, and, in the presence of them all, ordered the fellow two dozen of lashes, with the cat-o'-nine-tails. This punishment the man sustained with great firmness; after which he was set at liberty. When the natives were going away, Towha called them back, and with much gracefulness of action, addressed them in a speech of nearly half an hour in length, the design of which was to condemn their present conduct, and

to recommend a different one for the future. To make a further impression upon the minds of the inhabitants, our commander ordered his marines to go through their exercises, and to load and fire in volleys with ball. As they were very quick in their manœuvres, it is more easy to conceive than to describe the amazement which possessed the Indians during the whole time, and especially those of them who had not seen any thing of the kind before.

The judicious will discern, with regard to this narrative, that it throws peculiar light on Capt. Cook's character. Nor is it an incurious circumstance, in the history of human society, that a stranger should thus exercise jurisdiction over the natives of a country, in the presence of the prince of that country, without his authority, and even contrary to his solicitations.

Another disagreeable altercation with the inhabitants of Otaheite arose from the negligence of one of the English sentinels on shore. Having slept on or quitted his post, an Indian seized the opportunity of carrying off his musket. When an extraordinary theft was committed, it immediately excited such an alarm among the natives in general, from their fear of Capt. Cook's resentment, that they fled from their habitations, and a stop was put to the traffic for provisions. On the present occasion, the captain had no small degree of trouble; but, by his prudent conduct, the musket was recovered, peace restored, and commerce again opened. In the differences which happened with the several people he met with in his voyages it was a rule with him never to touch the least article of their property, any further than to detain their canoes awhile when it became absolutely necessary. He always chose the most mild and equitable methods of bringing them to reason; and in this he not only succeeded, but frequently put things upon a better footing than if no contention had taken place.

During this visit to Otaheite, fruit and other re-

freshments were obtained in great plenty. The relief arising from them was the more agreeable and salutary, as the bread of the ship was in a bad condition. Though the biscuit had been aired and picked at New Zealand, it was now in such a state of decay, that it was necessary for it to undergo another airing and cleaning, in which much of it was found wholly rotten, and unfit to be eaten. This decay was judged to be owing to the ice our navigators had frequently taken in when to the southward, which made the hold of the vessel cold and damp, and to the great heat that succeeded when they came to the north. Whatever was the cause, the loss was so considerable, that the men were put on scanty allowance of this article, with the additional mortification of the bread being bad that could be used.

Two goats that had been given by Capt. Furneaux to Otoo in the former part of the voyage, seemed to promise fair for answering the purpose for which they were left upon the island. The ewe soon after had two female kids, which were now so far grown as to be almost ready to propagate. At the same time the old ewe was again with kid. The people were very fond of them, and they were in excellent condition. From these circumstances, Capt. Cook entertained a hope that in a course of years they would multiply so much, as to be extended over all the isles of the Southern Ocean. The like success did not attend the sheep which had been left in the country. These speedily died, one excepted. Our navigators also furnished the natives with cats, having given away no less than twenty at Otaheite, besides some which had been made presents of at Ulietea and Huaheine.

With regard to the number of the inhabitants of Otaheite, our commander collected, from comparing several facts together, that, including women and children, there could not be less in the whole island than two hundred and four thousand. This number,

at first sight, exceeded his belief; but when he came to reflect on the vast swarms of people that appeared wherever he went, he was convinced that the estimate was agreeable to truth.

Such was the friendly treatment which our voyagers met with at Otaheite, that one of the gunner's mates was induced to form a plan for remaining in the country. As he knew that he could not execute his scheme with success while the Resolution continued in Matavia Bay, he took the opportunity, when she was ready to quit it, and the sails were set for that purpose, to slip overboard. Being a good swimmer, he had no doubt of getting safe to a canoe which was at some distance ready to receive him; for his design was concerted with the natives, and had even been encouraged by Otoo. However, he was discovered before he had got clear of the ship; and a boat being presently hoisted out, he was taken up and brought back to the vessel. When our commander reflected on this man's situation, he did not think him very culpable, or his desire of staying on the island so extraordinary as might at first view be imagined. He was a native of Ireland, and had sailed in the Dutch service. Captain Cook, on his return from his former voyage, had picked him up at Batavia, and had kept him in his employment ever since. It did not appear that he had either friends or connexions who could bind him to any particular part of the world. All nations being alike to him, where could he be more happy than at Otaheite? Here, in one of the finest climates of the globe, he could not only enjoy the necessaries, but the luxuries of life, with ease and plenty. The captain seems to think, that if the man had applied to him in time, he might have given his consent to his remaining in this country.

On the 15th of May, Captain Cook anchored in O' Wharree Harbour, in the island of Huaheine. He was immediately visited by his friend Oree, and the

same agreeable intercourse subsisted between the captain and this good old chief which had formerly taken place. Red feathers were not here in such estimation as they had been at Otaheite, the natives of Huahaine having the good sense to give a preference to the more useful articles of nails and axes. During the stay of our voyagers in this island, some alarms were occasioned by the thievish disposition of several of the inhabitants; but matters subsided without any material consequences. A solemn march which our commander made through part of the country, at the head of forty-eight men, tended to impress the Indians with a sense of his power and authority. In fact, their attempts at stealing had been too much invited by the indiscretion of some of the English, who unguardedly separated themselves in the woods for the purpose of killing birds, and who managed their muskets so unskillfully, as to render them less formidable in the eyes of the natives.

I cannot persuade myself to omit a dramatic entertainment at which several of the gentlemen belonging to the Resolution attended one evening. The piece represented a girl as running away with our navigators from Otaheite; and the story was partly founded in truth; for a young woman had taken a passage in the ship down to Ulietea. She happened to be present at the representation of her own adventures, which had such an effect upon her, that it was with great difficulty she could be prevailed upon by the English gentlemen to see the play out, or to refrain from tears while it was acting. The piece concluded with the reception which she was supposed to meet with from her friends at her return, and it was a reception that was by no means favourable. As these people, when they see occasion, can add little extempore pieces to their entertainments, it is reasonable to imagine that the representation now described was intended as a satire against the girl, and to discourage others from following her steps.

Such is the sense which they entertain of the propriety of female decorum.

During Captain Cook's stay at Huaheine, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and other vegetable productions, were procured in abundance, but not a sufficiency of hogs to supply the daily expense of the ship. This was partly owing to a want of proper articles for traffic. The captain was obliged, therefore, to set the smiths at work, to make different sorts of nails, iron tools, and instruments, in order to enable him to obtain refreshments at the islands he was yet to visit, and to support his credit and influence among the natives.

When our commander was ready to sail from Huaheine, Oree was the last man that went out of the vessel. At parting, Captain Cook told him that they should meet each other no more; at which he wept, and said, "Let your sons come; we will treat them well."

At Ulietea, to which the captain next directed his course, the events that occurred were nearly similar to those which have already been related. He had always been received by the people of this island in the most hospitable manner, and they were justly entitled to every thing which it was in his power to grant. They expressed the deepest concern at his departure, and were continually importuning him to return. Oreo, the chief, and his wife and daughter, but especially the two latter, scarcely ever ceased weeping. Their grief was so excessive, that it might perhaps be doubted whether it was entirely sincere and unaffected; but our commander was of opinion that it was real. At length, when he was ready to sail, they took a most affectionate leave. Oreo's last request to Captain Cook was that he would return; and when he could not obtain a promise to that effect, he asked the name of his burying-place. To this strange question the captain answered without hesitation, that it was Stepney, that being the

parish in which he lived when in London. Mr. Forster, to whom the same question was proposed, replied, with greater wisdom and recollection, that no man who used the sea could say where he should be buried.

As our commander could not promise, or even then suppose, that more English ships would be sent to the Southern Isles, Oedidee, who for so many months had been the faithful companion of our navigators, chose to remain in his native country; but he left them with a regret fully demonstrative of his esteem and affection, nor could any thing have torn him from them but the fear of never returning. When Oreo pressed so ardently Capt. Cook's return, he sometimes gave such answers as left room for hope. At these answers Oedidee would eagerly catch, take him on one side, and ask him over again. The captain declares that he had not words to describe the anguish which appeared in this young man's breast, when he went away. He looked up at the ship, burst into tears, and then sunk down into the canoe. Oedidee was a youth of good parts, and of a docile, gentle, and humane disposition; but as he was almost wholly ignorant of the religion, government, manners, customs, and traditions of his countrymen, and the neighbouring islands, no material knowledge could have been collected from him, had our commander brought him away. He would, however, in every respect, have been a better specimen of the nation than Omai.

When Captain Cook first came to these islands, he had some thoughts of visiting Tupin's famous Bolabola; but having obtained a plentiful supply of refreshments, and the route he had in view allowing him no time to spare, he laid this design aside, and directed his course to the west. Thus did he take his leave, as he then thought, for ever, of these happy isles, on which Nature has spread her luxuriant sweets with a lavish hand, and in which the natives, copying

the bounty of Providence, are equally liberal, being ready to contribute plentifully and cheerfully to the wants of the navigators.

On the 6th of June, the day after our voyagers left Ulitea, they saw land, which they found to be a low reef island, about four leagues in compass, and of a circular form. This was Howe Island, which had been discovered by Captain Wallis. Nothing remarkable occurred from this day to the 16th, when land was again seen. It was another reef island; and being a new discovery, Captain Cook gave it the name of Palmerston Island, in honour of Lord Palmerston. On the 20th, fresh land appeared, which was perceived to be inhabited. This induced our commander to go on shore with a party of gentlemen; but the natives were found to be fierce and untractable. All endeavours to bring them to a parley were to no purpose; for they came on with the ferocity of wild boars, and instantly threw their darts. Two or three muskets, discharged in the air, did not prevent one of them from advancing still further and throwing another dart, or rather a spear, which passed close over Capt. Cook's shoulder. The courage of this man had nearly cost him his life. When he threw his spear, he was not five paces from the captain, who had resolved to shoot him for his own preservation. It happened, however, that his musket missed fire—a circumstance on which he afterwards reflected with pleasure. When he joined his party, and tried his musket in the air, it went off perfectly well. This island, from the disposition and behaviour of the natives, with whom no intercourse could be established, and from whom no benefit could be received, was called by our commander Savage Island. It is about eleven leagues in circuit, is of a round form and good height, and has deep water close to its shores. Among its other disadvantages, it is not furnished with a harbour.

In pursuing his course to the west-south-west.

Capt. Cook passed by a number of small islands, and, on the 26th. anchored on the north side of Anamocka, or Rotterdam. A traffic immediately commenced with the natives, who brought what provisions they had, being chiefly yams and shaddocks, which they exchanged for nails, beads, and other small articles. Here, as in many former cases, the captain was put to some trouble on account of the thievish disposition of the inhabitants. As they had got possession of an adze and two muskets, he found it necessary to exert himself with peculiar vigour in order to oblige them to make restitution. For this purpose, he commanded all the marines to be armed and sent on shore; and the result of this measure was, that the things which had been stolen were restored. In the contest, Captain Cook was under the necessity of firing some small shot at a native who had distinguished himself by his resistance. His countrymen afterwards reported that he was dead; but he was only wounded, and that not in a dangerous manner. Though his sufferings were the effects of his own misbehaviour, the captain endeavoured to soften them by making him a present, and directing his wounds to be dressed by a surgeon of the ship.

The first time that our commander landed at Anamocka, an old lady presented him with a girl, and gave him to understand that she was at his service. Miss, who had previously been instructed, wanted a spike-nail, or a shirt, neither of which he had to give her; and he flattered himself that, by making the two women sensible of his poverty, he should easily get clear of their importunities. In this, however, he was mistaken. The favours of the young lady were offered upon credit; and on his declining the proposal, the old woman began to argue with him, and then to abuse him. As far as he could collect from her countenance and her actions, the design of her speech was both to ridicule and reproach him for refusing to entertain so fine a young lady. Indeed,

the girl was by no means destitute of beauty ; but Captain Cook found it more easy to withstand her allurements than the abuse of the ancient matron, and therefore hastened into the boat.

While the captain was on shore at Anamocka, he got the names of twenty islands which lie between the north-west and north-east. Some of them were in sight ; and two of them, which are most to the west, are remarkable on account of their great height. These are Amattafoa and Oghao. From a continual column of smoke which was seen daily ascending from the middle of Amattafoa, it was judged that there was a volcano in that island.

Anamocka was first discovered by Tasman, and by him was named Rotterdam. It is of a triangular form, and each side extends about three and a half or four miles. From the north-west to the south of the island, round by the east and north, it is encompassed by a number of small isles, sand-banks, and breakers. An end could not be seen to their extent to the north, and they may possibly reach so far to the south as Amsterdam, or Tongataboo. Together with Middleburg, or Eaoowe, and Pilstart, these form a group, containing about three degrees of latitude, and two of longitude. To this group Captain Cook had given the name of the Friendly Isles, or Archipelago, from the firm alliance and friendship which seemed to subsist among their inhabitants, and from their courteous behaviour to strangers. The same group may perhaps be extended much further, even down to Boscawen and Keppel's Isles, which were discovered by Captain Wallis, and lie nearly in the same meridian.

Whilst our commander was at Anamocka, he was particularly assiduous to prevent the introduction of a certain disorder. As some of his people brought with them the remains of this disease from the Society Isles, he prohibited them from having any female intercourse.

The productions of Rotterdam, and the persons, manners, and customs of its inhabitants, are similar to those of Amsterdam. It is not, however, equally plentiful in its fruits, nor is every part of it in so high a state of cultivation. Neither has it risen to the same degree of wealth with regard to cloth, matting, ornaments, and other articles, which constitute the chief riches of the islanders of the Southern Ocean.

Pursuing their course to the west, our navigators discovered land on the 1st of July; and, upon a nearer approach, found it to be a small island, to which, on account of the number of turtles that were seen upon the coast, Captain Cook gave the name of Turtle Isle. On the 16th, high land was seen bearing south-west, which no one doubted to be the *Australis del Espirito Santo* of Quiros, and which is called by M. de Bougainville the Great Cyclades. After exploring the coast for some days, the captain came to an anchor in a harbour in the island of Mallicollo. One of his first objects was to commence a friendly intercourse with the natives; but while he was thus employed, an accident occurred which threw all into confusion, though in the end it was rather advantageous than hurtful to the English. A fellow in a canoe, having been refused admittance into one of our boats, bent his bow to shoot a poisoned arrow at the boat-keeper. Some of his countrymen having prevented his doing it that instant, time was given to acquaint our commander with the transaction, who ran immediately upon deck. At this minute the Indian had directed his bow to the boat-keeper; but upon being called to by Captain Cook, he pointed it at him. Happily the captain had a musket in his hand loaded with small shot, and gave him the contents. By this, however, he was only staggered for a moment, for he still held his bow in the attitude of shooting. A second discharge of the same nature made him drop it, and obliged him, together with the other natives, who were in the canoe, to paddle

off with all possible celerity. At this time, some of the inhabitants began to shoot arrows from another quarter. A musket discharged in the air had no effect upon them; but no sooner was a four-pound ball shot over their heads, than they fled in the utmost confusion.

A few hours after these transactions, the English put off in two boats, and landed in the face of four or five hundred people, who were assembled on the shore, and who, though they were all armed with bows and arrows, clubs and spears, made not the least opposition. On the contrary, when they saw Capt. Cook advance with nothing but a green branch in his hand, one of them, who appeared to be a chief, giving his bow and arrows to another, met the captain in the water bearing also a green branch. These being mutually exchanged in token of friendship, the chief led our commander to the crowd, to whom he immediately distributed presents. The marines in the meantime, were drawn up on the beach. Capt. Cook then acquainted the Indians, by signs, that he wanted wood; and in the same manner permission was granted him to cut down trees.

Much traffic could not be carried on with these people because they set no value on nails or iron tools, or indeed on any articles which our navigators could furnish. In such exchanges as they did make, and which were principally of arrows for pieces of cloth, they distinguished themselves by their honesty. When the ship had begun to sail from the island, and they might easily in consequence of their canoes dropping astern, have avoided delivering the things they had been paid for, they used their utmost efforts to get up with her, that they might discharge their obligations. One man, in particular, followed the Resolution a considerable time, and did not reach her till the object which brought him was forgotten. As soon as he came alongside the vessel, he held up the thing which had been purchased: and though

several of the crew offered to buy it, he insisted upon delivering it to the person to whom it had been sold. That person, not knowing him again, would have given something in return; but this he refused, and showed him what he had before received. There was only a single instance in which the natives took, or even attempted to take, any thing from our voyagers by any means whatever; and in that case restitution was immediately made without trouble, and without altercation.

The inhabitants of Mallicollo, in general, are the most ugly and ill-proportioned people that Captain Cook had ever seen, and are in every respect different from all the nations which had been met with in the Southern Ocean. They are a very dark coloured, and rather a diminutive race, with long heads, flat faces, and countenances which have some resemblance to that of a monkey. Their hair, which is mostly black or brown, is short and curly, but not altogether so soft and woolly as that of a negro. The difference of this people from any whom our commander had yet visited, appeared not only in their persons, but in their language. Of about eighty words which were collected by Mr. Forster, scarcely one was found to bear any affinity to the language spoken in any country or island hitherto described. It was observed by Captain Cook that the natives could pronounce most of the English words with great ease. They had not so much as a name for a dog, and knew nothing of that animal; for which reason the captain left them a dog and bitch; and as they were very fond of them, it was highly probable that the breed would be fostered and increased.

To the harbour in which our commander anchored while he lay at Mallicollo, he gave the name of Port Sandwich. It has many advantages with regard to depth of water, shelter from winds, and lying so near the shore as to be a cover to those of a ship's company who may be carrying on any operations by land.

Soon after our navigators had got to sea, which was on the 23d of July, they discovered three or four small islands which before had appeared to be connected. At this time the Resolution was not far from the Isle of Ambryn, the island of Paoom, and the Isle of Apee. On the next morning several more islands were discovered, lying off the south-east point of Apee, and constituting a group, which Capt. Cook called Shepherd's isles, in honour of his learned and valuable friend Dr. Shepherd, Plumian Professor of Astronomy at Cambridge. The ship was this day in some danger. It suddenly fell calm, and our voyagers were left to the mercy of the current, close by the isles, where no sounding could be found with a line of an hundred and eighty fathoms. The lands or islands, which lay around the vessel in every direction, were so numerous that they could not be counted. At this crisis a breeze sprung up, which happily relieved the captain and his company from the anxiety the calm had occasioned.

Amidst the number of islands that were continually seen by our navigators, there was only one on which no inhabitants were discerned. This consisted chiefly of a remarkable peaked rock, which was only accessible to birds, and which obtained the name of the Monument.

In the further course of the ship to the southward, our navigators drew near to certain lands, which they found to consist of one large island, the southern and western extremities of which extended beyond their sight. Three or four smaller ones lay off its north side. To the two principal of these Captain Cook gave the name of Montagu and Hinchinbrook, and the large island he named Sandwich, in honour of his noble patron the Earl of Sandwich. This island, which was spotted with woods and lawns, agreeably diversified over the whole surface, and which had a gentle slope from the hills down to the sea-coast, exhibited a most beautiful and delightful

prospect. The examination of it was not, however, so much an object with our commander, as to proceed to the south, in order to find the southern extremity of the Archipelago.

Pursuing his discoveries, Captain Cook came in sight of an island, which was afterwards known to be called by the natives Erromango. After coasting it for three days, he brought his vessel to an anchor in a bay there on the 3rd of August. The next day he went with two boats to examine the coast, and look for a proper landing-place, that he might obtain a supply of wood and water. At this time the inhabitants began to assemble on the shore, and by signs to invite our people to land. Their behaviour was apparently so friendly, that the captain was charmed with it; and the only thing which could give him suspicion was, that most of them were armed with clubs, spears, darts, and bows and arrows. He did not, therefore, remit his vigilance, but kept his eye continually upon the chief, watching his looks as well as his actions. It soon was evident that the intentions of the Indians were totally hostile. They made a violent attempt to seize upon one of the boats; and though, on our commander's pointing a musket at them, they in some measure desisted, yet they returned in an instant, seemingly determined to carry their design into execution. At the head of the party was the chief; while others, who could not come to the boat stood behind with darts, stones, and bows and arrows in hand, ready to support their countrymen. As signs and threats had no effect, the safety of Capt. Cook and his people became the only object of consideration, and yet he was unwilling to fire on the multitude. He resolved, therefore, to make the chief alone the victim of his own treachery, and accordingly aimed his musket at him; but at this critical moment it missed fire. This circumstance encouraged the natives to despise our weapons, and to show the superiority of their

own, by throwing stones and darts, and by shooting arrows. Hence it became absolutely necessary for the captain to give orders to his men to fire upon the assailants. The first discharge threw them into confusion; but a second was scarcely sufficient to drive them off the beach. In consequence of this skirmish four of the Indians lay, to all appearance, dead on the shore. Two of them, however, were afterwards perceived to crawl into the bushes; and it was happy for these people that not half the muskets of the English would go off, since otherwise many more must have fallen. The inhabitants were at length so terrified as to make no further appearance; and two oars which had been lost in the conflict, were left standing up against the bushes.

It was observed of these islanders that they seemed of a different race from those of Mallicollo, and that they spoke a different language. They are of a middle size, with a good shape and tolerable features. Their colour is very dark; and their aspect is not mended by a custom they have of painting their faces, some with a black, and others with a red pigment. As to their hair, it is curly and crisp, and somewhat woolly. The few women who were seen, and who appeared to be ugly, wore a kind of petticoat, made either of palm-leaves, or of a plant similar in its nature; but the men, like those of Mallicollo, were almost entirely naked. On account of the treacherous behaviour of the inhabitants of Erromango, Captain Cook called a promontory or peninsula, near to which the skirmish happened, Traitor's Head.

From this place the captain sailed for an island which had been discovered before at a distance, and at which, on account of his wanting a large quantity of wood and water, he was resolved to make some stay. At first the natives were disposed to be very hostile; but our commander, with equal wisdom and humanity, contrived to terrify them, without danger

to their lives. This was principally effected by firing a few great guns, at which they were so much alarmed, as afterwards to be brought to tolerable order. Among these islanders, many were inclined to be on friendly terms with our navigators, and especially the old people; whilst most of the younger were daring and insolent, and obliged the English to keep to their arms. It was natural enough that age should be prudent and cautious, and youth bold and impetuous; and yet this distinction, with regard to the behaviour of the various nations which had been visited by Captain Cook, had not occurred before.

The island where the captain now stayed was found, upon inquiry, to be called by the inhabitants Tanna; and three others in its neighbourhood, and which could be seen from it, were distinguished by the names of Inner, Erronan, or Footoona, and Annatom.

From such information of the natives as our commander could see no reason to doubt, it appeared that circumcision was practised among them, and that they were eaters of human flesh. Concerning the latter subject, he should never have thought of asking them a single question, if they had not introduced it themselves, by inquiring whether the English had the same custom. It has been argued that necessity alone could be the origin of this horrid practice. But as the people of Tanna are possessed of fine pork and fowls, together with an abundance of roots and fruits, the plea of necessity cannot be urged in their behalf. In fact, no instance was seen of their eating human flesh, and therefore there might perhaps be some reason to hesitate in pronouncing them to be cannibals.

In the island of Tanna was a volcano which sometimes made a dreadful noise, and at each explosion, which happened every three or four minutes, threw up fire and smoke in prodigious columns. At one time great stones were seen high in the air. At the foot

of the hill were several hot springs; and on the side of it Mr. Forster found some places whence smoke of a sulphurous smell issued through cracks or fissures of the earth. A thermometer that was placed in a little hole made in one of them, and which in the open air stood only at eighty, rose to a hundred and seventy. In another instance, the mercury rose to a hundred and ninety-one.

It is observable with respect to the volcano of Tanna, that it is not on the ridge of the hill to which it belongs, but on its side; nor is that hill the highest in the country, for there are others near it of more than double its height. In was in moist and wet weather that the volcano was most violent.

When our commander was ready to sail from Tanna, an event happened which gave much concern. Just as our people were getting some logs into the boat, four or five of the natives stepped forward to see what they were doing. In consequence of the Indians not being allowed to come within certain limits, the sentinel ordered them back, upon which they readily complied. At this time, Capt. Cook, who had his eyes fixed upon them, observed the sentry present his piece to the men. The captain was going to reprove him for this action, when to his inexpressible astonishment the sentry fired. An attack so causeless and extraordinary naturally threw the natives into great confusion. Most of them fled, and it was with difficulty that our commander could prevail upon a few of them to remain. As they ran off, he perceived one of them to fall, who was immediately lifted up by two others, who took him into the water, washed his wound, and then led him off. The wounded person not being carried far, Captain Cook sent for the surgeon of the ship, and accompanied him to the man, whom they found expiring. The rascal that had fired, pretended that an Indian had laid an arrow across his bow, and was going to shoot at him, so that he apprehended himself to be in

danger. This, however, was no more than what the islanders had always done, to show that they were armed as well as our voyagers. What rendered the present incident the more unfortunate was, that it was not the man who bent the bow, but one who stood near him, that was shot by the sentry.

The harbour where the captain anchored during his stay at Tanna was called by him Port Resolution, after the name of the ship, she being the first vessel by which it was ever entered. It is no more than a little creek, three quarters of a mile in length. No place can exceed it in its convenience for taking in wood and water, which are both close to the shore. The inhabitants of the island, with whom our commander had the most frequent and friendly connexions, were named Paowang.

Very little trade could be carried on with the people of Tanna. They had not the least knowledge of iron, and consequently nails, tools, and other articles made of that metal, and which are so greedily sought for in the more eastern isles, were here of no consideration. Cloth could be of no service to persons who go naked.

Among the productions of the island, there is reason to believe that the nutmeg-tree might be mentioned. This is collected from the circumstance of Mr. Forster's having shot a pigeon, in the crow of which a wild nutmeg was discovered. However, though he took some pains to find the tree, his endeavours were not attended with success.

It was at first thought by our navigators that the inhabitants of Tanna were a race between the natives of the Friendly Islands and those of Mallicollo; but, by a short acquaintance with them, they were convinced that they had little or no affinity to either, excepting in their hair. Some few men, women, and children were seen, whose hair resembled that of the English. With regard, however, to these persons, it was obvious that they were of another nation:

and it was understood that they came from Erroman. Two languages were found to be spoken in Tanna; one of them, which appeared to have been introduced from Erroman, is nearly, if not exactly the same with that of the Friendly Islands; the other, which is the proper language of the country, and which is judged to be peculiar to Tanna, Erromango, and An-natom, is different from any that had hitherto been met with by our voyagers.

The people of Tanna are of the middle size, and for the most part slender. There are few tall or stout men among them. In general, they have good features and agreeable countenances. Like all the tropical race, they are active and nimble; and seem to excel in the use of arms, but not to be fond of labour.

On the 20th of August, Captain Cook sailed from Tanna, and employed the remainder of the month in a further examination of the islands round him. He had now finished his survey of the whole Archipelago, and had gained a knowledge of it infinitely superior to what had ever been attained before. The southern islands of this Archipelago were first discovered, in 1606, by that eminent navigator Quiros, who considered them as part of the southern continent, which at that time, and till very lately, was supposed to exist. M. de Bougainville was the next person by whom they were visited in 1768. This gentleman, however, besides landing in the isle of Lepers, only made the discovery that the country was not connected, but composed of islands, which he called the Great Cyclades. Capt. Cook, besides ascertaining the situation and extent of these islands, added to them several new ones, which had hitherto been unknown, and explored the whole. He thought therefore, that he had obtained a right to name them, and he accordingly bestowed upon them the appellation of the New Hebrides. His title to this honour will not be disputed in any part of Europe, and cer-

tainly not by so enlightened and liberal a people as the French nation.

The season of the year now rendered it necessary for our commander to return to the south, while he had yet some time to explore any land he might meet with between the New Hebrides and New Zealand, at which last place he intended to touch, that he might refresh his people, and renew his stock of wood and water, for another southern course. With this view, he sailed on the 1st of September, and, on the 4th, land was discovered; in a harbour belonging to which, the Resolution came to an anchor the next day. The design of Captain Cook was not only to visit the country, but to have an opportunity of observing an eclipse of the sun which was soon to happen. An intercourse immediately commenced with the inhabitants, who, during the whole of the captain's stay, behaved in a very civil and friendly manner. In return, he was solicitous to render them every service in his power. To Teabooma, the chief, he sent among other articles, a dog and bitch, both young, but nearly full grown. It was some time before Teabooma could believe that the two animals were intended for him; but when he was convinced of it, he was lost in excess of joy. Another, and still more valuable present was that of a young boar and sow, which, on account of the absence of the chief when they were brought to land, were received with great hesitation and ceremony.

The last time that our commander went on shore at this place, he ordered an inscription to be cut on a large tree, setting forth the name of the ship, the date of the year, and other circumstances, which testified that the English were the first discoverers of the country. This he had before done, wherever such a ceremony seemed necessary. How the island was called by the natives, our voyagers could never learn; and therefore Captain Cook gave it the name of New Caledonia. The inhabitants are strong.

robust, active, and well made. With regard to the origin of the nation, the captain judged them to be a race between the people of Tanna and the Friendly Isles; or between those of Tanna and the New Zealanders; or all three. Their language is in some respects a mixture of them all. In their disposition they are courteous and obliging; and they are not in the least addicted to pilfering, which is more than can be asserted concerning any other nation in this sea.

The women of New Caledonia, and those likewise of Tanna, were found to be much chaster than the females of the more eastern islands. Our commander never heard that the least favour was obtained from them by any of his company. Sometimes, indeed, the women would exercise a little coquetry, but they went no further.

The botanists of the ship did not here complain for want of employment. They were diligent in their researches, and their labours were amply rewarded. Every day brought some new acquisition to botanical knowledge, or that of other branches of natural history.

Every thing being ready to put to sea, Capt. Cook weighed anchor on the 13th of September, with the purpose of examining the coast of New Caledonia. In pursuing this object, by which he was enabled to add greatly to nautical and geographical knowledge, the Resolution was more than once in danger of being lost, and particularly in the night of the 28th of the month, she had a narrow escape. Our navigators, on this occasion, were much alarmed, and day-light showed that their fears had not been ill founded. Indeed breakers had been continually under their lee, and at a small distance from them, so that they were in the most imminent danger. "We owed our safety," says the captain, "to the interposition of Providence, a good look-out, and the very brisk manner in which the ship was managed."

Our commander now began to be tired of a coast which he could no longer explore but at the risk of losing the vessel, and ruining the whole voyage. He determined, however, not to leave it till he knew of what kind some groves of trees were, which, by their uncommon appearance, had occasioned much speculation, and had been mistaken by several of the gentlemen for basaltes. Captain Cook was the more solicitous to ascertain the point, as these trees appeared to be a sort which might be useful to shipping, and had not been seen any where but in the southern parts of New Caledonia. They proved to be a species of spruce pine, very proper for spars, which were then wanted. The discovery was valuable, as, excepting New Zealand, there was not an island known in the southern Pacific Ocean where the ship could supply herself with mast or yard, to whatever distress she might be reduced.

Captain Cook now took into serious consideration what was further to be done. He had pretty well determined the extent of the south-west coast of New Caledonia, and would gladly have proceeded to a more accurate survey of the whole, had he not been deterred, not only by the dangers he must encounter, but by the time required for the undertaking, and which he could not possibly spare. Indeed, when he considered the vast ocean he had to explore to the south, the state and condition of the ship, the near approach of summer, and that any material accident might detain him in this sea even for another year, he did not think it advisable to make New Caledonia any longer the object of his attention. But though he was thus obliged, by necessity, for the first time, to leave a coast which he had discovered before it was fully surveyed, he did not quit it till he had ascertained the extent of the country, and proved that, excepting New Zealand, it was perhaps the largest island in the South Pacific Ocean.

As the Resolution pursued her course from New

Caledonia, land was discovered, which, on a nearer approach, was found to be an island of good height, and five leagues in circuit. Captain Cook named it Norfolk Isle, in honour of the noble family of Howard. It was uninhabited, and the first persons that ever set foot on it were unquestionably our English navigators. Various trees and plants were observed that are common at New Zealand.

From Norfolk Isle our commander steered for New Zealand, it being his intention to touch at Queen Charlotte's Sound, that he might refresh his crew, and put the ship in a condition to encounter the southern latitudes. On the 18th of October, he anchored before Ship Cove in that sound; and the first thing he did after landing was to look for the bottle he had left on shore, in which was a memorandum. It was taken away, and it soon appeared from indubitable circumstances that the Adventure had been in the cove after it was quitted by the Resolution.

Upon visiting the gardens which had been formed at Motuara, they were found almost in a state of nature, having been wholly neglected by the inhabitants. Many, however, of the articles were in a flourishing condition, and showed how well they liked the soil in which they were planted. It was several days before any of the natives made their appearance: but when they did so, and recognised Captain Cook and his friends, joy succeeded to fear. They hurried in numbers out of the woods, and embraced the English over and over again, leaping and skipping about like madmen. Amidst all this extravagance of joy, they were careful to preserve the honour of their females; for they would not permit some women, who were seen at a distance, to come near our people. The captain's whole intercourse with the New Zealanders, during this his third visit to Queen Charlotte's Sound, was peaceable and friendly; and one of them, a man apparently of consequence, whose name was Pedro, presented him

with a staff of honour, such as the chiefs generally carry. In return, our commander dressed Pedro, who had a fine person, and a good presence, in a suit of old clothes, of which he was not a little proud.

Captain Cook still continued his solicitude to stock the islands with useful animals; and accordingly, in addition to what he had formerly done, he ordered two pigs, a boar and a sow, to be put on shore. There was reason to believe that some of the cocks and hens which had formerly been left here still existed. None of them, indeed, were seen; but a hen's egg was found, which had not long been laid.

On the 10th of November, Captain Cook took his departure from New Zealand in further pursuit of his great object, the determination of the question concerning the existence of a southern continent. Having sailed till the 27th, in different degrees of latitude, extending from 43 deg. to 55 deg. 48 min. south, he gave up all hopes of finding any more land in this ocean. He came, therefore, to the resolution of steering directly for the west entrance of the Straits of Magellans, with a view of coasting the south side of Terra del Fuego, round Cape Horn, to the Strait Le Maire. As the world had hitherto obtained but a very imperfect knowledge of the shore, the captain thought that the full survey of it would be more advantageous, both to navigation and geography, than any thing he could expect to find in a higher latitude.

In the prosecution of his voyage, our commander on the 17th of December, reached the west coast of Terra del Fuego; and having continued to range it till the 20th, he came to an anchor in a place to which he afterwards gave the name of Christmas Sound. Through the whole course of his various navigations, he had never seen so desolate a coast. It seems to be entirely composed of rocky mountains, without the least appearance of vegetation; these mountains terminat<sup>d</sup> in horrible precipices, the craggy

summits of which spire up to a vast height, so that scarcely any thing in nature can appear with a more barren and savage aspect than the whole of the country.

The run which Captain Cook had made directly across the ocean in a high southern latitude, was believed by him to be the first of the kind that had ever been carried into execution. He was therefore somewhat particular in remarking every circumstance which seemed to be in the least material. He could not, however, but observe that he had never made a passage any where of such length, or even of a much shorter extent, in which so few things occurred that were of an interesting nature. Excepting the variation of the compass, he knew nothing else that was worthy of notice. The captain had now done with the Southern Pacific Ocean, and he had explored it in such a manner that it would be impossible for any one to think that more could be obtained in a single voyage, towards attaining that end, than had actually been accomplished.

Barren and dreary as the land is about Christmas Sound, it was not wholly destitute of some accommodations, which could not fail of being agreeable to our navigators. Near every harbour they found fresh water, and wood for fuel. The country abounds likewise with wild fowl, and particularly with geese, which afforded a refreshment to the whole crew.

The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, Captain Cook found to be of the same nation that he had formerly seen in Success Bay, and the same whom M. de Bougainville has distinguished by the name of Pecharas. They are a little, ugly, half-starved, beardless race, and go almost naked. It is their own fault that they are not better clothed, nature having furnished them with ample materials for that purpose. By lining their seal-skin cloaks with the skins and feathers of aquatic birds, by making the cloaks themselves larger, and by applying the same materials to

different parts of clothing, they might render their dress much more warm and comfortable. But while they are doomed to exist in one of the most inhospitable climates in the globe, they have not sagacity enough to avail themselves of those means of adding to the conveniences of life which Providence has put into their power. In short, the captain, after having been a witness to so many varieties of the human race, has pronounced, that of all the nations he had seen, the Pecharas are the most wretched.

Notwithstanding the barrenness of the country, it abounds with a variety of unknown plants, and gave sufficient employment to the botanists of the Resolution. "Almost every plant," says Mr. Forster, "which we gathered on the rocks was new to us, and some species were remarkable for the beauty of their flowers, or for their smell."

On the 28th of December, our commander sailed from Christmas Sound, and proceeded on his voyage round Cape Horn, through Strait Le Maire, to Staten Land. This famous cape was passed by him on the next day, when he entered the Southern Atlantic Ocean. In some charts, Cape Horn is laid down as belonging to a small island; but this was neither confirmed, nor could it be contradicted, by our navigators; for several breakers appeared on the coast, both to the east and west of it, and the hazy weather rendered every object very indistinct. Though the summits of some of the hills were rocky, the sides and valleys seemed covered with a green turf, and wooded in tufts.

In ranging Staten Island, a good port was found, situated three leagues to the westward of St. John, and in a northern direction. Upon account of the day on which the discovery of this port was made (being the 1st of January,) Captain Cook gave it the name of New Year's Harbour. The knowledge of it may be of service to future navigators.

The extent of Terra del Fuego, and consequently

that of the Straits of Magellans, our commander ascertained to be less than has been laid down by the generality of navigators. Nor was the coast, upon the whole, found to be so dangerous as has often been represented. The weather at the same time was remarkably temperate.

In one of the little isles near Staten Land, and which had been called by Captain Cook New Year's Isles, there was observed a harmony between the different animals of the place, which is too curious to be omitted. It seemed as if they had entered into a league not to disturb each other's tranquillity. The greater part of the sea-coast is occupied by the sea-lions; the sea-bears take up their abode in the isles; the shags are posted in the highest cliffs; the penguins fix their quarters where there is the most easy communication to and from the sea; and the rest of the birds choose more retired places. All these animals were occasionally seen to mix together like domestic cattle and poultry in a farm-yard, without one attempting to molest the other. Nay, the captain had often observed the eagles and vultures sitting on the hills among the shags, while none of the latter, whether old or young, appeared to be in the least disturbed at their presence. It may be asked then, how do these birds of prey live? This question our commander has answered, by supposing that they feed on the carcasses of seals and birds which die by various causes. It is probable, from the immense quantity of animals with which this isle abounds, that such carcasses exist in great numbers.

Capt. Cook sailed from Staten Island on the 4th of January, with a view, in the first place, of discovering that extensive coast, laid down by Mr. Dalrymple in his chart, in which is the gulf of St. Sebastian. In order to have all other parts before him, the captain designed to make the western point of that gulf. As he had some doubt of the existence of such a coast, this appeared to him the best route for determining

the matter, and for exploring the southern part of this ocean. When he came to the situations assigned to the different points of the Gulf of St. Sebastian, neither land, nor any unequivocal signs of land, were discovered. On the contrary, it was evident that there could not be any extensive tract of country in the direction which had been supposed.

Proceeding on his voyage, land was seen on the 14th, which was at first mistaken for an island of ice. It was in a manner wholly covered with snow. From the person by whom it was first discovered, it obtained the name of Wallis's Island. It is a high rock of no great extent, near to which are some rocky islets. Another island of a larger compass, on account of the vast number of birds which were upon it, was called Bird Isle. A more extensive range of country had been seen for some time, which Captain Cook reached on the 17th, and where he landed on the same day, in three different places. The head of the bay, in which he came to shore, was terminated by particular ice-cliffs of considerable height. Pieces were continually breaking off, and floating out to sea, and while our navigators were in the bay, a great fall happened, which made a noise like a cannon. No less savage and horrible were the inner parts of the country. The wild rocks raised their summits till they were lost in the clouds, and the valleys lay covered with everlasting snow. There was not a tree to be seen, or shrub to be found, that was even big enough to make a tooth-pick. The only vegetation that was met with, was a coarse, strong-bladed grass, growing in tufts, wild burnet, and a plant like moss, which sprang from the rocks.

When our commander landed in the bay, he displayed the English colours, and, under a discharge of small arms, took possession of the country in his Majesty's name. It was not, however, a discovery which was ever likely to be productive of any considerable benefit.

Upon coasting round the whole country, it was proved to demonstration that it was only an island of seventy leagues in circuit. In honour of his Majesty, Captain Cook called it the Isle of Georgia. It could scarcely have been thought that an island of no greater extent than this, situated between the latitude of fifty-four and fifty-five, should in a manner be wholly covered, many fathoms deep, with frozen snow, in the height of summer.

The captain on the 25th of the month, steered from the Isle of Georgia, and, on the 27th, computed that he was in latitude sixty south. Further than this he did not intend to go, unless some certain signs of soon meeting with land should be discovered. There was now a long hollow swell from the west, which was a strong indication that no land was to be met with in that direction; and hence arose an additional proof of what has already been remarked, that the extensive coast laid down in Mr. Dalrymple's chart, of the ocean between Africa and America, and the gulf of St. Sebastian, does not exist. Not to mention the various islands which were seen in the prosecution of the voyage, and the names that were given to them, I shall only advert to a few of the more material circumstances. On an elevated coast which appeared in sight upon the 31st, our commander bestowed the appellation of the Southern Thule. The reason of his giving it this name was, that it is the most southern land that had ever yet been discovered. It is every where covered with snow, and displays a surface of vast height. On this day our voyagers were in no small danger from a great westerly swell, which set right upon the shore, and threatened to carry them on the most horrible coast in the world. Happily the discovery of a point to the north, beyond which no land could be seen, relieved them from their apprehensions. To the more distinguished tracts of country which were discovered from the 31st of Jan. to the 6th of February,

Captain Cook gave the names of Cape Bristol, and Cape Montague, Sanders' Isle, Candlemas Isles, and Sandwich's Land. The last is either a group of islands, or else a point of the continent; for that there is a tract of land near the pole, which is a source of most of the ice that is spread over this vast Southern Ocean, was the captain's firm opinion. He also thought it probable that this land must extend furthest to the north, where it is opposite to the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans. Ice had always been found by him further to the north in these oceans than any where else, and this he judged could not be the case, if there were not land of considerable extent to the south. However, the greatest part of this southern continent, if it actually exist, must lie within the polar circle, where the sea is so encumbered with ice that the land is rendered inaccessible. So great is the risk which is run in examining a coast in these unknown and icy seas, that our commander, with a modest and well-grounded boldness, could assert that no man would ever venture further than he had done, and that the lands which may lie to the south will never be explored. Thick fogs, snow-storms, intense cold, and every thing beside that can render navigation dangerous, must be encountered; all which difficulties are greatly heightened by the inexpressibly horrid aspect of the country. It is a country doomed by nature never once to feel the warmth of the sun's rays, but to lie buried in everlasting snow and ice. Whatever ports there may be on the coast, they are almost entirely covered with frozen snow of a vast thickness. If, however, any one of them should be so far open as to invite a ship into it, she would run the risk of being fixed there for ever, or of coming out in an ice island. To this may be added, that the islands and floats, on the coast, the great falls from the ice cliffs in the port, or a heavy snow-storm, attended with a sharp frost, might be equally fatal.

Captain Cook had now made the circuit of the southern ocean in a high latitude, and traversed it in such a manner as to leave not the least room for the possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. By twice visiting the tropical sea, he had not only settled the situation of some old discoveries, but made many new ones, and indeed, even in that part had left but little more to be accomplished. The intention of the voyage, had, in every respect, being fully answered, and the southern hemisphere sufficiently explored. A final end was hereby put to the searching after a southern continent, which, for nearly two centuries past, had occasionally engrossed the attention of some of the maritime powers, and had been urged with great ardour by philosophers and geographers in different ages.

The great purpose of his navigation round the globe being thus completed, the captain began to direct his views towards England.

Soon after our commander had come to this determination, he demanded of the officers and petty officers, in pursuance of his instructions, the log-books and journals they had kept, which were delivered to him accordingly, and sealed up for the inspection of the Admiralty. He enjoined them also, and the whole crew, not to divulge where they had been, till they were permitted to do so by their lordships;—an injunction, a compliance with which might probably be rendered somewhat difficult, from the natural tendency there is in men, to relate the extraordinary enterprises and adventures wherein they have been concerned.

As the Resolution approached towards the Cape of Good Hope, she fell in first, with a Dutch East Indiaman from Bengal, commanded by Capt. Bosch; and the next with an English Indiaman, being the True Briton from China, of which Captain Broadly was the commander. Mr. Bosch very obligingly

offered to our navigators, sugar, arrack, and whatever he had to spare; and Captain Broadly, with the most ready generosity, sent them fresh provisions, tea and various articles, which could not fail of being peculiarly acceptable to people in their situation. Even a parcel of old newspapers furnished no slight gratification to persons who had so long been deprived of obtaining any intelligence concerning their country and the state of Europe. From these vessels Captain Cook received some information with regard to what had happened to the Adventure after her separation from the Resolution.

On Wednesday, the 22d of March, he anchored in Table Bay, where he found several Dutch ships, some French, and the Ceres, an English East Indiaman, bound directly for England, under the command of Captain Newte. By this gentleman he sent a copy of the preceding parts of his journal, some charts, and other drawings to the Admiralty.

During the circumnavigation of the globe, from the period of our commander leaving the Cape of Good Hope to his return to it again, he had sailed no less than twenty thousand leagues. This was an extent of voyage, nearly equal to three times the equatorial circumference of the earth, and which had never been accomplished before by any ship in the same compass of duration. In such a case, it could not be a matter of surprise that the rigging and sails of the Resolution should be essentially damaged, and even worn out; and yet in all this great run, which had been made in every latitude between nine and seventy-one, she did not spring either low-mast, top-mast, lower or top-sail yard; nor did she so much as break a lower or top-mast shroud. These happy circumstances were owing to the good properties of the vessel, and the singular care and abilities of her officers.

On the remainder of the voyage it is not necessary to enlarge. Though it was conducted with the same

attention to navigation and geography, and with the same sagacity in marking whatever was worthy of observation; nevertheless, as it was not employed in traversing unknown seas, or in discovering countries that had not been heard of before, it may be sufficient briefly to mention the places at which Captain Cook touched before his arrival in England. The repairs of the ship having been completed, and the necessary stores got on board, together with a fresh supply of provisions and water, he left the Cape of Good Hope on the 27th of April, and reached the island of St. Helena on the 15th of May. Here he staid till the 21st, when he sailed for the island of Ascension, where he anchored on the 28th. From this place he directed his course, on the 31st, for the island of Fernando de Neronha, at which he arrived on the 9th of June.

In the progress of the voyage, our commander made an experiment upon the still for procuring fresh water; and the result of the trial was, that the invention is useful upon the whole, but that to trust entirely to it would by no means be advisable. Indeed, provided there is not a scarcity of fuel, and the coppers are good, as much water may be obtained as will support life; but no efforts will be able to procure a quantity sufficient for the preservation of health, especially in hot climates. Captain Cook was convinced by experience, that nothing contributes more to the health of seamen than having plenty of water.

On the 14th of July the captain came to an anchor in the Bay of Fayal, one of the Azore Islands. His sole design in stopping here was to give Mr. Wales an opportunity of finding the rate of the watch, that hereby he might be enabled to fix the longitude of these islands with the greater degree of certainty. No sooner, therefore, had our commander anchored than he sent an officer to wait on the English consul, and to acquaint the governor with the arrival of our

navigators, requesting his permission for Mr. Wales to make observations on shore for the purpose now mentioned. Mr. Dent, who then acted as consul, not only obtained this permission, but accommodated Mr. Wales with a convenient place in his garden to set up his instruments.

This object being accomplished, Captain Cook proceeded, on the 19th, with all expedition for England. On the 30th of the same month, he anchored at Spithead, and landed at Portsmouth, having been absent from Great Britain three years and eighteen days, in which time, and under all changes of climate, he had lost but four men, and only one of them by sickness.

## CHAPTER IV.

ACCOUNT OF CAPTAIN COOK DURING THE PERIOD BETWEEN HIS SECOND VOYAGE AND HIS VOYAGE TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

THE able manner in which Captain Cook had conducted the preceding voyage, the discoveries he had made, and his complete determination of the grand point he had been sent to ascertain, justly and powerfully recommended him to the protection and encouragement of all those who had patronized the undertaking. No alteration had occurred, during his absence, in the presidency of the Admiralty department. The noble lord whose extensive views had taken such a lead in the plans of navigation and discovery, still continued at the head of that Board; and it could not be otherwise than a high satisfaction to him that so extraordinary a degree of success had attended his designs for the enlargement of science. His lordship lost no time in representing Capt. Cook's merits to the king; nor did his majesty stand in need of solicitations to show favour to a man who had so eminently fulfilled his royal and munificent intentions. Accordingly our navigator, on the 9th of August, was raised to the rank of a post captain. Three days afterwards he received a more distinguished and substantial mark of the approbation of government; for he was then appointed a captain in Greenwich hospital—a situation which was intended to afford him a pleasing and honourable reward for his illustrious labours and services.

It was easily supposed that the lovers of science would, in general, be peculiarly attentive to the effects resulting from Captain Cook's discoveries, and were anxious to see them in print.

It was not till some time after Captain Cook's leaving England that his work was published; but, in the mean while, the superintendance of it was undertaken by his learned and valuable friend Dr. Douglas, whose late promotion to the mitre has afforded pleasure to every literary man of every denomination. When the "Voyage" appeared, it came recommended by the accuracy and excellency of its charts, and by a great variety of engravings from the curious and beautiful drawings of Mr. Hodges. This work was followed by the publication of the original astronomical observations, which had been made by Mr. Wales in the Resolution, and by Mr. Bayley in the Adventure. It was at the expense of the Commissioners of Longitude that these observations were made, and it was by their order that they were printed. The book of Mr. Wales and Mr. Bayley displays in the strongest light the scientific use and value of Captain Cook's voyage.

Though Captain Cook was expected to sit down in repose after his toils and labours, the design of further discoveries was not laid aside. The illusion, indeed, of a *Terra Australis Incognita* to any purposes of commerce, colonization, and utility, had been dispelled; but another grand question remained to be determined, and that was the practicability of a northern passage to the Pacific Ocean.

It had long been a favourite object with navigators and particularly with the English to discover a shorter, a more commodious, and more profitable course of sailing to Japan and China, and indeed to the East Indies in general, than by making the tedious circuit of the Cape of Good Hope. To find a western passage round North America had been attempted by several bold adventurers, from Fro

bisher's first voyage in 1576, to those of James and of Fox in 1631. By these experiments a larger addition was made to the knowledge of the northern extent of America, and Hudson's and Baffin's Bays were discovered. But the wished-for passage on that side into the Pacific Ocean was still unattained, nor were the various attempts of our countrymen, and of the Dutch, to find such a passage by sailing round the north of Asia in an eastern direction, attended with better success. Wood's failure in 1676 appears to have concluded the long list of unfortunate expeditions in that country. The discovery, if not absolutely despaired of, had been unsuccessful in such a number of instances, that it ceased for many years to be an object of pursuit.

The question was again revived in the present century. Mr. Dobbs, a warm advocate for the probability of a north-west passage through Hudson's Bay, once more called the attention of this country to that undertaking. In consequence of the spirit by him excited, Captain Middleton was sent out by government in 1741, and Captains Smith and More in 1746. But though an Act of Parliament had been passed which secured a reward of twenty thousand pounds for the discovery of a passage, the accomplishment of this favourite object continued at as great a distance as ever.

To ascertain a matter of such importance and magnitude in navigation was reserved to be another glory of Geo. III. The idea was peculiarly suited to the enlightened mind of the noble lord at the head of the Admiralty, and he adopted it with ardour. Preparatory to the execution of the design, Lord Mulgrave sailed with two ships, to determine how far navigation was practicable towards the north pole. In this expedition his lordship met with the same insuperable difficulties which had been experienced by former voyagers. Nevertheless, the expectation of opening a communication between the Pacific and

the Atlantic Ocean by a northerly course was not abandoned, and it was resolved that a voyage should be undertaken for that purpose.

For the conduct of an enterprise, the operations of which were intended to be so new, so extensive, and so various, it was evident that great ability, skill, and experience were indispensably necessary. That Captain Cook was of all men the best qualified for carrying it into execution, was a matter that could not be called in question. But however ardently it might be wished that he would take upon him the command of the service, no one (not even his friend and patron, Lord Sandwich himself) presumed to solicit him upon the subject. The benefits he had already conferred on science and navigation, and the labours and dangers he had gone through, were so many and great, that it was not deemed reasonable to ask him to engage in fresh perils. At the same time, nothing could be more natural than to consult him upon every thing relative to the business; and his advice was particularly requested with regard to the most proper person for conducting the voyage. To determine this point, the captain, Sir H. Palliser, and Mr. Stephens, were invited to Lord Sandwich's to dinner. Here, besides taking into consideration what officer should be recommended to his Majesty for accomplishing the purposes in view, many things were said concerning the nature of the design. Its grandeur and dignity, the consequences of it to navigation and science, and the completion it would give to the whole system of discoveries, were enlarged upon in the course of the conversation. Capt. Cook was so fired with the contemplation and representation of the object, that he started up, and declared that he himself would undertake the direction of the enterprise. It is easy to suppose with what pleasure the noble lord and the other gentlemen received a proposal which was so agreeable to their secret wishes, and which they thought of the highest im-

portance towards attaining the ends of the voyage. No time was lost by the Earl of Sandwich in laying the matter before the King; and Captain Cook was appointed to the command of the expedition on the 10th of February, 1776. At the same time it was agreed that, on his return to England, he should be restored to his situation at Greenwich, and if no vacancy occurred during the interval, the officer who succeeded him was to resign in his favour.

The command and the direction of the enterprise being thus happily settled, it became an object of great importance to determine what might be the best course that could be given to the voyage. All former navigators round the globe had returned to Europe by the Cape of Good Hope. But to Captain Cook the arduous task was now assigned of attempting it by reaching the high northern latitudes between Asia and America; and the adoption of this resolution was, I believe, the result of his own reflections upon the subject. The usual plan, therefore, of discovery was reversed; so that, instead of a passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific, one from the latter into the former was to be tried.

Whatever openings or inlets there might be on the east side of America, that lie in a direction which could afford any hopes of a passage, it was wisely foreseen that the ultimate success of the expedition would depend upon there being an open sea between the west side of that continent and the extremities of Asia. Accordingly Captain Cook was ordered to proceed into the Pacific Ocean, through the chain of the new islands which had never been visited by him in the southern tropic. After having crossed the equator into the northern parts of that ocean, he was then to hold such a course as might probably fix many interesting points in geography, and produce intermediate discoveries, in his progress northward to the principal scene of his operations. With regard to this grand object, it was determined, for the wisest

reasons, and after the most mature deliberation and inquiry, that upon his arrival on the coast of New Albion, he should proceed northward as far as latitude 65 deg., and not lose any time in exploring rivers or inlets, or upon any other account, until he had got into that latitude.

To give every possible encouragement to the prosecution of the great design in view, the motives of interest were added to the obligations of duty. In the Act of Parliament which passed in 1745, the reward of twenty thousand pounds had been held out only to the ships *belonging to any of his Majesty's subjects*, while his majesty's own ships were excluded. Another and more capital defect of this Act was that it confined the reward to such ships alone as should discover a passage through Hudson's Bay. By a new law which passed in 1776, both these deficiencies were effectually remedied. It was now enacted, "that if any ship belonging to any of his Majesty's subjects, *or to his Majesty*, shall find out and sail through any passage by sea, between the Atlantic and Pacific Ocean, *in any direction*, or parallel of the northern hemisphere, to the northward of the fifty-second degree of northern latitude, the owners of such ship, if belonging to any of his Majesty's subjects, *or the commander, officers, and seamen of such ship belonging to his Majesty*, shall receive, as a reward for such discovery, the sum of twenty thousand pounds."

That every thing might be done which could facilitate the success of the grand expedition, Lieutenant Pickersgill was sent out, in 1776, with directions to explore the coast of Baffin's Bay; and, in the next year, Lieutenant Young was commissioned not only to examine the western parts of that bay, but to endeavour to find a passage on that side from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean. Nothing was performed by either of these gentlemen that promoted the purposes of Captain Cook's voyage.

Two vessels were fixed upon by government for the intended service,—the Resolution and the Discovery. The command of the former was given to Capt. Cook, and of the other to Captain Clerke. To the Resolution was assigned the same complement of officers and men which she had during her preceding voyage: and the only difference in the establishment of the Discovery from that of the Adventure was in the single instance of her having no maritime officer on board.

From the time of the two ships being put into commission, the greatest degree of attention and zeal was exerted by the Earl of Sandwich, and the rest of the Board of Admiralty, to have them equipped in the most complete manner. Both the vessels were supplied with as much of every necessary article as could conveniently be stowed, and with the best of each kind that could be procured. Whatever likewise, the experience of the former voyages had shown to be of any utility in preserving the health of seamen, was provided in large abundance. That some permanent benefit might be conveyed to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other isles of the Pacific Ocean, whom our navigators might happen to visit, it was graciously commanded by his Majesty that an assortment of useful animals should be carried out to those countries. Accordingly a bull, two cows with their calves, and several sheep, with hay and corn for their subsistence, were taken on board; and it was intended to add to these other serviceable animals, when Captain Cook should arrive at the Cape of Good Hope. With the same benevolent purposes, the captain was furnished with a sufficient quantity of such of our European garden-seeds as could not fail of being a valuable present to the newly-discovered islands, by adding fresh supplies of food to their own vegetable productions. By order of the Board of Admiralty, many articles besides were delivered to our commander which were

calculated in various ways to improve the condition of the natives of the other hemisphere. Still further to promote a friendly intercourse with them, and to carry on a traffic that might be profitable on both sides, an ample assortment was provided of iron tools and trinkets. An attention no less humane was extended to the wants of our own people. Some additional clothing, adapted to a cold climate, was ordered for the crews of the two ships; and nothing was denied to our navigators that could be supposed to be in the least conducive to their health, or even to their convenience.

It was not to these things only that the extraordinary care of Lord Sandwich, and of the other gentlemen at the head of the naval department, was confined. They were equally solicitous to afford every assistance that was calculated to render the expedition of public utility. Several astronomical and nautical instruments were intrusted by the Board of Longitude to Captain Cook, and Mr. King his second lieutenant, who had undertaken to make the necessary observations, during the voyage, for the improvement of astronomy and navigation. It was originally intended that a professed observator should be sent out in the Resolution; but the scientific abilities of the captain and his lieutenant rendered the appointment of such a person absolutely unnecessary. The case was somewhat different with regard to the Discovery. Mr. William Bayley, who had already given satisfactory proofs of his skill and diligence as an observator while he was employed in Captain Furneaux's ship during the late voyage, was engaged a second time in that capacity, and appointed to sail on board Captain Clerke's vessel. The department of natural history was assigned to Mr. Anderson, the surgeon of the Resolution, who was as willing, as he was well qualified, to describe every thing in that branch of science which should occur worthy of notice. From the remarks of this gentle-

man Captain Cook had derived considerable assistance in his last navigation, especially with regard to the very copious vocabulary of the language of Otaheite, and the comparative specimen of the languages of the other islands which had then been visited. There were several young men among our commander's sea-officers, who, under his direction, could be usefully employed in constructing charts, in taking views of the coasts and headlands near which our voyagers might pass, and in drawing plans of the bays and harbours in which they should anchor. Without a constant attention to this object, the captain was sensible that his discoveries could not be rendered profitable to future navigators. That he might go out with every help which could serve to make the result of the voyage entertaining to the generality of readers, as well as instructive to the sailor and the scholar, Mr. Webber was fixed upon, and engaged to embark in the Resolution, for the express purpose of supplying the unavoidable imperfections of written accounts, by enabling our people to preserve, and to bring home, such drawings of the most memorable scenes of their transactions as could only be executed by a professed and skilful artist.

As the ships were to touch at Otaheite and the Society Islands, it had been determined not to omit the only opportunity which might ever offer of carrying Omai back to his native country. Accordingly he left London, on the 24th of June, in company with Captain Cook, and it was with a mixture of regret and satisfaction that he took his departure.

## CHAPTER V.

### NARRATIVE OF CAPTAIN COOK'S VOYAGE TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN, TO THE PERIOD OF HIS DEATH.

EVERY preparation for the voyage being completed, Captain Cook received an order to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the Resolution under his command. Having accordingly given the proper directions to Captain Clerke, he sailed from the Nore to the Downs on the 25th of June. On the 30th of the same month, he anchored in Plymouth Sound, where the Discovery had already arrived. It was the 8th of July before our commander received his instructions for the voyage, and at the same time he was ordered to proceed with the Resolution to the Cape of Good Hope. Captain Clerke, who was detained in London by some unavoidable circumstances, was to follow as soon as he could join his ship.

In the evening of the 12th, Capt. Cook stood out of Plymouth Sound, and pursued his course down the Channel. It was very early that he began his judicious operations for preserving the health of his crew; for, on the 17th, the ship was smoked between the decks with gunpowder, and the spare sails were well aired.

It being found that there was not hay and corn sufficient for the subsistence of the stock of animals on board till the arrival of our people at the Cape of Good Hope, Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe. This island he thought better adapted to the purposes of procuring these articles, and other

refreshments, than Madeira. On the 1st of August, he anchored in the road of Santa Cruz, and immediately dispatched an officer to the governor, who, with the utmost politeness, granted every thing which our commander requested.

Were a judgment to be formed from the appearance of the country in the neighbourhood of Santa Cruz, it might be concluded that Teneriffe is so barren a spot as to be insufficient for the maintenance even of its own inhabitants. It was proved, however, by the ample supplies which our navigators received, that the islanders had enough to spare for visitors. The necessary articles of refreshment were procured at such moderate prices, as to confirm Captain Cook in his opinion that Teneriffe is a more eligible place than Madeira for ships to touch at which are bound on long voyages. Indeed the wine of the latter island is far superior to that of the former; but then it can only be purchased by a sum of money proportionably large.

The air and climate of Teneriffe are in general remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to give relief in pulmonary complaints. A sensible and well-informed gentleman, who resided in the island, endeavoured to account for this, from its being always in a person's power to procure a different temperature of the air, by residing at different heights in the island. He expressed, therefore, his surprise that the physicians of England should never have thought of sending their consumptive patients to Teneriffe, instead of Nice or Lisbon.

Although it is not understood that there is any great similarity between the manners of the English and those of the Spaniards, it was observable that the difference between them was very little perceived by Omai. He only said that the Spaniards did not appear to be so friendly as the English, and that, in their persons, they approached to some resemblance of his countrymen.

On the 4th, Captain Cook sailed from Teneriffe, and proceeded on his voyage. Such was his attention, both to the discipline and health of the company, that twice in the space of five days he exercised them at great guns and small arms, and cleared and smoked the ship below decks. On the evening of the 10th, when the Resolution was at a small distance from the island of Bonavista, she ran so close upon a number of sunken rocks, that she did but just weather the breakers. The situation of our voyagers, for a few minutes, was very alarming. In this situation the captain, with the intrepid coolness which distinguished his character, did not choose to sound, as that, without any possibility of lessening, might have heightened the danger.

While our commander was near the Cape de Verd Islands, he had an opportunity of correcting an assertion of Mr. Nicholson's with regard to the manner of sailing by those islands, which, if implicitly trusted to, might prove of dangerous consequence. On the 13th, our navigators arrived before Port Praya in the island of St. Jago; but as the Discovery was not there, and little water had been expended in the passage from Teneriffe, Captain Cook did not think proper to go in, but stood to the southward.

On the 1st of September, our navigators crossed the equator. While, on the 8th, Captain Cook was near the eastern coast of Brazil, he was at considerable pains to settle its longitude, which, till some better astronomical observations are made on shore in that country, he concluded to be thirty-five degrees and a half, or thirty-six degrees west, at most.

On the 18th of October, the Resolution came to anchor in Table Bay at the Cape of Good Hope; and the usual compliments having been paid to Baron Plattenburg, the governor, Captain Cook immediately applied himself to his customary operations. Nothing remarkable occurred till the evening of the 31st, when a tempest arose from the south-east, which

lasted three days, and which was so violent, that the Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors. The effects of the storm were sensibly felt by our people on shore; for their tents and observatory were torn to pieces, and their astronomical quadrant narrowly escaped irreparable damage. On the 3d of November the tempest ceased, and the next day the English were enabled to resume their different employments.

It was not till the 10th of the month that Captain Cook had the satisfaction of seeing the Discovery arrive in the Bay, and effect her junction with the Resolution. She had sailed from England on the 1st of August, and would have reached the Cape of Good Hope a week sooner, if she had not been driven from the coast by the late storm. Every assistance was immediately given to put her into a proper condition for proceeding on her voyage.

While the necessary preparations for the future navigation were completing, a disaster happened with regard to the cattle which had been carried out in the Resolution. They had been conveyed on shore for the purpose of grazing. The bull, and two cows with their calves, had been sent to graze along with some other cattle; but Captain Cook was advised to keep the sheep, which were sixteen in number, close to the tents, where they were penned up every evening. During the night preceding the 14th, some dogs, having got in among them, forced them out of the pen, killed four, and dispersed the rest. Six of them were recovered the next day; but the two rams, and two of the finest ewes in the whole flock, were amongst those which were missing. Baron Plattenburg being at this time in the country, our commander applied to Mr. Hemmy, the lieutenant governor, and to the fiscal, for redress; and both these gentlemen promised to use their endeavours for the recovery of the lost sheep. It is the boast of the Dutch that the police at the Cape is so care-

fully executed, that it is scarcely possible for a slave, with all his cunning and knowledge of the country, to effectuate his escape; nevertheless Capt. Cook's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expense, by employing some of the meanest and lowest scoundrels in the place, he recovered all but the two ewes, of which he never could hear the least tidings. The character given of the fellows to whom the captain was obliged to have recourse, by the person who recommended their being applied to, was, that for a ducatoon they would cut their master's throat, burn the house over his head, and bury him and the whole family in the ashes.

In the supplies which were provided at the Cape, Captain Cook paid particular regard to the nature and extent of his undertaking. As it was impossible to tell when or where he might meet with a place which could so amply contribute to his necessities, he thought proper to lay in for both ships such a store of provisions as would be sufficient to last them for two years and upwards.

Our commander having given a copy of his instructions to Captain Clerke, and an order directing him how to proceed in case of a separation, weighed from Table Bay on the 30th of November, though it was not till the 3d of December that he got clear of the land. On the 6th the ships passed through several spots of water nearly of a red colour. When some of this was taken up, it was found to contain a large quantity of small animals, of a reddish hue, and which the microscope discovered to resemble a crayfish. As our navigators pursued their course to the south-east, a very strong gale, which they had from the westward, was followed by a mountainous sea, in consequence of which the Resolution rolled and tumbled so much, that the cattle on board were with the utmost difficulty preserved. Soon after, several of the goats, especially the males, together with

some sheep, died, notwithstanding all the care that was exercised by our people. This misfortune was chiefly owing to the coldness of the weather, which now began to be felt in the most sensible manner.

On the 12th land was seen, which, upon a nearer approach, was found to consist of two islands. That which lies most to the south, and is the largest, was judged by Captain Cook to be about fifteen leagues in circuit. The northerly one is about nine leagues in circuit; and the two islands are at the distance of five leagues from each other. As the ships passed through the channel between them, our voyagers could not discover, with the assistance of their best glasses, either tree or shrub on either of them. They seemed to have a rocky and bold shore, and their surface is for the most part composed of barren mountains, the summits and sides of which were covered with snow. These two islands, together with four others which lie from nine to twelve degrees of longitude more to the east, and nearly in the same latitude, had been discovered by Captains Marion du Fresne and Crozet, French navigators, in January, 1772, on their passage in two ships from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine Islands. As no names had been assigned to them in a chart of the Southern Ocean, which Capt. Crozet communicated to Capt. Cook in 1775, our commander distinguished the two larger ones by calling them Prince Edward's Islands, after his Majesty's fourth son. To the other four, with a view of commemorating the discoverers, he gave the name of Marion's and Crozet's Islands.

Though it was now the middle of summer in this hemisphere, the weather was not less severe than what is generally met with in England in the very depth of winter. Instead, however, of being discouraged by this circumstance, the captain shaped his course in such a manner as to pass to the southward of Marion's and Crozet's Islands, that he might get into the latitude of land which had been discovered

by M. de Kergulen, another French navigator It was part of our commander's instructions to examine whether a good harbour might not here be found.

As our voyagers, on the 24th, were steering to the eastward, a fog clearing up a little, which had involved them for some time, and which had rendered their navigation both tedious and dangerous, land was seen bearing south-south-east. Upon a nearer approach, it was found to be an island of considerable height, and about three leagues in circuit. Another island of the same magnitude was soon after discovered, and in a short space a third, besides some smaller ones. At times, as the fog broke away, there was the appearance of land over the small islands, and Captain Cook entertained thoughts of steering for it, by running in between them. But, on drawing nearer, he found that so long as the weather continued foggy, this would be a perilous attempt: for if there should be no passage, or if our people should meet with any sudden danger, there was such a prodigious sea breaking on all the shores in a frightful surf, that it would have been impossible for the vessels to have got off. At the same time the captain saw another island; and as he did not know how many more might succeed, he judged it prudent, in order to avoid getting entangled among unknown islands in a thick fog, to wait for clearer weather.

The island last mentioned is a high round rock, which was named Bligh's Cap. Our commander had received some very slight information concerning it at Teneriffe, and his sagacity in tracing it was such as immediately led him to determine that it was the same that M. de Kergulen had called the Island of Rendezvous. His reason for giving it that name is not very apparent; for nothing can rendezvous upon it but fowls of the air, it being certainly inaccessible to every other animal. The weather beginning to clear up, Capt. Cook steered in for the land, of which

a faint view had been obtained in the morning. This was Kergeulen's Land. No sooner had our navigators got off Cape Francois than they observed the coast to the southward to be much indented by projecting points and bays ; from which circumstance they were sure of finding a harbour. Accordingly such a harbour was speedily discovered, in which the ships came to anchor on the 25th, being Christmas day. Upon landing, our commander found the shore almost entirely covered with penguins and other birds, and with seals. The latter, which were not numerous, having been unaccustomed to visitors, were so insensible of fear, that as many as were wanted for the purpose of making use of their fat or blubber, were killed without difficulty. Fresh water was so plentiful, that every gully afforded a large stream ; but not a single tree or shrub, or the least sign of it, could be met with, and but very little herbage of any sort. Here the captain displayed the British flag, and named the place Christmas Harbour, from our voyagers having arrived in it on that festival.

From this desolate coast Captain Cook took his departure on the 31st, intending agreeably to his instructions, to touch next at New Zealand, that he might obtain a supply of water, take in wood, and make hay for the cattle. Their number was now considerably diminished ; for two young bulls, one of the heifers, two rams, and several of the goats, had died while our navigators were employed in exploring Kerguelen's Land. For some time they had fresh gales, and tolerably clear weather. But, on the 3rd of January, 1777, the wind veered to the north, where it continued eight days, and was attended with so thick a fog, that the ships ran above three hundred leagues in the dark. Occasionally the weather would clear up, and give our people a sight of the sun : but this happened very seldom, and was always of short continuance. However, amidst all the darkness pro-

duced by the fog, the vessels, though they seldom saw each other, were so fortunate, in consequence of frequently firing guns as signals, that they did not lose company. On the 12th, the northerly winds ended in a calm. This was succeeded in a little time by a wind from the southward, which brought on a rain that continued for twenty-four hours. At the end of the rain the wind freshened, and veering to the west, and north-west, was followed by fair and clear weather.

Nothing very remarkable occurred to our voyagers till the 24th, when they discovered the coast of Van Dieman's Land; and, on the 26th, the ships came to an anchor in Adventure Bay. Captain Cook, as soon as he had anchored, ordered the boats to be hoisted out, in one of which he went himself to look for the most commodious place for obtaining the necessary supplies. Wood and water were found in abundance, and in places sufficiently convenient, but grass, which was most wanted, was scarce, and at the same time very coarse. Necessity, however, obliged our people to put up with such as could be procured.

On the 28th, the English, who were employed in cutting wood, were agreeably surprised by a visit from some of the natives. They consisted of eight men and a boy, who approached our voyagers not only without fear, but with the most perfect confidence and freedom. There was only a single person among them who had any thing which bore the least appearance of a weapon, and that was no more than a stick about two feet long, and pointed at one end. These people were quite naked, and wore no kind of ornaments, unless some large punctures or ridges raised in different parts of their bodies, either in straight or curved lines, may be considered in that light. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with red ointment, and the faces of some of them were painted with the same composition. Every present which Captain Cook made them they

received without the least appearance of satisfaction. Of bread and elephant fish, which were offered them, they refused to taste, but showed that they were fond of birds as an article of food. Two pigs, which the captain had brought on shore, having come within their reach, they seized them by the ears, as a dog would have done, and would have carried them off immediately, apparently with no other intention than to kill them. Our commander being desirous of knowing the use of the stick which one of the Indians had in his hand, he signified, by signs, his wishes to that purpose. His intimations so far succeeded, that one of them set up a piece of wood as a mark, and threw it at the distance of about twenty yards. There was but little reason to commend his dexterity, for, after repeated trials, he was still very wide from his object. Omai, to convince the natives how much our weapons were superior to theirs, then fired his musket at the mark, by which they were so greatly terrified, that, notwithstanding all the endeavours of the English to quiet their minds, they ran instantly into the woods.

After the retreat of the Indians, Captain Cook, judging that their fears would prevent their remaining near enough to observe what passed, ordered the two pigs, being a boar and a sow, to be carried about a mile within the head of the bay, and saw them left there by the side of a fresh-water brook. It was at first his benevolent intention to make an additional present to Van Dieman's Land of a young bull and cow, together with some sheep and goats. But, upon reflection, he laid aside this design, being persuaded that the natives would destroy them, from their incapacity of entering into his views with regard to the improvement of their country. As pigs are animals which soon become wild, and are fond of the thickest cover of the woods, there was the greater probability of their being preserved. For the accommodation of the other cattle, an open place must have been chosen.

in which situation they could not possibly have been concealed many days.

On the 29th, about twenty of the inhabitants, men and boys, joined Capt. Cook, and such of his people as had landed with him, without manifesting the least sign of fear or distrust. It was remarkable that one of the Indians was conspicuously deformed; nor was he more distinguished by the bump upon his back than by the drollery of his gestures, and the humour of his speeches, which had the appearance of being intended for the entertainment of our voyagers. Unfortunately the language in which he spoke to them was wholly unintelligible. To each of the group the captain gave a string of beads, and a medal which they seemed to receive with some satisfaction. On iron and iron tools they appeared to set no value. There was reason to believe that they were even ignorant of fish-hooks; and yet it is difficult to suppose that a people who inhabit a sea-coast, and who were not observed to derive any part of their sustenance from the productions of the ground, should be unacquainted with some mode of catching fish. However, they were never seen to be thus employed, nor was any canoe or vessel discovered by which they could go upon the water. Though they had rejected the kind of fish which had been offered them, it was evident that shell-fish made a part of their food.

After Capt. Cook had left the shore, several women and children made their appearance, and were introduced to Lieut. King by some of the men that attended them. These females (a kangaroo skin excepted, which was tied over their shoulders, and seemed to be intended to support their infants) were as naked and as black as the men, and had their bodies marked with scars in the same manner. Many of the children had fine features, and were thought to be pretty; but a less favourable report was made of the women, and especially those advanced in years. Some of the gentlemen, however,

belonging to the Discovery, as our commander was informed, paid their addresses, and made liberal offers of presents, which were rejected with great disdain. It is certain that this gallantry was not very agreeable to the men, for an elderly man, as he observed it, ordered the women to retire. The order was obeyed, but, on the part of some of the females, with the appearance of a little reluctance.

On the present occasion, Captain Cook made some proper and pertinent reflections, which I shall deliver in his own words: "This conduct," says he "of Europeans among savages to their women is highly blameable, as it creates a jealousy in their men that may be attended with consequences fatal to the success of the common enterprise, and to the whole body of adventurers, without advancing the private purposes of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wishes. I believe it has generally been found amongst uncivilized people, that where the women are easy of access, the men are the first to offer them to strangers; and that, where this is not the case, neither the allurements of presents, nor the opportunity of privacy, will be likely to have the desired effect. This observation, I am sure, will hold good throughout all parts of the South Sea, where I have been. Why, then, should men act so absurd a part as to risk their own safety, and that of all their companions, in pursuit of a gratification which they have no probability of obtaining?"

While our navigators were at Van Dieman's Land, they were successful in obtaining a plentiful crop of grass for their cattle, and such as was far more excellent than what they had met with at their first going on shore. The quantity collected was judged by the captain to be sufficient to last till his arrival in New Zealand.

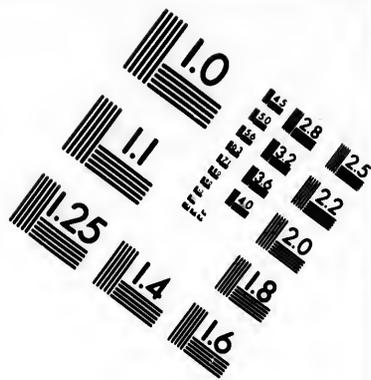
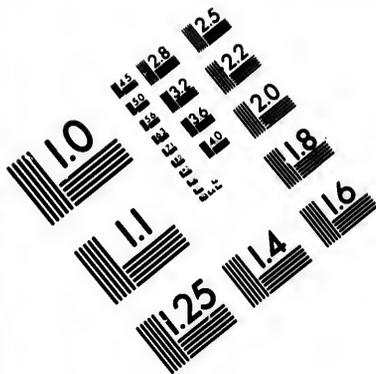
Van Dieman's Land had been visited twice before. That name had been given it by Tasman, who discovered it in 1642; from which time it had escaped

all notice of European navigators, till Capt. Furneaux touched at it in 1773. It is well known that it is the southern point of New Holland, which is by far the largest island in the world; indeed so large an island, as almost to deserve the appellation of a continent.

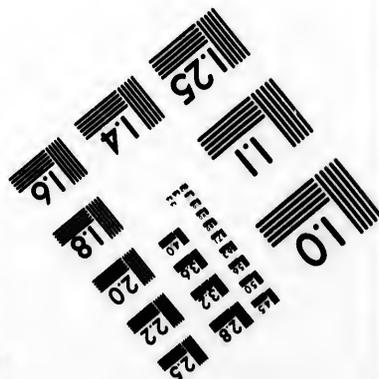
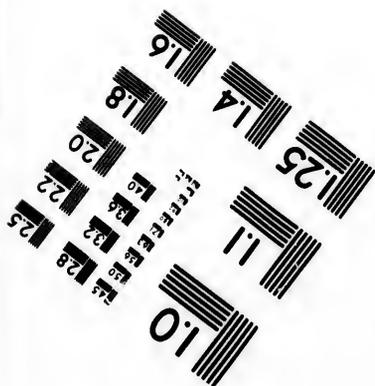
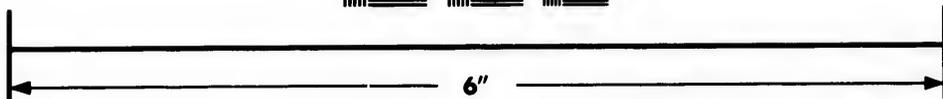
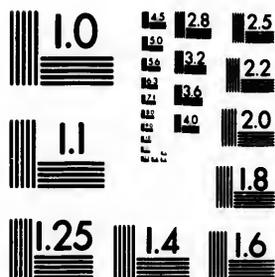
While Captain Cook was in this country, he neglected nothing which could promote the knowledge of science and navigation. Here, as every where else, he settled the latitude and longitude of places, marked the variations of the compass, and recorded the nature of the tides. He corrected likewise an error of Captain Furneaux, with respect to the situation of Maria's Islands; on which subject he has candidly remarked that his own idea is not the result of a more faithful, but merely of a second examination.

Mr. Anderson, during the few days in which the ships remained in Adventure Bay, exerted his usual diligence in collecting as full an account, as could be obtained in so short a period of time, of the natural productions and the inhabitants of the country. Little can be said concerning either the personal activity or genius of the natives. The first they do not seem to possess in any remarkable degree; and, to all appearance, they have less of the last than even the half-animated inhabitants of Terra del Fuego. Their not expressing that surprise which might have been expected from their seeing men so much unlike themselves, and things to which they had hitherto been utter strangers—that indifference for the presents of our people, and their general inattention, were sufficient testimonies that they were not endued with any acuteness of understanding. What the ancient poets tell us of Fauns and Satyrs living in hollow trees, is realised in Van Dieman's Land. Some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark, and which did not deserve the name of huts, were indeed found near the shore; but these seemed only to have been erected for temporary purposes.





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18  
19  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

The most comfortable habitations of the natives were afforded by the largest trees. These had their trunks hollowed out by fire, to the height of six or seven feet; and there was room enough in them for three or four persons to sit round a hearth made of clay. At the same time these places of shelter are durable; for the people take care to leave one side of the tree sound, which is sufficient to keep it in luxuriant growth. The inhabitants of Van Dieman's Land are undoubtedly from the same stock with those of the northern parts of New Holland. Their language, indeed, appeared to be different; but how far the difference extended, our voyagers could not have an opportunity of determining. With regard to the New Hollanders in general, there is reason to suppose that they originally came from the same place with all the Indians of the South Sea.

On the 30th of January, 1777, Captain Cook sailed from Adventure Bay, and, on the 12th of February, came to an anchor at his old station of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand. Being unwilling to lose any time, he commenced his operations that very afternoon. By his order, several of the empty water casks were immediately landed, and a place was begun to be cleared for setting up the two observatories, and the erection of tents to accommodate a guard and the rest of the company, whose business might require them to stay on shore. Our navigators had not long been at anchor, before a number of canoes, filled with natives, came alongside of the ships. However, very few of them would venture on board, which appeared the more extraordinary, as the captain was well known to them all, and they could not be insensible how liberally he had behaved to them on former occasions. There was one man in particular whom he had treated with remarkable kindness during the whole of his last stay in this place, and yet neither professions of friendship, nor presents, could prevail upon him to enter the Resolution.

There was a real cause for this shyness on the part of the New Zealanders. A dreadful event had happened to some of Captain Furneaux's crew while he lay in Queen Charlotte's Sound, after he had finally separated from Captain Cook in the former voyage. Ten men, who had been sent out in the large cutter to gather wild greens for the ship's company, were killed in a skirmish with the natives. What was the cause of the quarrel could not be ascertained, as not one of the company survived to relate the story. Lieutenant Burney, who was ordered to go in search of them, found only some fragments of their bodies, from which it appeared that they had been converted into the food of the inhabitants. It was the remembrance of this event, and the fear of its being revenged, which now rendered the New Zealanders so fearful of entering the English vessels. From the conversation of Omai, who was on board the Adventure when the melancholy affair happened, they knew that it could not be unknown to Captain Cook. The captain, therefore, judged it necessary to use every endeavour to assure them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not disturb them on account of the catastrophe. It was most probable in consequence of this assurance that they soon laid aside all manner of restraint and distrust.

In the mean while the operations for refitting the ships, and for obtaining provisions, were carried on with great vigour. For the protection of the party on shore, our commander appointed a guard of ten marines, and ordered arms for all the workmen, with whom Mr. King and two or three petty officers constantly remained. A boat was never sent to a considerable distance without being armed, or without being under the direction of such officers as might be depended upon, and who were well acquainted with the natives. In Captain Cook's former visits to this country, he had never made use of such precautions, nor was he now convinced of their absolute

necessity. But, after the tragical fate of the crew of the Adventure's boat in this Sound, and of Capt. Marion du Fresne and some of his people in the Bay of Islands, in 1772, it was impossible to free our navigators from all apprehensions of experiencing a similar calamity.

Whatever suspicions the inhabitants might at first entertain that their acts of barbarity would be revenged, they very speedily became so perfectly easy upon the subject, as to take up their residence close to our voyagers; and the advantage of their coming to live with the English was not inconsiderable. Every day, when the weather would permit, some of them went out to catch fish; and our people generally obtained, by exchanges, a good share of the produce of their labours, in addition to the supply which was afforded by our own nets and lines. Nor was there a deficiency of vegetable refreshments, to which was united spruce beer for drink; so that if the seeds of the scurvy had been contracted by any of the crew, they would speedily have been removed by such a regimen. The fact, however, was, that there were only two invalids upon the sick lists in both ships.

Curiosities, fish, and women, were the articles of commerce supplied by the New Zealanders. The two first always came to a good market; but the latter did not happen at this time to be an acceptable commodity. Our seamen had conceived a dislike to these people, and were either unwilling or afraid to associate with them—the good effect of which was, that our commander knew no instance of a man's quitting his station to go to the habitations of the Indians. A connexion with women it was out of Captain Cook's power to prevent; but he never encouraged it, and was always fearful of its consequences. Many indeed are of opinion that such an intercourse is a great security among savages; but if this should ever be the case with those who remain

and settle among them, it is generally otherwise with respect to travellers and transient visitors. In such a situation as that of our navigators, a connexion with the women of the natives betrays more men than it saves. "What else," says the captain, "can reasonably be expected, since all their views are selfish, without the least mixture of regard or attachment? My own experience at least, which has been extensive, has not pointed out to me one instance to the contrary."

Amongst the persons who occasionally visited the English was a chief of the name of Kahoorā, who, as Capt. Cook was informed, had headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people, and had himself killed Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded. This man our commander was strongly solicited to put to death, even by some of the natives! and Omai was perfectly eager and violent upon the subject. To these solicitations the captain paid not the least degree of attention. He even admired Kahoorā's courage, and was not a little pleased with the confidence with which he had put himself into his power. Kahoorā had placed his whole safety in the declarations that Captain Cook had uniformly made to the New Zealanders, which were, that he had always been a friend to them all, and would continue to be so, unless they gave him cause to act otherwise; that as to their inhuman treatment of our people, he should think no more of it, the transaction having happened long ago, and when he was not present; but that if ever they made a second attempt of the same kind, they might rest assured of feeling the weight of his resentment.

While our commander, on the 16th, was making an excursion for the purpose of collecting food for his cattle, he embraced the opportunity, to inquire, as accurately as possible, into the circumstances which had attended the melancholy fate of our countrymen. Omai was his interpreter on this occasion. The

result of the inquiry was, that the quarrel first took its rise from some thefts, in the commission of which the natives were detected, that there was no premeditated plan of bloodshed; and that if these thefts had not unfortunately been too hastily resented, no mischief would have happened. Kahoorá's greatest enemies, and even the very men who had most earnestly solicited his destruction, confessed at the same time that he had no intention of quarrelling with Captain Furneaux's people, and much less of killing any of them, till the fray had actually commenced.

Capt. Cook continued in this his last visit to New Zealand, the solicitude he had formerly shown to be of some essential future service to the country. To one chief he gave two goats, a male and female with a kid; and to another two pigs, a boar and a sow. Although he obtained a promise from both these chiefs that they would not kill the animals which had been presented to them, he could not venture to place any great reliance upon their assurances.

It was his full intention, on his present arrival in Queen Charlotte's Sound, to have left not only goats and hogs, but sheep, together with a young bull and two heifers. The accomplishment, however, of this resolution depended either upon his finding a chief who was powerful enough to protect and keep the cattle, or upon his meeting with a place where there might be a probability of their being concealed from those who would ignorantly attempt to destroy them. Neither of these circumstances, happened to be conformable to his wishes. At different times he had left in New Zealand ten or a dozen hogs, besides those that had been put on shore by Capt. Furneaux. It will therefore be a little extraordinary if this race of animals should not increase and be preserved, either in a wild or a domestic state, or in both. Our commander was informed that Tiratou, a popular chief among the natives, had a number of cocks and hens, and one sow, in his separate possession. With

regard to the gardens which had formerly been planted, though they had almost entirely been neglected, and some of them destroyed, they were not wholly unproductive. They were found to contain cabbages, onions, leeks, purslain, radishes, mustard, and a few potatoes. The potatoes, which had first been brought from the Cape of Good Hope, were greatly meliorated by change of soil, and, with proper cultivation, would be superior to those produced in most other countries.

A great addition of knowledge was obtained during this voyage with respect to the productions of New Zealand, and the manners and customs of its inhabitants. The zeal of Captain Cook upon the subject was admirably seconded by the sedulous diligence of Mr. Anderson, who omitted no opportunity of collecting every kind and degree of information. I shall only so far trespass on the patience of my readers, as to mention a few circumstances tending to delineate the character of the natives. They seemed to be a people perfectly satisfied with the little they already possess; nor are they remarkably curious either in their observations or their inquiries. New objects are so far from striking them with such a degree of surprise as might naturally be expected, that they scarcely fix their attention even for a moment. In the arts with which they are acquainted, they show as much ingenuity, both in invention and execution, as any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances. Without the least use of those tools, which are formed of metal, they make every thing that is necessary to procure their subsistence, clothing, and military weapons; and all this is done by them with a neatness, a strength, and a convenience, that are well adapted to the accomplishment of the several purposes they have in view. No people can have a quicker sense of an injury done to them than the New Zealanders, or be more ready to resent it; and yet they want one characteristic of true bra-

very ; for they will take an opportunity of being insolent, when they think that there is no danger of their being punished. From the number of their weapons, and their dexterity in using them, it appears that war is their principal profession. Indeed, their public contentions are so frequent, or rather so perpetual, that they must live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other. From their horrid custom of eating the flesh of their enemies, not only without reluctance, but with peculiar satisfaction, it would be natural to suppose, that they must be destitute of every humane feeling, even with regard to their own party. This, however, is not the case ; for they lament the loss of their friends with a violence of expression which argues the most tender remembrance of them. At a very early age the children are initiated into all the practices, whether good or bad, of their fathers ; so that a boy or girl, when only nine or ten years old, can perform the motions, and imitate the frightful gestures, by which the aged are accustomed to inspire their enemies with terror. They can likewise keep the strictest time in their song ; and it is with some degree of melody that they sing the traditions of their forefathers, their actions in war, and other subjects. The military achievements of their ancestors the New Zealanders celebrate with the highest pleasure, and spend much of their time in diversions of this sort, and in playing upon a musical instrument, which partakes of the nature of a flute. With respect to their language, it is far from being harsh or disagreeable, though the pronunciation of it is frequently guttural ; nor, if we may judge from the melody of some kinds of their songs, is it destitute of those qualities which fit it to be associated with music. Of its identity with the languages of the other islands throughout the South Sea, fresh proofs were exhibited during the present voyage.

At the request of Omai Captain Cook consented

to take with him two youths from New Zealand. That they might not quit their native country under any delusive ideas of visiting it again, the captain took care to inform their parents, in the strongest terms, that they would never return. This declaration seemed, however, to make no kind of impression. The father of the youngest lad resigned him with an indifference which he would scarcely have shown at parting with a dog, and even stripped the boy of the little clothing he possessed, delivering him quite naked into the hands of our voyagers. This was not the case with the mother of the other youth. She took her leave of him with all the marks of tender affection, that might be expected between a parent and a child on such an occasion; but she soon resumed her cheerfulness, and went away wholly unconcerned.

On the 25th of the month, Captain Cook stood out of Queen Charlotte's Sound, and by the 27th, got clear of New Zealand. No sooner had the ships lost sight of land, than the two young adventurers from that country, one of whom was nearly eighteen years of age, and the other about ten, began deeply to repent of the step they had taken. It was the experience of the sea-sickness which gave this turn to their reflections, and all the soothing encouragement the English could think of was of but little avail. They wept both in public and in private, and made their lamentation in a kind of song, that seemed to be expressive of the praises of their country and people, from which they were to be separated for ever. In this disposition they continued for many days; but as their sea-sickness wore off, and the tumult of their minds subsided, the fits of lamentation became less and less frequent, and at length entirely ceased. By degrees their native country and their friends were forgotten, and they appeared to be as firmly attached to our navigators as if they had been born in England.

In the prosecution of the voyage, Captain Cook met with unfavourable winds; and it was not till the 20th of March that land was discovered. It was found to be an inhabited island, the name of which, as was learned from two of the natives who came off in a canoe, is Manglea. Our commander examined the coast with his boats, and had a short intercourse with some of the inhabitants. Not being able to find a proper harbour for bringing the ships to an anchorage, he was obliged to leave the country unvisited, though it seemed capable of supplying all the wants of our voyagers. The island of Manglea is full five leagues in circuit, and of a moderate and pretty equal height. It has, upon the whole, a pleasing aspect, and might be made a beautiful spot by cultivation. The inhabitants, who appeared to be both numerous and well fed, seemed to resemble those of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and the resemblance as far as could be judged in so short a compass of time, takes place with respect to their general disposition and character.

From the coast of Manglea, our commander sailed in the afternoon of the 30th, and on the next day land was again seen, within four leagues of which the ship arrived on the 1st of April. Our people could then pronounce it to be an island, nearly of the same appearance and extent with that which had so lately been left. Some of the natives speedily put off in their canoes, and three of them were persuaded to come on board the Resolution; on which occasion their whole behaviour marked that they were quite at their ease, and felt no kind of apprehension that they should be detained or ill-used. In a visit from several others of the inhabitants, they manifested a dread of approaching near the cows and horses; nor could they form the least conception of their nature. But the sheep and goats did not, in their opinion, surpass the limits of their ideas: for they gave our navigators to understand that they knew them to be

birds. As there is not the most distant resemblance between a sheep or a goat and any winged animal, this may be thought to be almost an incredible example of human ignorance. But it should be remembered, that excepting hogs, dogs, and birds, these people were strangers to the existence of any other land animals.

In a further intercourse with the natives, who had brought a hog, together with some plantains and cocoa-nuts, they demanded a dog from our voyagers, and refused every thing besides which was offered in exchange. One of the gentlemen on board happened to have a dog and a bitch, which were great nuisances in the ship; and these he might now have disposed of in a manner that would have been of real future utility to the island. But he had no such views in making them the companions of his voyage. Omai, however, with a good nature that reflects honour upon him, parted with a favourite dog which he had brought from England; and with this acquisition the people departed highly satisfied.

On the 3rd of April, Captain Cook dispatched Mr. Gore with three boats, to endeavour to get upon the island. Mr. Gore, himself, Omai, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Burney, were the only persons that landed. The transactions of the day, of which Mr. Anderson drew up an ingenious and entertaining account, added to the stock of knowledge gained by our navigators, but did not accomplish Captain Cook's principal object. Nothing was procured by the gentlemen from the island that supplied the wants of the ships. In this expedition, Omai displayed that turn for exaggeration with which travellers have so frequently been charged. Being asked by the natives concerning the English, their ships, their country, and the arms they made use of, his answers were not a little marvellous. He told these people that our country had ships as large as their island, on board which were instruments of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, that

several persons might sit within them. At the same time he assured the inhabitants that one of these guns was sufficient to crush the whole island at a single shot. Though he was obliged to acknowledge that the guns on board the vessels upon their coast were but small, he contrived, by an explosion of gunpowder, to inspire them with a formidable idea of their nature and effect. It is probable that this representation of things contributed to the preservation of the gentlemen in their enterprise on shore, for a strong disposition to retain them had been shown by the natives.

The island on which Mr. Gore, Mr. Anderson, Mr. Burney, and Omai had landed, is called Wateoo by the natives, and is a beautiful spot, having a surface composed of hills and plains, which are covered with a verdure, rendered extremely pleasant by the diversity of its hues. Its inhabitants are very numerous, and many of the young men were perfect models in shape; besides which they had complexions as delicate as those of the women, and appeared to be equally amiable in their dispositions. In their manners, their general habits of life, and their religious ceremonies and opinions, these islanders have a near resemblance to the people of Otaheite and its neighbouring isles, and their language was well understood both by Omai and the two New Zealanders.

The next place visited by Captain Cook was a small island called Wennoa-ette, or Otakootai, to which Mr. Gore was sent at the head of a party, who procured about a hundred cocoa-nuts for each ship, and some grass, together with a quantity of the leaves and branches of young trees for the cattle. Though at this time no inhabitants were found in Wennoa-ette, yet as there remained indubitable marks of its being at least occasionally frequented, Mr. Gore left a hatchet and several nails, to the full value of what had been taken away.

On the 5th, our commander directed his course for

Harveys's Island, which was only at the distance of fifteen leagues, and where he hoped to procure some refreshments. This island had been discovered by him, in 1773, during his last voyage, when no traces were discerned of its having any inhabitants. It was now experienced to be well peopled, and by a race of men who appeared to differ much, both in person and disposition, from the natives of Watecoo. Their behaviour was disorderly and clamorous; their colour was of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce and rugged aspect. It was remarkable that not one of them had adopted the practice, so generally prevalent among the people of the Southern Ocean, of puncturing or tatooing their bodies. But notwithstanding this singularity, the most unequivocal proofs were exhibited of their having the same common origin; and their language, in particular, approached still nearer to the dialect of Otaheite than that of Watecoo, or Mangeea. No anchorage for the ships being found in Harvey's Island, Captain Cook quitted it without delay.

The captain being thus disappointed at all the islands he had met with since his leaving New Zealand, and his progress having unavoidably been retarded by unfavourable winds, and other unforeseen circumstances, it became impossible to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which he was still at so great a distance, though the season for his operations there was already begun. In this situation, it was absolutely necessary, in the first place, to pursue such measures as were most likely to preserve the cattle that were on board. A still more capital object was to save the stores and provisions of the ships, that he might the better be enabled to prosecute the discoveries to the north, which could not now be commenced till a year later than was originally intended. If he had been so fortunate as to have procured a supply of water and of grass, at any

of the islands he had lately visited, it was his purpose to have stood back to the south, till he had met with a westerly wind. But the certain consequence of doing this without such a supply would have been the loss of all the cattle; while, at the same time, not a single advantage would have been gained with regard to the grand ends of the voyage. He determined, therefore, to bear away to the Friendly Islands, where he was sure of being abundantly provided.

In pursuing his course agreeably to this resolution, our commander, on the 14th, reached Palmerston Island, where, and at a neighbouring islet, both of which were uninhabited, some little relief was obtained. The boats soon procured a load of scurvy-grass, and young cocoa-nut trees, which was a feast for the cattle; and the same feast, with the addition of palm-cabbage, and the tender branches of the *wharra* tree, was continued for several days. On the 16th, Omai, being on shore with the captain, caught with a scoop-net, in a very short time, as much fish as served the whole party for dinner, besides sending a quantity to both the ships. Birds too, and particularly men of war and tropic birds, were plentifully obtained, so that our navigators had sumptuous entertainment. Omai acted as cook upon this occasion. The fish and the birds he dressed with heated stones, after the manner of his country, and performed the operation with a dexterity and good humour which were greatly to his credit. From the islet before mentioned, twelve hundred cocoa-nuts were procured, which being equally divided among the crew, were of great use to them, both on account of the juice and the kernel. There is no water in the islets, which are comprehended under the name of Palmerston Island. If that article could be obtained, and good anchorage could be accomplished within the reef, Captain Cook would prefer this island to any of the uninhabited ones, for the mere purpose of refreshment. The quantity of fish that might be caught,

would be sufficient, and a ship's company could roam about unmolested by the petulance of the inhabitants.

Different opinions have been entertained concerning the formation of the low islands in the great ocean. From the observations which our commander now made, he was convinced that such islands are formed from shoals or coral banks, and consequently that they are always increasing.

After leaving Palmerston Island, Captain Cook steered to the west, with a view of making the best of his way to Anamocka. During his course, the showers were so copious that our navigators saved a considerable quantity of water. Finding that a greater supply could be obtained by the rain in one hour, than could be got by distillation in one month, the captain laid aside the still as a thing which was attended with more trouble than profit. At this time the united heat and moisture of the weather, in addition to the impossibility of keeping the ships dry, threatened to be noxious to the health of our people. It was, however, remarkable that neither the constant use of salt food nor the vicissitudes of climate, were productive of any evil effects. Though the only material refreshment our voyagers had received since their leaving the Cape of Good Hope was that which they had procured at New Zealand, there was not, as yet, a single sick person on board. This happy situation of things was undoubtedly owing to the unremitting attention of our commander in seeing that no circumstance was neglected, which could contribute to the preservation of the health of his company.

On the 28th of April, Capt. Cook touched at the Island of Komango; and, on the 1st of May, he arrived at Anamocka. The station he took was the same which he had occupied when he visited the country three years before; and it was probably almost in the same place where Tasman, the first

discoverer of this and some of the neighbouring islands, anchored in 1643. A friendly intercourse was immediately opened with the natives, and every thing was settled to the captain's satisfaction. He received the greatest civilities from Toobou, the chief of Anamocka; and Taipa, a chief from the Island of Komango, attached himself to the English in so extraordinary a manner, that, in order to be near them in the night, as well as in the day, he had a house brought on men's shoulders a full quarter of a mile, and placed close to the shed, which was occupied by our party on shore. On the 6th, our commander was visited by a great chief from Tongataboo, whose name was Feenou, and who was falsely represented by Taipa to be the king of the Friendly Isles. The only interruption to the harmony which subsisted between our people and the natives of Anamocka, arose from the thievish disposition of many of the inhabitants. They afforded frequent opportunities of remarking how expert they were in the business of stealing. Even some of the chiefs did not think the profession unbecoming their dignity. One of them was detected in carrying a bolt out of the ship, concealed under his clothes; for which Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and kept him confined till he had paid a hog for his liberty. After this act of justice, our navigators were no longer troubled with thieves of rank: but their servants, or slaves, were still employed in their dirty work, and upon them a flogging seemed to make no greater impression than it would have done upon the main-mast. When any of them happened to be caught in the act, so far were their masters from interceding in their favour, that they often advised our gentlemen to kill them. This, however, being a punishment too severe to be inflicted, they generally escaped without being punished at all; for of the shame as well as of the pain of corporeal chastisement, they appeared to be equally insensible. At

length Captain Clerke invented a mode of treatment which was thought to be productive of some good effect. He put the thieves into the hands of the barber, and completely shaved their heads. In consequence of this operation, they became objects of ridicule to their own countrymen; and our people, by keeping them at a distance, were enabled to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their rogueries.

The island of Anamocka being exhausted of its articles of food, Captain Cook proposed, on the 11th, to proceed directly for Tongataboo. From this resolution, however, he was diverted at the instance of Feenou, who warmly recommended in preference to it, an island, or rather a group of islands, called Hapae, lying to the north-east. There, he assured our voyagers, that they could be plentifully supplied with every refreshment in the easiest manner; and he enforced his advice by engaging to attend them thither in person. Accordingly Hapae was made choice of for the next station; and the examination of it became an object with the captain, as it had never been visited by any European ships.

On the 17th our commander arrived at Hapae, where he met with a most friendly reception from the inhabitants, and from Earoupa, the chief of the island. During the whole stay of our navigators, the time was spent in a reciprocation of presents, civilities, and solemnities. On the part of the natives were displayed single combats with clubs, wrestling and boxing matches, female combatants, dances performed by men, and night entertainments of singing and dancing. The English, on the other hand, gave pleasure to the Indians by exercising the marines, and excited their astonishment by the exhibition of fire-works. After curiosity had on both sides been sufficiently gratified, Captain Cook applied himself to the examination of Hapae, Lefooga, and other neighbouring islands. As the ships were

returning, on the 31st, from these islands to Anamocka, the Resolution was very near running foul upon a low sandy island, called Pootoo Pootooa, surrounded with breakers. It fortunately happened that the men had just been ordered upon deck to put the vessel about, and were most of them at their stations; so that the necessary movements were executed not only with judgment, but also with alertness. This alone saved the ship and her company from destruction. "Such hazardous situations," says the captain, "are the unavoidable companions of a man who goes upon a voyage of discovery."

During our commander's expedition to Hapae, he was introduced to Poulaho, the real king of the Friendly Isles, in whose presence it instantly appeared how groundless had been Feenou's pretensions to that character. Feenou, however, was a chief of great note and influence. By Poulaho, Captain Cook was invited to pass over to Tongataboo, which request he complied with after he had touched for two or three days at Anamocka. In the passage the Resolution was insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable coral rocks of different depths below the surface of the water. Notwithstanding all the care and attention of our people to keep her clear of them, they could not prevent her from striking on one of these rocks. The same event happened to the Discovery; but fortunately neither of the ships stuck fast, nor received any damage.

On the 10th of June Captain Cook arrived at Tongataboo, where the king was waiting for him upon the beach, and immediately conducted him to a small but neat house, which he was told was at his service during his stay in the island. The house was situated a little within the skirts of the woods, and had a fine large area before it, so that a more agreeable spot could not have been provided. Our commander's arrival at Tongataboo was followed by a succession

of entertainments similar to those which had occurred at Hapaeë, though somewhat diversified in circumstances, and exhibited with additional splendour. The pleasure, however, of the visit was occasionally interrupted by the thieveries of many of the inhabitants. Nothing could prevent their plundering our voyagers in every quarter, and they did so in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing which they did not attempt to steal; and yet, as the crowd was always great, the captain would not permit the sentinels to fire, lest the innocent should suffer with the guilty.

Captain Cook, on the 19th, made a distribution of the animals which he had selected as presents for the principal men of the island. To Poulaho, the king, he gave a young English bull and cow, together with three goats; to Mareewagee, a chief of consequence, a Cape ram and two ewes; and to Feenou, a horse and a mare. He likewise left in the island a young boar and three young sows, of the English breed; and two rabbits, a buck and a doe. Omai, at the same time, was instructed to represent the importance of these animals, and to explain, as far as he was capable, the manner in which they should be preserved and treated. Even the generosity of the captain was not without its inconveniences. It soon appeared that some were dissatisfied with the allotment of the animals, for next morning two kids and two turkey-cocks were missing. As our commander could not suppose that this was an accidental loss, he determined to have them again. The first step he took was to seize on three canoes that happened to be alongside the ships; after which he went on shore, and having found the king, his brother Feenou, and some other chiefs, he immediately put a guard over them, and gave them to understand that they must remain under restraint, till not only the kids and the turkeys, but the rest of the things which at different times had been stolen from our voyagers.

should be restored. This bold step of Captain Cook was attended with a very good effect. Some of the articles which had been lost were instantly brought back, and such good assurances were given with regard to the remainder, that in the afternoon the chiefs were released. It was a happy circumstance with respect to this transaction, that it did not abate the future confidence of Poulaho and his friends in the captain's kind and generous treatment.

On the 5th of July there was an eclipse of the sun, which, however, in consequence of the unfavourable weather, was very imperfectly observed. Happily the appointment was of little consequence, as the longitude was more than sufficiently determined by lunar observation.

Captain Cook sailed from Tongataboo on the 10th, and two days after he came to anchor at the island of Middleburg, or Eooa, as it is called by the inhabitants. Here he was immediately visited by Taoofoa, the chief, with whom he had formerly been acquainted. The intercourse now renewed was friendly in the highest degree, both with Taoofoa and the rest of the natives; and our commander endeavoured to meliorate their condition by planting a pine-apple, and sowing the seeds of melons and other vegetables in the chief's plantation. To this he was encouraged by a proof that his past endeavours had not been wholly unsuccessful. He had one day served up to him at his dinner a dish of turnips, being the produce of the seeds which he had left at Eooa in his last voyage.

The stay which Captain Cook made at the Friendly Islands was between two and three months, during which time, some accidental differences excepted, there subsisted the utmost cordiality between the English and the natives.

During the present visit to the Friendly Islands, large additions were made to the knowledge which was obtained in the last voyage, of the natural his-

tory and productions of the country, and the manners and customs of its inhabitants.

With respect to the religion of these Indians, Mr. Anderson maintains that they have very proper sentiments concerning the immateriality and immortality of the soul, and thinks himself sufficiently authorized to assert that they do not worship any thing which is the work of their own hands, or any visible part of the creation. The language of the Friendly Islands has the greatest imaginable conformity to that of the New Zealand, of Wateoo, and Mangeea. Several hundreds of the words of it were collected by Mr. Anderson, and amongst these are terms that express numbers reaching to an hundred thousand. Beyond this limit they never went, and probably were not able to go further; for it was observed that when they had got thus far they commonly used a word which expresses an indefinite number.

On the 17th of July, our commander took his final leave of the Friendly Islands, and resumed his voyage. An eclipse was observed in the night between the 20th and the 21st, and on the 8th of August land was discovered. Some of the inhabitants who came off in canoes, seemed earnestly to invite our people to go on shore; but Capt. Cook did not think proper to run the risk of losing the advantage of a fair wind, for the sake of examining an island which appeared to be of little consequence. Its name, as was learned from the natives, who spoke the Otaheite language, is Toobourai.

Pursuing his course, the captain reached Otaheite on the 12th, and steered for Obetepaha Bay, with an intention to anchor there, in order to draw what refreshments he could from the south-east part of the island, before he went down to Matavia. Omai's first reception amongst his countrymen was not entirely of a flattering nature. Though several persons came on board who knew him, and one of them was his brother-in-law, there was nothing remarkably

tender or striking in their meeting. An interview which Omai had, on the 13th, with his sister, was agreeable to the feelings of nature; for their meeting was marked with expressions of tender affection, more easy to be conceived than described. In a visit, likewise, which he received from an aunt, the old lady threw herself at his feet and plentifully bedewed them with tears of joy.

Captain Cook was informed by the natives that, since he was last at the island in 1774, two ships had been twice in Ohetepeha Bay, and had left animals in the country. These, on further inquiry, were found to be hogs, dogs, goats, one bull, and a ram. That the vessels which had visited Otaheite were Spanish, was plain from an inscription that was upon a wooden cross, standing at some distance from the front of a house which had been occupied by the strangers. On the transverse part of the cross was inscribed,

*Christus vincit.*

And on the perpendicular part,

*Carolus III. Imperat 1774.*

Our commander took this occasion to preserve the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing on the other side of the post,

*Georgius Tertius Rex.*

*Annis 1767, 1769, 1773, 1774, 1777.*

Whatever might be the intention of the Spaniards in their visit to the island, it ought to be remembered to their honour, that they behaved so well to the inhabitants, as always to be spoken of in the strongest expressions of esteem and veneration.

Captain Cook had at this time an important affair to settle. As he knew that he could now be furnished with a plentiful supply of cocoa-nuts, the liquor of which is an excellent and wholesome beverage, he was desirous of prevailing upon his people to consent to their being abridged, during their stay at Otaheite and the neighbouring islands, of their stated allow-

ance of spirits to mix with water. But as the stoppage of a favourite article, without assigning some reason for it, might create a general murmur, he thought it the most prudent to assemble the ship's company, and to make known to them the design of the voyage, and the extent of the future operations. To animate them in undertaking with cheerfulness and perseverance what lay before them, he took notice of the rewards offered by Parliament to such of his Majesty's subjects as should first discover a communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, in any direction whatever, in the northern hemisphere; and also to such as should first penetrate beyond the 89th degree of northern latitude. The captain made no doubt, he told them, that he should find them willing to co-operate with him in attempting, so far as might be possible, to become entitled to one or both of these rewards; but that, to give the best chance of success, it would be necessary to observe the utmost economy in the expenditure of the stores and provisions, particularly the latter, as there was no probability of getting a supply after leaving these islands. He strengthened his arguments by reminding them, that in consequence of the opportunity's having been lost in getting to the north this summer, the voyage must last at least a year longer than had originally been supposed. He entreated them to consider the various obstructions and difficulties they might still meet with, and the aggravated hardships they would endure, if it should be found necessary to put them on short allowance of any species of provisions in a cold climate. For these very substantial reasons, he submitted to them whether it would not be better to be prudent in time, and, rather than to incur the hazard of having no spirits left, when such a cordial would be most wanted, to consent to give up their grog now, when so excellent a liquor as that of cocoa-nuts could be substituted in its place. In conclusion. our com-

mander left the determination of the matter entirely to their own choice.

This speech, which certainly partook much of the nature of true eloquence, if a discourse admirably calculated for persuasion be entitled to that character, produced its full effect on the generous minds of English seamen. Captain Cook had the satisfaction of finding that this proposal did not remain a single moment under consideration, being unanimously and immediately approved of, without the least objection. By our commander's order, Capt. Clerke made the same proposal to his people, to which they likewise agreed. Accordingly grog was no longer served excepting on Saturday nights, when the companies of both ships had a full allowance of it, that they might drink the healths of their friends in England.

On the 24th, Captain Cook quitted the south-east coast of Otaheite, and resumed his old station in Matavia Bay. Immediately upon his arrival, he was visited by Otoo, the king of the whole island, and their former friendship was renewed—a friendship which was continued without interruption, and cemented by a perpetual succession of civilities, good offices and entertainments. One of our commander's first objects was to dispose of all the European animals which were in the ships. Accordingly he conveyed to Oparre, Otoo's place of residence, a peacock and hen, a turkey cock and hen, one gander and three geese, one drake and four ducks. The geese and ducks began to breed before our navigators left their present station. There were already, at Otoo's, several goats, and the Spanish bull, which was one of the finest animals of the kind that was ever seen. To the bull Captain Cook sent the three cows he had on board, together with a bull of his own; to all of which were added the horse and mare, and the sheep that had still remained in the vessels.

The captain found himself lightened of a very heavy burden, in having disposed of these passengers

It is not easy to conceive the trouble and vexation which had attended the conveyance of this living cargo, through such various hazards, and to so immense a distance. But, the satisfaction which our commander felt, in having been so fortunate as to fulfil his Majesty's humane design in sending such valuable animals to supply the wants of two worthy nations, afforded an ample recompense for the many anxious hours he had passed, before this subordinate object of his voyage could be carried into execution.

At this time a war was on the point of breaking out between the inhabitants of Eimeo and those of Otaheite, and by the latter Captain Cook was requested to take a part in their favour. With this request, however, though enforced by frequent and urgent solicitations, the captain, according to his usual wisdom, refused to comply. He alleged that as he was not thoroughly acquainted with the dispute, and the people of Eimeo had never offended him, he could not think himself at liberty to engage in hostilities against them. With these reasons, Otoo and most of the chiefs appeared to be satisfied; but one of them, Towha, was so highly displeased, that our commander never afterwards recovered his friendship.

Upon the present occasion, Captain Cook had full and undeniable proof that the offering of human sacrifices forms a part of the religious institutions of Otaheite. Indeed he was a witness to a solemnity of this kind, the process of which he has particularly described, and has related it with just sentiments of indignation and abhorrence. The unhappy victim, who was now offered to the object of worship, seemed to be a middle-aged man, and was said to be one of the lowest class of the people. But the captain could not learn, after all his inquiries, whether the wretch had been fixed upon on account of his having committed any crime which was deserving of death. It is certain that a choice

is generally made, either of such guilty persons for the sacrifices, or of common low fellows, who stroll about from place to place, without any visible method of obtaining an honest subsistence. Those who are devoted to suffer, are never apprized of their fate till the blow is given that puts an end to their being. Whenever, upon particular emergency, one of the great chiefs considers a human sacrifice to be necessary, he pitches upon the victim, and then orders him to be suddenly fallen upon and killed either with clubs or stones. Although it should be supposed that no more than one person is ever devoted to destruction on any single occasion at Otaheite, it will still be found that these occurrences are so frequent as to cause a shocking waste of the human race; for our commander counted no less than forty-nine skulls of former victims lying before the Morai, where he had seen another added to the number. It was apparent from the freshness of these skulls that no great length of time had elapsed since the wretches to whom they belonged had been offered up on the altar of blood.

There is reason to fear that this custom is as extensive as it is horrid. It is highly probable that it prevails throughout the widely diffused islands of the Pacific Ocean, and Captain Cook had particular evidence of its existing at the Friendly Islands. To what an extent the practice of human sacrifices was carried in the ancient world, is not unknown to the learned. Scarcely any nation was free from it in a certain state of society; and as religious reformation is one of the last efforts of the human mind, the practice may be continued, even when the manners are otherwise far removed from savage life. It may have been a long time before civilization has made such progress as to deprive superstition of its cruelty, and to divert it from barbarous rites to ceremonies which, though foolish enough, are comparatively mild, gentle, and innocent.

On the 5th of September an accident happened; which, though slight in itself, was of some consequence from the situation of things. A young ram of the Cape breed, which had been lambed and brought up with great care on board the ship, was killed by a dog. Desirous as Captain Cook was of propagating so useful a race among the Society Islands, the loss of a ram was a serious misfortune. It was the only one he had of that breed, and of the English breed a single ram was all that remained. Captain Cook, who had now come to the resolution of departing soon from Otaheite, accompanied on the 27th, Otoo to Oparre, and examined the cattle and poultry which he had consigned to his friend's care at that place. Every thing was in a promising way, and properly attended.

During this visit of our voyagers to Otaheite, such a cordial friendship and confidence subsisted between them and the natives, as never once to be interrupted by an untoward accident. Our commander had made the chiefs fully sensible that it was their interest to treat with him on fair and equitable terms, and to keep their people from plundering or stealing.

From Otaheite our voyagers sailed, on the 30th, to Eimeo, where they came to anchor on the same day. At this island, the transactions which happened were for the most part, very unpleasant. A goat which was stolen was recovered without any extraordinary difficulty, and one of the thieves was at the same time surrendered, being the first instance of the kind that our commander had met with in his connexion with the Society Islands. The stealing of another goat was attended with an uncommon degree of perplexity and trouble. As the recovery of it was a matter of no small importance, Captain Cook was determined to effect this at any rate; and accordingly he made an expedition across the island, in which he set fire to six or eight houses, and burned a number of war canoes. At last, in consequence of a preremp-

tory message to Maheine, the chief of Eimeo, that not a single canoe should be left in the country, or an end be put to the contest, unless the animal in his possession should be restored, the goat was brought back. This quarrel was as much regretted on the part of the captain, as it could be on that of the natives. It grieved him to reflect, that after refusing the pressing solicitations of his friends at Otaheite to favour their invasion of this island, he should find himself so speedily reduced to the necessity of engaging in hostilities against its inhabitants—and in such hostilities as perhaps had been more injurious to them than Towha's expedition.

On the 11th of October, the ships departed from Eimeo, and the next day arrived at Owharre harbour, on the west side of Huaheine. The grand business of our commander at the island was the settlement of Omai. In order to obtain the consent of the chiefs of the island, the affair was conducted with great solemnity. Omai dressed himself very properly on the occasion, brought with him a suitable assortment of presents, went through a variety of religious ceremonies, and made a speech, the topics of which had been dictated to him by our commander. The result of the negotiation was that a spot of ground was assigned him, the extent of which, along the shore of the harbour, was about two hundred yards; and its depth, to the foot of the hill, somewhat more. A proportionable part of the hill was included in the grant. The business having been adjusted in a satisfactory manner, the carpenters of both ships were employed in building a small house for Omai, in which he might secure his European commodities. At the same time, some of the English made a garden for his use, in which they planted shaddocks, vines, pine-apples, melons, and the seeds of several other vegetable articles. All these Captain Cook had the satisfaction of seeing in a flourishing state before he left the island.

Before our commander sailed from Huaheine, he had the following inscription cut on the outside of Omai's house :—

Georgius Tertius Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

*Naves.*

*Resolution*, Jas. Cook, Pr.

*Discovery*, Car. Clerke, Pr.

On the same day, Omai took his final leave of our navigators, in doing which he bade farewell to all the officers in a very affectionate manner. He sustained himself with manly resolution till he came to Captain Cook, when his utmost efforts to conceal his tears failed, and he continued to weep all the time that the boat was conveying him to shore. Not again to resume the subject, I shall here mention, that when the captain was at Ulietea, a fortnight after this event, Omai sent two men with the satisfactory intelligence that he remained undisturbed by the people of Huaheine, and that every thing succeeded well with him, excepting the loss of his goat, which had died in kidding. This intelligence was accompanied with a request that another goat might be given him, together with two axes. Our commander, esteeming himself happy in having an additional opportunity of serving him, dispatched the messengers back with the axes, and a couple of kids, male and female, which were spared for him out of the *Discovery*.

The fate of the two youths who had been brought from New Zealand must not be forgotten. As they were extremely desirous of continuing with our people, Capt. Cook would have carried them to England with him if there had appeared the most distant probability of their ever being restored to their own country. Tiarooa, the eldest of them, was a very well disposed young man, with strong natural sense, and a capacity of receiving any instruction. He seemed to be fully convinced of the inferiority of New Zealand to these islands, and resigned himself

though not without some degree of reluctance, to end his days in ease and plenty at Huaheine. The other had formed so strong an attachment to our navigators, that it was necessary to take him out of the ship, and carry him ashore by force. This necessity was the more painful, as he was a witty smart boy, and on that account a great favourite on board. Both these youths became a part of Omai's family.

Whilst our voyagers were at Huaheine, the atrocious conduct of one particular thief occasioned so much trouble, that the captain punished him more severely than he had ever done any culprit before. Besides having his head and beard shaved, he ordered both his ears to be cut off, and then dismissed him. It can scarcely be reflected upon without regret, that our commander should have been compelled to such an act of severity.

On the 3d of November, the ships came to an anchor in the harbour of Ohamaneno in the island of Ulietea. The observatories being set up on the 6th, and the necessary instruments having been carried on shore, the two following days were employed in making astronomical observations. In the night between the 12th and 13th, John Harrison, a marine, who was sentinel at the observatory, deserted, taking with him his arms and accoutrements. Capt. Cook exerted himself on this occasion with his usual vigour. He went himself in pursuit of the deserter, who, after some evasion on the part of the inhabitants, was surrendered. He was found sitting between two women, with the musket lying before him; and all the defence he was able to make was, that he had been enticed away by the natives. As this account was probably the truth, and as it appeared besides that he had remained upon his post till within ten minutes of the time when he was to have been relieved, the punishment which the captain inflicted upon him was not very severe.

Some days after, a still more troublesome affair of

the same nature happened. On the morning of the 24th, Captain Cook was informed that a midshipman and a seaman, both belonging to the Discovery, were missing; and it soon appeared that they had gone away in a canoe on the preceding evening, and had now reached the other end of the island. As the midshipman was known to have expressed a desire of remaining at these islands, it was evident that he and his companion had gone off with that intention. Though Captain Clerke immediately set out in quest of them with two armed boats and a party of marines, his expedition proved fruitless, the natives having amused him the whole day with false intelligence. The next morning an account was brought that the deserters were at Otaha. As they were not the only persons in the ships who wished to spend their days at these favourable islands, it became necessary for the purpose of preventing any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook, therefore, in order to convince the inhabitants that he was in earnest, resolved to go after the fugitives himself, to which measure he was determined from having observed, in repeated instances, that the natives seldom offered to deceive him with false information.

Agreeably to this resolution, the captain set out the next morning with two armed boats, being accompanied by Oreo, the chief of Ulietea, and proceeded immediately to Otaha. But when he had got to the place where the deserters were expected to be found, he was informed that they were gone over to Bolabola. Thither our commander did not think proper to follow them, having determined to pursue another measure, which he judged would more effectually answer his purpose. This measure was to put the chief's son, daughter, and son-in-law, into confinement, and to detain them till the fugitives should be restored. As to Oreo, he was informed that he was at liberty to leave the ship whenever he pleased:

and to take such methods as he esteemed best calculated to get our two men back ; that, if he succeeded, his friends should be released ; if not, that Captain Cook was resolved to carry them away with him. The captain added, that the chief's own conduct, as well as that of many of his people, in assisting the runaways to escape, and in enticing others to follow them, would justify any step that could be taken to put a stop to such proceedings. In consequence of this explanation of our commander's views and intentions, Oreo zealously exerted himself to recover the deserters ; for which purpose he dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, the sovereign of that island, acquainting him with what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two fugitives, and send them back. The messenger, who was no less a person than the father of Pootoe, Oreo's son-in-law, came, before he set out, to Captain Cook, to receive his commands, which were, not to return without the runaways, and to inform Opoony, that if they had left Bolabola, he must dispatch canoes in pursuit of them, till they should be finally restored. These vigorous measures were at length successful. On the 28th, the deserters were brought back : and as soon as they were on board, the three prisoners were released. Our commander would not have acted so resolutely on the present occasion, had he not been peculiarly solicitous to save the son of a brother officer from being lost to his country.

While this affair was in suspense, some of the natives, from their anxiety on account of the confinement of the chief's relations, had formed a design of a very serious nature, which was no less than to seize upon the persons of Captain Clerke and Captain Cook. With regard to Captain Clerke, they made no secret of speaking of their scheme the day after it was discovered. But their first and grand plan was to lay hold of Captain Cook. It was his custom to bathe every evening in fresh water, in doing which he fre-

quently went alone, and always without arms. As the inhabitants expected him to go as usual, on the evening of the 26th, they had determined at that time to make him a prisoner. But he had thought it prudent, after confining Oreo's family, to avoid putting himself in their power; and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers not to venture themselves far from the ships. In the course of the afternoon, the chief asked Captain Cook, three several times, if he would not go to the bathing-place; and when at last he found that the captain could not be prevailed upon, he went off with all his people. He was apprehensive, without doubt, that the design was discovered, though no suspicion of it was then entertained by our commander, who imagined that the natives were seized with some sudden fright, from which, as usual, they would quickly recover. On one occasion Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore were in particular danger. A party of the inhabitants, armed with clubs, advanced against them; and their safety was principally owing to Captain Clerke walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. The discovery of the conspiracy, especially so far as respected Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, was made by a girl whom one of the officers had brought from Huaheine. On this account, those who were charged with the execution of the design, were so greatly offended with her, that they threatened to take away her life, as soon as our navigators should leave the island; but proper methods were pursued for her security. It is a happy circumstance, that the affair was brought to light, since such a scheme could not have been carried into effect without being in its consequences productive of much distress and calamity to the natives.

Whilst Captain Cook was at Ulietea, he was visited by his old friend Oree, who, in the former voyages was chief, or rather regent, of Huaheine. Notwithstanding his now being, in some degree, reduced to

the rank of a private person, he still preserved his consequence, never appeared without a numerous body of attendants, and was always provided with such presents as indicated his wealth, and were highly acceptable.

The last of the Society Islands to which our commander sailed was Bolabola, where he arrived on the 8th of December. His chief view in passing over to this island was to procure from its monarch Opoony, an anchor which Monsieur de Bougainville had lost at Otaheite, and which had been conveyed to Bolabola. It was not from a want of anchors that Capt. Cook was desirous of making the purchase, but to convert the iron of which it consisted into a fresh assortment of trading articles, these being now very much exhausted. The captain succeeded in his negotiation, and amply rewarded Opoony for giving up the anchor.

Whilst our commander was at Bolabola, he received an account of those military expeditions of the people of this country which he had heard much of in each of his three voyages, and which had ended in the complete conquest of Ulietea and Otaha. The Bolabola men, in consequence of these enterprises, were in the highest reputation for their valour, and indeed were deemed so invincible, as to be the objects of terror to all the neighbouring islands. It was an addition to their fame that their country was of such small extent, being not more than eight leagues in compass, and not half so large as Ulietea.

Captain Cook continued to the last his zeal for furnishing the natives of the South Sea with useful animals. At Bolabola, where there was already a ram, which had originally been left by the Spaniards at Otaheite, he carried ashore a ewe that had been brought from the Cape of Good Hope; and he rejoiced in the prospect of laying a foundation, by this present, for a breed of sheep in the island. He left also at Ulietea, under the care of Oree, an English

boar and sow, and two goats. It may therefore be regarded as certain, that not only Otaheite, but all the neighbouring islands, will in a few years have their race of hogs considerably improved; and it is probable that they will be stocked with all the valuable animals which have been transported thither by their European visitors. When this shall be accomplished, no part of the world will equal these islands in the variety and abundance of the refreshments which they will be able to afford to navigators; nor did the captain know any place that excelled them, even in their present state.

Our commander was now going to take his final departure from Otaheite and the Society Islands. Frequently as they had been visited, it might have been imagined that their religious, political, and domestic regulations, manners, and customs, must by this time be thoroughly understood. A great accession of knowledge was undoubtedly gained in the present voyage; and yet it was confessed, both by Captain Cook and Mr. Anderson, that their accounts of things were still imperfect in various respects, and that they continued strangers to many of the most important institutions which prevail among the natives. There was one part of the character of several of these people, on which the well-regulated mind of the captain would not permit him to enlarge. "Too much," says he, "seems to have been already known, and published in our former relations, about some of the modes of life that made Otaheite so agreeable an abode to many on board our ships; and if I could now add any finishing strokes to a picture, the outlines of which have been already drawn with sufficient accuracy, I should still have hesitated to make this journal the place for exhibiting a view of licentious manners, which could only serve to disgust those for whose information I write."

From Mr. Anderson's account of the Otaheitans, it appears that their religious system is extensive

and in various instances singular. They do not seem to pay respect to one God as possessing pre-eminence, but believe in a plurality of divinities, all of whom are supposed to be very powerful. In different parts of the island, and in the neighbouring islands, the inhabitants choose for the objects of their worship those deities who they think are most likely to protect them, and to supply all their wants. If, however, they are disappointed in their expectations, they deem it no impiety to change their divinity, by having recourse to another, whom they hope to find more propitious and successful. In general, their notions concerning the deity are extravagantly absurd. With respect to the soul, they believe it, according to Mr. Anderson, to be both immaterial and immortal; but he acknowledges that they are far from entertaining those sublime expectations of future happiness which the christian revelation affords, and which even reason alone duly exercised, might teach us to expect.

Although seventeen months had elapsed since Captain Cook's departure from England, during which time he had not, upon the whole, been unprofitably employed, he was sensible that, with respect to the principal object of his instructions, it was now only the commencement of his voyage; and that, therefore, his attention was to be called anew to every circumstance which might contribute towards the safety of his people, and the ultimate success of the expedition. Accordingly he had examined into the state of the provisions whilst he was at the Society Islands; and as soon as he had left them, and had got beyond the extent of his former discoveries, he ordered a survey to be taken of all the boatswain's and carpenter's stores which were in the ships, that he might be fully informed of their quantity and condition, and by that means know how to use them to the greatest advantage.

It was on the 8th of December the very day on

which he had touched there, that our commander sailed from Bolabola. In the night between the 22d and 23d he crossed the Line, in the longitude of 203 deg. 15 min. east; and on the 24th land was discovered, which was found to be one of those low uninhabited islands that are so frequent in this ocean. Here our voyagers were successful in catching a large quantity of turtle, which supplied them with an agreeable refreshment; and here, on the 28th, an eclipse of the sun was observed by Mr. Bayley, Mr. King, and Captain Cook. On account of the season of the year, the captain called the land where he now was, and which he judged to be about fifteen or twenty leagues in circumference, Christmas Island. By his order, several cocoa-nuts and yams were planted, and some melon-seeds sown in proper places; and a bottle was left, containing this inscription:—

Georgius Tertius Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

*Naves,*

*Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*

*Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On the 2d of January, 1778, the ships resumed their course to the northward; and though several evidences occurred of the vicinity of land, none was discovered till the 18th, when an island made its appearance, bearing north-east by east. Soon after more land was seen, lying towards the north, and entirely detached from the former. The succeeding day was distinguished by the discovery of a third island in the direction of west-north-west, and as far distant as the eye could reach. In steering towards the second island, our voyagers had some doubt whether the land before them was inhabited; but this matter was speedily cleared up by the putting off of some canoes from the shore, containing from three to six men each. Upon their approach, the English were agreeably surprised to find that they spoke the language of Otaheite, and of the other countries which had lately been visited. These peo-

ple were at first fearful of going on board ; but when, on the 20th, some of them took courage, and ventured to do it, they expressed an astonishment, on entering the ship, which Captain Cook had never experienced in the natives of any place during the course of his several voyages. Their eyes continually flew from object to object, and by the wildness of their looks and gestures they fully manifested their entire ignorance with relation to every thing they saw, and strongly marked to our navigators that till this time they had never been visited by Europeans, or been acquainted with any of our commodities, excepting iron. Even with respect to iron, it was evident that they had only heard of it, or at most had known it in some small quantity brought to them at a distant period ; for all they understood concerning it was, that it was a substance much better adapted to the purposes of cutting, or the boring of holes, than any thing their own country produced. Their ceremonies on entering the ship, their gestures and motions, and their manner of singing, were similar to those which our voyagers had been accustomed to see in the places lately visited. There was likewise a further circumstance in which these people perfectly resembled the other islanders, and that was in their endeavouring to steal whatever came within their reach ; or rather to take it openly, as what would either not be resented, or not hindered. The English soon convinced them of their mistake, by keeping such a watchful eye over them, that they afterwards were obliged to be less active in appropriating to themselves every object that struck their fancy, and excited their desire of possession.

One order given by Captain Cook at this island was, that none of the boat's crew should be permitted to go on shore—the reason of which was, that he might do every thing in his power to prevent the importation of a fatal disease, which unhappily had already been communicated in other places. With

the same view, he directed that all female visitors should be excluded from the ships. Another necessary precaution taken by the captain was a strict injunction that no person known to be capable of propagating disorder should be sent upon duty out of the vessels. Thus zealous was the humanity of our commander to prevent an irreparable injury from being done to the natives. There are men who glory in their shame, and do not care how much evil they communicate. Of this there was an instance at Tongataboo in the gunner of the Discovery, who had been stationed on shore to manage the trade for that ship, and who, though he was well acquainted with his own situation, continued to have connexion with different women. His companions expostulated with him without effect, till Captain Clerke, hearing of the dangerous irregularity of his conduct, ordered him on board. If I knew the rascal's name, I would hand it up, as far as lies in my power, to everlasting infamy.

Mr. Williamsom being sent with the boats, to search for water, and attempting to land, the inhabitants came down in such numbers, and were so violent in their endeavours to seize upon the oars, muskets, and in short every thing they could lay hold of, that he was obliged to fire, by which one man was killed. This unhappy circumstance was not known to Captain Cook till after he had left the island, so that all his measures were directed as if nothing of that kind had happened.

When the ships were brought to an anchor, our commander went on shore: and, at the very instant of his doing so, the collected body of the natives all fell flat upon their faces, and continued in that humble posture, till by expressive signs, he prevailed upon them to rise. Other ceremonies followed; and the next day a trade was set on foot, for hogs and potatoes, which the people of this island gave in exchange for nails and pieces of iron, formed into some-

thing like chisels. So far was any obstruction from being met with in watering, that, on the contrary, the inhabitants assisted our men in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and readily performed whatever was required.

On the 22d, a circumstance occurred which gave the English room to suspect that the people of the island are eaters of human flesh. Not, however, to rest the belief of the existence of so horrid a practice on the foundation of suspicion only, Captain Cook was anxious to inquire into the truth of the fact, the result of which was its being fully confirmed. An old man, in particular, who was asked upon the subject, answered in the affirmative, and seemed to laugh at the simplicity of such a question. His answer was equally affirmative on a repetition of the inquiry; and he added, that the flesh of men was excellent food, or, as he expressed it, "savoury eating." It is understood that enemies slain in battle, are the sole objects of this abominable custom.

The island, at which our voyagers had now touched, was called Atooi by the natives. Near it was another island named Oneehow, where our commander came to an anchor on the 29th of the month. The inhabitants were found to resemble those of Atooi in their dispositions, manners, and customs; and proofs, too convincing, appeared that the horrid banquet of human flesh is here as much relished, amidst plenty, as it is in New Zealand. From a desire of benefiting these people by furnishing them with additional articles of food, the captain left them a ram-goat and two ewes, a boar and a sow pig of the English breed, and the seeds of melons, pumpkins, and onions. These benevolent presents would have been made to Atooi, the larger island, had not our navigators been unexpectedly driven from it by stress of weather. Though the soil of Oneehow seemed in general poor, it was observable that the ground was covered with shrubs and plants, some of which perfumed the air

with a more delicious fragraney than any that Capt. Cook had met with in any other of the countries which had been visited by him in this part of the world.

It is a curious circumstance with regard to the islands in the Pacific Ocean which the late European voyages have added to the geography of the globe, that they have generally been found to lie in groups or clusters. The single intermediate islands which have as yet been discovered, are few in proportion to the others, though there are probably many more of them that are still unknown, and may serve as steps by which the several clusters are in some degree connected together. Of the Archipelago now first visited, there were five only with which our commander became at this time acquainted. The names of these, as given by the natives, were Woahoo, Atooi, Oneehow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. To the whole group Captain Cook gave the appellation of Sandwich Islands, in honour of his great friend and patron, the Earl of Sandwich.

Concerning the island of Atooi, which is the largest of the five, and which was the principal scene of the captain's operations, he collected, in conjunction with Mr. Anderson, a considerable degree of information. The land, as to its general appearance, does not in the least resemble any of the islands that our voyagers had hitherto visited within the tropic on the south side of the equator, excepting so far as regards its hills near the centre, which slope gently towards the sea. Hogs, dogs, and fowls, were the only tame or domestic animals that were here found; and these were of the same kind with those that exist in the countries of the South Pacific Ocean. Among the inhabitants (who are of a middle stature, and firmly made) there is a more remarkable equality in the size, colour, and figure of both sexes, than our commander had observed in most other places. They appeared to be blessed with a frank and cheerful dis-

position; and, in Captain Cook's opinion, they are equally free from the fickle levity which distinguishes the natives of Otaheite, and the sedate caste discernible amongst many of those at Tongataboo. It is a very pleasing circumstance in their character, that they pay particular attention to their women, and readily lend assistance to their wives in the tender offices of maternal duty. On all occasions they seemed to be deeply impressed with a consciousness of their own inferiority, being alike strangers to the preposterous pride of the more polished Japanese, and of the ruder Greenlander. Contrary to the general practice of the countries that had hitherto been discovered in the Pacific Ocean, the people of the Sandwich Islands have not their ears perforated, nor have they the least idea of wearing ornaments in them, though, in other respects, they are sufficiently fond of adorning their persons. In every thing manufactured by them there is an uncommon degree of neatness and ingenuity; and the elegant form and polish of some of their fishing-hooks could not be exceeded by any European artist, even if he should add all his knowledge in design to the number and convenience of his tools. From what was seen of their agriculture, sufficient proofs were afforded that they are not novices in that art: and that the quantity and goodness of their vegetable productions may be attributed as much to skilful culture as to natural fertility of soil. Amidst all the resemblances between the natives of Atooi and those of Otaheite, the coincidences of their languages was the most striking, being almost word for word the same. Had the Sandwich Islands been discovered by the Spaniards at an early period, they would undoubtedly have taken advantage of so excellent a situation, and made use of them as refreshing places for their ships, which sail annually from Acapulca for Manilla. Happy, too, would it have been for Lord Anson, if he had known that there existed a group

of islands, half way between America and Tinian, where all his wants could have been effectually supplied, and the different hardships to which he was exposed, have been avoided.

On the 2d of February our navigators pursued their course to the northward, in doing which the incidents they met with were almost entirely of a nautical kind. The long-looked-for coast of New Albion was seen on the 7th of March, the ships being then in the latitude of 44 deg. 33 min. north, and in the longitude of 235 deg. 20 min. east. As the vessels ranged along the west side of America, Captain Cook gave names to several capes and head-lands which appeared in sight. At length, on the 29th, the captain came to an anchor at an inlet where the appearance of the country differed much from what had been seen before, being full of mountains, the summits of which were covered with snow; while the valleys between them, and the grounds on the sea-coast, high as well as low, were covered to a considerable breadth, with high straight trees, which formed a beautiful prospect, as of one vast forest. It was immediately found that the coast was inhabited, and there soon came off to the Resolution three canoes containing eighteen of the natives, who could not, however, be prevailed upon to venture on board. Notwithstanding this, they displayed a peaceable disposition, showed great readiness to part with any thing in exchange for what was offered them, and expressed a stronger desire for iron than for any other of our commercial articles, appearing to be perfectly acquainted with the use of that metal. From these favourable circumstances, our voyagers had reason to hope that they should find this a comfortable station to supply all their wants, and to make them forget the hardships and delays which they had experienced during a constant succession of adverse winds and boisterous weather, almost ever since their arrival upon the coast of America.

The ships having happily found an excellent inlet, the coasts of which appeared to be inhabited by a race of people who were disposed to maintain a friendly intercourse with strangers, Captain Cook's first object was to search for a commodious harbour; and he had little trouble in discovering what he wanted. A trade having immediately commenced, the articles which the inhabitants offered for sale, were the skins of various animals, such as bears, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, polecats, martins, and in particular, of the sea-otters. To these were added besides the skins in their native shape, garments made of them, another sort of clothing formed from the bark of a tree, and various different pieces of workmanship. But of all the articles brought to market, the most extraordinary were human skulls, and hands not yet quite stripped of their flesh, some of which had evident marks of their having been upon the fire. The things which the natives took in exchange for their commodities were knives, chisels, pieces of iron and tin, nails, looking-glasses, buttons, or any kind of metals. Glass beads did not strike their imagination, and cloth of every sort they rejected. Though commerce in general was carried on with mutual honesty, yet there were some among these people who were as much inclined to thieving as the islanders in the Southern Ocean. They were at the same time, far more dangerous thieves; for, possessing sharp iron instruments, they could cut a hook from a tackle, or any other piece of iron, from a rope, the moment that the backs of the English were turned. The dexterity with which they conducted their operations of this nature, frequently eluded the most cautious vigilance. Some slighter instances of deception in the way of traffic Captain Cook thought it better to bear with than to make them the foundation of a quarrel; and to this he was the rather determined, as the English articles were now reduced to objects of a trifling nature. In the progress of their

commerce, the natives would deal for nothing but metal; and at length brass was so eagerly sought for in preference to iron, that before our navigators quitted the place, scarcely a bit of it was left in the ships, excepting what belonged to the necessary instruments. Whole suits of clothes were stripped of every button; bureaux were deprived of their furniture; copper kettles, tin canisters, candlesticks, and whatever of the like kind could be found—all went to wreck; so that these Americans became possessor of a greater medley and variety of things from our people, than any other nation that had been visited in the course of the voyage.

Of all the uncivilized tribes which our commander had met with in his several navigations, he never found any who had such strict notions of their having a right to the exclusive property of every thing which their country produced, as the inhabitants of the Sound where he was now stationed. At first they wanted to be paid for the wood and water that were carried on board; and had the captain been upon the spot when these demands were made, he would certainly have complied with them; but the workmen in his absence, maintained a different opinion, and refused to submit to any such claims. When some grass, which appeared to be of no use to the natives, was wanted to be cut, as food for the few goats and sheep which still remained on board, they insisted that it should be purchased, and were very unreasonable in their terms; notwithstanding which, Captain Cook consented to gratify them as far as he was able. It was always a sacred rule with him, never to take any of the property of the people whom he visited, without making them ample compensation.

The grand operation of our navigators, in their present station, was to put the ships into a complete repair, for the prosecution of the expedition. While this business was carrying on, our commander took the opportunity of examining every part of the

Sound, in the course of which he gained a further knowledge of the inhabitants, who in general received him with great civility. In one instance he met with a surly chief, who could not be softened with presents, though he condescended to accept of them. The females of the place over which he presided showed a more agreeable disposition; for some of the young women expeditiously dressed themselves in their best apparel, and, assembling in a ~~place~~ welcomed the English to their village by joining in a song which was far from being harsh or disagreeable. On another occasion, the captain was entertained with singing. Being visited by a number of strangers on the 22d of April, as they advanced towards the ships, they all stood up in their canoes, and began to sing. Some of their songs, in which the whole body joined, were in a slow, and others in a quicker time; and their notes were accompanied with the most regular motions of their hands; or with beating in concert with their paddles, on the sides of their canoes; to which were added other very expressive gestures. At the end of each song they continued silent for a few moments, and then began again, sometimes pronouncing the word *Iiooe!* rather forcibly as a chorus.

Among the natives of the country there was one chief who attached himself to our commander in a particular manner. Captain Cook having, at parting, bestowed upon him a small present, he received in return a beaver skin of much greater value. This called upon the captain to make some addition to his present, with which the chief was so much pleased, that he insisted upon our commander's acceptance: the beaver skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond. Admiring this instance of generosity, and desirous that he should not suffer by his friendship, the captain gave him a new broad sword with a brass hilt, the possession of which rendered him completely happy.

On Captain Cook's first arrival in this inlet, he had honoured it with the name of King George's Sound; but he afterwards found that it was called Nootka by the natives. During his stay in the place, he displayed his usual sagacity and diligence in conjunction with Mr. Anderson, in collecting every thing that could be learned concerning the neighbouring country and its inhabitants; and the account is interesting, as it exhibits a picture of productions, people, and manners, very different from what had occurred in the Southern Ocean. I can only, as on former occasions, slightly advert to a few of the more leading circumstances. The climate, so far as our navigators had experience of it, was found to be in an eminent degree milder than that on the east coast of America in the same parallel of latitude; and it was remarkable that the thermometer, even in the night, never fell lower than 42 deg., while in the day it frequently rose to 60 degrees. With regard to trees, those of which the woods are chiefly composed are the Canadian pine, the white cypress, and the wild pine, with two or three different sorts of pine that are less common. In the other vegetable productions there appeared but little variety; but it is to be considered that at so early a season several might not yet have sprung up, and that many more might be concealed from our voyagers in consequence of the narrow sphere of their researches. Of the land animals, the most common were bears, deers, foxes, and wolves. The sea animals which were seen off the coast were whales, porpoises, and seals. Birds in general are not only rare as to the different species, but very scarce as to numbers: and the few which are to be met with are so shy, that in all probability they are continually harassed by the natives, either to eat them as food, or get possession of their feathers, which are used as ornaments. Fish are more plentiful in quantity than birds, but were not found in any great variety; and yet, from several circum-

stances, there was reason to believe that the variety is considerably increased at certain seasons. The only animals that were observed of the reptile kind were snakes and water-lizards, but the insect tribe seemed to be more numerous.

With respect to the inhabitants of the country, their persons are generally under the common stature, but not slender in proportion, being usually pretty full or plump, though without being muscular. From their bringing to sale human skulls and bones, it may justly be inferred that they treat their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty: notwithstanding which, it does not follow that they are to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity, for the circumstance now mentioned only marks a general agreement of character with that of almost every tribe of uncivilized men in every age, and in every part of the globe. Our navigators had no reason to complain of the disposition of the natives, who appeared to be a docile, courteous, good-natured people—rather phlegmatic in the usual cast of their tempers, but quick in resenting what they apprehend to be an injury, and easily permitting their anger to subside. Their other passions, and especially their curiosity, seemed to lie in some measure dormant, one cause of which may be found in the indolence that for the most part is prevalent amongst them. The chief employments of the men are those of fishing and of killing land or sea animals for the sustenance of their families, while the women are occupied in manufacturing their flaxen or woollen garments, or in other domestic offices. It must be mentioned to their honour that they were always properly clothed, and behaved with the utmost decorum, justly deserving all commendation for a bashfulness and modesty becoming their sex; and this was the more meritorious in them, as the male inhabitants discovered no sense of shame. In their manufactures and mechanic arts, these people have arrived at a greater degree of extent and

ingenuity both with regard to the design and the execution, than could have been expected from their natural disposition, and the little progress to which they have arrived in general civilization. Their dexterity in particular with respect to works of wood must principally be ascribed to the assistance they receive from iron tools, which are in universal use amongst them, and in the application of which they are very dexterous. Whence they have derived their knowledge of iron was a matter of speculation with Captain Cook. The most probable opinion is, that this and other metals have been introduced by way of Hudson's Bay and Canada, and thus successively have been conveyed across the continent from tribe to tribe. Nor is it unreasonable to suppose that these metals may sometimes be brought in the same manner from the north-western parts of Mexico. The language of Nootka is by no means harsh or disagreeable, for it abounds, upon the whole, rather with what may be called labial and dental than with guttural sounds. A large vocabulary of it was collected by Mr. Anderson.

Whilst Captain Cook was at Nootka Sound, great attention was paid by him, as usual, to astronomical and nautical subjects. The observations which he had an opportunity of making, were indeed so numerous, as to form a very considerable addition to geographical and philosophical science.

On the 26th, the repairs of the ships having been completed, every thing was ready for the captain's departure. When, in the afternoon of that day, the vessels were upon the point of sailing, the mercury in the barometer fell unusually low; and there was every other presage of an approaching storm, which might reasonably be expected to come from the southward. This circumstance induced our commander in some degree to hesitate, and especially as night was at hand, whether he should venture to sail, or wait till the next morning. But his anxious impatience to

proceed on the voyage, and the fear of losing the present opportunity of getting out of the sound, made a greater impression upon his mind, than any apprehension of immediate danger. He determined, therefore, to put to sea at all events; and accordingly carried his design into execution that evening. He was not deceived in his expectation of a storm. Scarcely were the vessels out of the sound before the wind increased to a strong gale with squalls and rain, accompanied with so dark a sky, that the length of the ships could not be seen. Happily the wind took a direction that blew our navigators from the coast; and though, on the 27th the tempest rose to a perfect hurricane, and the Resolution sprung a leak, no material damage ensued.

In the prosecution of the voyage to the north, and back again to the Sandwich Islands, the facts that occurred were chiefly of a nautical kind. Minutely to record these is not the purpose of the present work, and indeed would extend it to an unreasonable length.

From this long and important navigation, I can only select some few incidents that may be accommodated to the taste and expectation of the generality of readers.

One thing it is not improper here to observe, which is, that the captain in his passage along the coast of America, kept at a distance from that coast whenever the wind blew strongly upon it, and sailed on till he could approach it again with safety. Hence several great gaps were left unexplored, and particularly between the latitudes of 50 and 55 deg. The exact situation, for instance, of the supposed Straits of Anian was not ascertained. Every one who is acquainted with the character of our commander will be sensible, that if he had lived to return to the north in 1779, he would have endeavoured to explore those parts which had been left unexamined.

The first place at which Captain Cook landed after

his departure from Nootka Sound, was at an island of eleven or twelve leagues in length, the south-west point of which lies in the latitude of 50 deg. 94 min. north, and the longitude of 216 deg. 58 min. east. Here, on the 11th of May, at the foot of a tree, on a little eminence not far from the shore, he left a bottle, with a paper in it, on which was inscribed the names of the ships, and the date of the discovery. Together with the bottle, he enclosed two silver two-penny pieces of his Majesty's coin, which had been struck in 1772. These, with many others, had been given him by the Rev. Dr. Kaye, Dean of Lincoln: and our commander, as a mark of his esteem and regard for that learned and respectable gentleman, named the island, after him, Kaye's Island.

At an inlet where the ships came to an anchor on the 12th, and to which Captain Cook gave the appellation of Prince William's Sound, he had an opportunity not only of stopping the leak which the Resolution had sprung in the late storm, and of prosecuting his nautical and geographical discoveries, but of making considerable additions to his knowledge of the inhabitants of the American coast. From every observation which was made concerning the persons of the natives of this part of the coast, it appeared that they had a striking resemblance to those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders. Their canoes, their weapons, and their instruments for fishing and hunting, are likewise exactly the same, in point of materials and construction, that are used in Greenland. The animals in the neighbourhood of Prince William's Sound are in general similar to those which are found in Nootka. One of the most beautiful skins here offered for sale was, however, that of a small animal which seemed to be peculiar to the place. Mr. Anderson was inclined to think that it is the animal which is described by Mr. Pennant under the name of the *casan* marmot. Among the birds seen in this country were the white-headed eagle, the

shag, and the *alcedo* or great king-fisher, the colours of which were very fine and bright. The humming-bird also came frequently and flew about the ship while at anchor; but it can scarcely be supposed that it can be able to subsist here during the severity of winter. Water-fowl, upon the whole, are in considerable plenty; and there is a species of diver, about the size of a partridge, which seems peculiar to the place. Torsk and halibut were almost the only kinds of fish that were obtained by our voyagers. Vegetables of any sort were few in number; and the trees were chiefly the Canadian and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable height and thickness. The beads and iron that were found among the people of the coast must undoubtedly have been derived from some civilized nation: and yet there was reason to believe that our English navigators were the first Europeans with whom the natives had ever held a direct communication. From what quarter, then, had they got our manufactures?—most probably through the intervention of the more inland tribes from Hudson's Bay, or the settlements on the Canadian lakes. This, indeed, must certainly have been the case, if iron was known amongst the inhabitants of this part of the American coast, prior to the discovery of it by the Russians, and before there was any traffic with them carried on from Kamschatka. From what was seen of Prince William's Sound, Captain Cook judged that it occupied at least a degree and a half of latitude, and two of longitude, exclusive of the arms or branches, the extent of which is not known.

Some days after leaving this Sound, our navigators came to an inlet from which great things were expected. Hopes were strongly entertained that it would be found to communicate either with the sea to the north, or with Baffin's or Hudson's Bay to the east; and accordingly it became the object of very accurate and serious examination. The captain was

soon persuaded that the expectations formed from it were groundless; notwithstanding which, he persisted in the search of a passage, more indeed to satisfy other people than to confirm his own opinion. After a complete investigation of the inlet, indubitable marks occurred of its being a river. This river, without seeing the least appearance of its source, was traced by our voyagers as high as the latitude of 61 deg. 34 min., and the longitude of 201 deg., being seventy leagues from its entrance. During the course of the navigation, on the 1st of June, Lieut. King was ordered on shore to display the royal flag, and to take possession of the country in his Majesty's name. The lieutenant at the same time buried in the ground a bottle containing some pieces of English coin of the year 1772, and a paper on which the names of the ships were inscribed, and the date of the present discovery. The great river now discovered promises to vie with the most considerable ones already known, and by itself and its branches, lies open to a very extensive inland communication. If, therefore, the knowledge of it should be of future service, the time which was spent in exploring it ought the less to be regretted. But to Captain Cook, who had a much greater object in view, the delay that was hence occasioned was a real loss, because the season was advancing apace. It was, however, a satisfaction to him to reflect, that if he had not examined this very considerable inlet, it would have been assumed, by speculative fabricators of geography, as a fact, that there was a passage through it to the North Sea, or to Baffin's or Hudson's Bay. Perhaps, too, it would have been marked, on future maps of the world, with greater precision, and more certain signs of reality, than the invisible because imaginary, Straits of De Fecue and De Fonte. In describing the inlet, our commander had left a blank which was not filled up with any particular name: and therefore the Earl of Sandwich directed,

with the greatest propriety, that it should be called Cook's River.

All the natives who were met with during the examination of this river appeared, from every mark of resemblance, to be of the same nation with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound; but from the people of Nootka or King George's Sound they essentially differed, both in their persons and in their language. The only things which were seen among them, that were not of their own manufacture, were a few glass beads, the iron points of their spears, and knives of the same metal. Whencesoever these articles might be derived, it was evident that they had never had any immediate intercourse with the Russians; since, if that had been the case, our voyagers would scarcely have found them clothed in such valuable skins as those of the sea-otter. A very beneficial fur-trade might undoubtedly be carried on with the inhabitants of this vast coast. But, with a practicable northern passage, the situation is remote to render it probable that Great Britain should hence ever derive any material advantage; though it is impossible to say with certainty how far the spirit of commerce, for which the English nation is so eminently distinguished, may extend. The most valuable, or rather the only valuable skins, which Captain Cook saw on the west side of America, were those of the sea-otter; for as to the skins of all the other animals of the country, and especially of the foxes and martins, they seemed to be of an inferior quality.

It was on the 6th of June that our navigators got clear of Cook's River. Proceeding in the course of their discoveries, when they were sailing, on the 19th, amidst the group of islands, which were called by Behring, Schumagin's Islands, Captain Clerke fired three guns, and brought to, expressing by the proper signals that he wished to speak with Captain Cook. At this our commander was not a little

alarmed; and as no apparent danger had been remarked in the passage through the channel where the vessels now were, it was apprehended that some accident, such as springing a leak, must have happened. On Captain Clerke's coming on board the Resolution, he related that several natives had followed his ship; that one of them had made many signs, taking off his cap, and bowing after the manner of Europeans; and that at length he had fastened to a rope, which was handed down to him, a small thin wooden case or box. Having delivered his parcel safe, and spoken something, accompanied with more signs, the canoe dropped astern, and left the Discovery. On opening the box, a piece of paper was found folded up carefully, upon which something was written that was reasonably supposed to be in the Russian language. To the paper was prefixed the date 1778, and in the body of the note there was a reference to the year 1776. Although no person on board was learned enough to decipher the alphabet of the writer, his numerals sufficiently marked that others had preceded our voyagers in visiting this dreary part of the globe; and the prospect of soon meeting with men who were united to them in ties somewhat closer than those of our common nature, and who were not strangers to the arts and commerce of civilized life, could not but afford a sensible satisfaction to people who for such a length of time had been conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and of the North American continent. Captain Clerke was at first of opinion that some Russians had been shipwrecked; but no such idea occurred to Captain Cook. He rather thought that the paper contained a note of information, left by some Russian traders, to be delivered to the next of their countrymen who should arrive; and that the natives, seeing the English pass, and supposing them to be Russians, had resolved to bring off the note. Accordingly our commander pursued

his voyage without inquiring any further into the matter.

On the 21st, amongst some hills on the main land that towered above the clouds to a most amazing height, one was discovered to have a volcano, which continually threw up vast columns of black smoke. It does not stand far from the coast, and it lies in the latitude of 54 deg. 48 min., and in the longitude of 195 deg. 45 min. This mountain was rendered remarkable by its figure which is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the very summit. While, in the afternoon of the same day, during a calm of three hours, the English were fishing with great success for halibut, a small canoe, conducted by one man, came to them from an island in the neighbourhood. On approaching the ship, he took off his cap and bowed, as the natives had done who had visited the Discovery a day or two before. From the acquired politeness of these people, as well as from the note already mentioned, it was evident that the Russians must have a communication and traffic with them; and of this a fresh proof occurred in the present visitor; for he wore a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth or stuff, under the gut shirt or frock of his own country.

In the prosecution of the voyage, on the 26th, there was so thick a fog, that our navigators could not see a hundred yards before them; notwithstanding which, as the weather was moderate, the captain did not intermit his course. At length, however, being alarmed at the sound of breakers on one side of the ship, he immediately brought her to, and came to an anchor; and the Discovery, by his order, did the same. A few hours after, the fog having in some degree cleared away, it appeared that both the vessels had escaped very imminent danger. Providence, in the dark, had conducted them between rocks which our commander would not have ventured to pass through in a clear day, and had conveyed

them to an anchoring place as good as he could possibly have fixed upon, had the choice been entirely at his option.

On the 27th our voyagers reached an island that is known by the name of Oonalashka, the inhabitants of which behaved with a degree of politeness uncommon to savage tribes. A young man, who had overset his canoe, being obliged by this accident to come on board of the ship, went down into Capt. Cook's cabin upon the first invitation, without expressing the least reluctance or uneasiness. His own clothes being wet, the captain gave him others, in which he dressed himself with as much ease as any Englishman could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of some of the rest of the natives, it was evident that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to several of their customs. There was something, however, in the English ships that greatly excited their attention; for such as could not come off in canoes assembled on the neighbouring hills to look at them. In one instance it was apparent that the inhabitants were so far from having made any progress of politeness, that they were still immersed in the most savage manners; for as our commander was walking along the shore on the 29th, he met a group of them, of both sexes, who were seated on the grass at a repast, consisting of raw fish, which they seemed to eat with as much relish as persons in civilized life would experience from a turbot served up in the richest sauce. Soon after the vessels had come to an anchor at Oonalashka, a native of the island brought on board such another note as had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to Captain Cook, but, as it was written in the Russian language, and could be of no use to the English, though it might be of consequence to others, the captain returned it to the bearer, and dismissed him with a few presents, for which he expressed his thanks by making several low bows as he retired.

On the 2d of July our voyagers put to sea from Oonalashka, and, pursuing their course of navigation and discovery, came, on the 16th, within sight of a promontory, near which our commander ordered Lieutenant Williamson to land, that he might see what direction the coast took beyond it, and what the country produced. Accordingly Mr. Williamson went on shore, and reported on his return, that having landed on the point, and climbed the highest hill, he found that the furthest part of the coast in sight bore nearly north. At the same time he took possession of the country in his Majesty's name, and left a bottle in which was enclosed a piece of paper containing an inscription of the names of the ships, together with the date of the discovery. To this promontory he gave the name of Cape Newenham. The land as far as Mr. Williamson could see, produced neither tree nor shrub; but the lower grounds were not destitute of grass, and of some other plants, very few of which were in flower.

When our navigators, on the 3rd of August, had advanced to the latitude of 62 deg. 35 min., a great loss was sustained by them in the death of Mr. Anderson, the surgeon of the Resolution, who had been lingering under a consumption for more than twelve months. He was a young man of a cultivated understanding and agreeable manners, and well skilled in his own profession; besides which, he had acquired a considerable degree of knowledge in other branches of science. How useful an assistant he was to Capt. Cook, has often appeared in the present narrative. Had his life been spared, the public would undoubtedly have received from him such communications on various parts of the natural history of the several places that had been visited, as would justly have entitled him to very high commendation. The proofs of his abilities that now remain will hand down the name of Anderson, in conjunction with that of Cook, to posterity. Soon after he had breathed his last

land having been seen at a distance, which was supposed to be an island, our commander honoured it with the appellation of Anderson's Island. The next day he removed Mr. Law, the surgeon of the Discovery, into the Resolution, and appointed Mr. Samuel, the surgeon's first mate of the Resolution, to be surgeon of the Discovery.

On the 9th, Capt. Cook came to an anchor under a point of land to which he gave the name of Cape Prince of Wales, and which is remarkable by being the most western extremity of America hitherto explored. This extremity is distant from the eastern Cape of Siberia only thirteen leagues; and thus our commander had the glory of ascertaining the vicinity of the two continents, which had only been conjectured from the reports of the neighbouring Asiatic inhabitants, and the imperfect observations of the Russian navigators.

Resuming his course on the 10th, Captain Cook anchored in a bay, the land of which was at first supposed to be part of the island of Alashka, which is laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's map. But, from the figure of the coast, from the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, the captain soon began to think that it was more probably the country of the Tschutski, on the eastern extremity of Asia, which had been explored by Behring in 1728. In the result it appeared that this was in fact the case. Our commander became fully satisfied, in the further progress of his voyage, that Mr. Stæhlin's map must be erroneous, and he had the honour of restoring the American continent to that space which the geographer now mentioned had occupied with his imaginary island of Alashka.

From the Bay of St. Lawrence, belonging to the country of the Tschutski, our navigators steered on the 11th to the east, in order to get nearer to the coast of America. After that, proceeding to the north, they reached, on the 17th, the latitude of 70

deg. 33 min. On this day a brightness was perceived in the northern horizon, like that which is reflected from ice, and is commonly called the *blink*. This was at first but little noticed, from a supposition that there was no probability of meeting with ice so soon, and yet the sharpness of the air, and the gloominess of the weather, had for two or three days past seemed to indicate a sudden change. In about an hour's time, the sight of a large field of ice left Capt. Cook no longer in doubt with regard to the cause of the brightness of the horizon.

On the 2nd of October, our voyagers came within sight of the islands of Oonalashka, and anchored the next day in Samganoodha harbour.

Captain Cook, on the 8th, received, by the hands of an Oonalashka man, named Derramoushk, a very singular present, which was that of a rye-loaf, or rather a pie in the form of a loaf, for it enclosed some salmon highly seasoned with pepper. This man had the like present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the two captains, written in a character which none on board could understand. It was natural to suppose that the presents came from some Russians in the neighbourhood, and therefore a few bottles of rum, wine, and porter, were sent to these unknown friends in return, it being rightly judged that such articles would be more acceptable than any thing besides which it was in the power of our navigators to bestow. Corporal Lediard, of the marines, an intelligent man, was, at the same time, directed to accompany Derramoushk for the purposes of gaining further information, and with orders, if he met with any Russians, that he should endeavour to make them understand that our voyagers were Englishmen, and the friends and allies of their nation. On the 10th, the corporal returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers, who, with several others, resided at Egoochshac, where they had dwelling-houses, some storehouses, and a sloop of about thirty tons

burden. One of these men was either master or mate of this vessel; another of them wrote a very good hand, and was acquainted with figures; and all of them were sensible and well behaved persons, who were ready to give Captain Cook every possible degree of information. The great difficulty in the reception and communication of intelligence arose from the want of an interpreter.

While the ships lay at Oonalashka, our voyagers did not neglect to make a diligent inquiry into the productions of the island, and the general manners of the inhabitants. On these, as being in a great measure similar to objects which have already been noticed, it is not necessary to enlarge.

While the vessels lay in Samganoodha harbour, Captain Cook exerted his usual diligence in making nautical and astronomical observations. All things on the 26th, having been got ready for his departure, he put to sea on that day, and sailed for the Sandwich Islands; it being his intention to spend a few months there, and then to direct his course to Kamtschatka, so as to endeavour to reach that country by the middle of May in the ensuing summer.

On the 26th of November, when the ships had proceeded southward till they came to the latitude of 20 deg. 55 min., land was discovered, and proved to be an island of the name of Mawee, which had not hitherto been visited. It is one of the group of the Sandwich Islands. Another island was discovered on the 30th, which is called by the natives Owlyhee. As it appeared to be of greater extent and importance than any of the islands which had yet been visited in this part of the world, Captain Cook spent nearly seven weeks in sailing round and examining its coast. Whilst he was thus employed, the inhabitants came off from time to time in their canoes, and readily engaged in traffic with our voyagers. In the conduct of this business, the behaviour of the islanders was more entirely free from suspicion and reserve than

our commander had ever yet experienced. Not even the people of Otaheite itself, with whom he had been so intimately and repeatedly connected, had displayed such a full confidence in the integrity and good treatment of the English.

On the 17th, the ships came to an anchor in the bay which had been examined by Mr. Bligh, and which is called Karakakooa, by the inhabitants. At this time the vessels continued to be much crowded with natives, and were surrounded with a multitude of canoes. Captain Cook in the whole course of his voyages, had never seen so numerous a body of people assembled in one place; for besides those who had come off to the English in their canoes, all the shore of the bay was covered with spectators, and many hundreds were swimming round the ships, like shoals of fish. Our navigators could not avoid being greatly impressed with the singularity of this scene; and perhaps there were few on board that now lamented the want of success which had attended the endeavours of getting homeward the last summer by a northern passage. "To this disappointment," says the captain, "we owed our having it in our power to revisit the Sandwich Islands, and to enrich our voyage with a discovery, which, though the last, seemed in many respects to be the most important that had hitherto been made by Europeans throughout the extent of the Pacific Ocean."

Such is the sentence that concludes our commander's journal; and the satisfaction with which this sentence appears to have been written, cannot fail to strike the mind of every reader. Little did Captain Cook then imagine, that a discovery that promised to add no small honour to his name, and to be productive of very agreeable consequences, should be so fatal in the result. Little did he think that the island of Owhyhee was destined to be the last scene of his exploits, and the cause of his destruction

On the 26th, the captain had his first interview with Terreeoboo, the king of the island. The meeting was conducted with a variety of ceremonies, among which the custom of making an exchange of names, which amongst all the islands of the Pacific Ocean, is the strongest pledge of friendship, was observed. When the formalities of the interview were over, our commander carried Terreeoboo, and as many chiefs as the pinnace would hold, on board the Resolution. They were received on this occasion with every mark of respect that could be shown them; and, in return for a beautiful and splendid feathered cloak which the king bestowed on Captain Cook, the captain put a linen shirt on his majesty, and girt his own hanger round him.

On the 3d of February, being the day preceding the time which had been fixed for the sailing of the ships, Terreeoboo invited Captain Cook and Mr. King to attend him to the place where Kaoo resided. On their arrival, they found the ground covered with parcels of cloth, at a small distance from which lay an immense quantity of vegetables, and near them was a large herd of hogs. At the close of the visit, the greater part of the cloth, and the whole of the hogs and vegetables, were given by Terreeoboo to the captain and Mr. King, who were astonished at the value and magnificence of the present; for it far exceeded any thing of the kind which they had seen either at the Friendly or Society Islands. Mr. King had in so high a degree conciliated the affections, and gained the esteem of the inhabitants of Owhyhee, that, with offers of the most flattering nature, he was strongly solicited to remain in the country. Terreeoboo and Kahoo waited upon Captain Cook, whose son they supposed Mr. King to be, with a formal request that he might be left behind. To avoid giving a positive refusal to an offer which was so kindly intended, the captain told them that he could not part with Mr. King at that time, but that on his

return to the island next year, he would endeavour to settle the matter to their satisfaction.

Early on the 4th, the ships sailed out of Karakakooa Bay, being followed by a large number of canoes. It was our commander's design, before he visited the other islands, to finish the survey of Owhyhee, in hopes of meeting with a road better sheltered than the bay he had just left. In case of not succeeding in this respect, he proposed to take a view of the south-east part of Mowee, where he was informed that he should find an excellent harbour.

The circumstances which brought Capt. Cook back to Karakakooa Bay, and the unhappy consequences that followed at Owhyhee, I shall give from Mr. Samwell's narrative of his death, which is as follows:—

“On the 6th, we were overtaken by a gale of wind, and the next night the Resolution had the misfortune of springing the head of her foremast in such a dangerous manner that Captain Cook was obliged to return to Karakakooa, in order to have it repaired: for we could find no other convenient harbour on the island. The same gale had occasioned much distress among some canoes that had paid us a visit from the shore. One of them, with two men and a child on board, was picked up by the Resolution, and rescued from destruction: the men having toiled hard all night in attempting to reach the land, were so much exhausted, that they could hardly mount the ship's side. When they got upon the quarter-deck, they burst into tears, and seemed much affected with the dangerous situation from which they had escaped; but the little child appeared lively and cheerful. One of the Resolution's boats was also so fortunate as to save a man and two women, whose canoe had been upset by the violence of the waves. They were brought on board, and, with others, partook of the kindness and humanity of Capt. Cook.

“On the morning of Wednesday the 13th, we were within a few miles of the harbour, and were soon

joined by several canoes, in which appeared many of our old acquaintance, who seemed to have come to welcome us back. Among them was Cooha, a priest: he had brought a small pig, and some coconuts in his hand, which, after having chanted a few sentences, he presented to Captain Clerke. He then left us, and hastened on board the Resolution, to perform the same friendly ceremony before Capt. Cook. Having but light winds all that day, we could not gain the harbour. In the afternoon, a chief of the first rank, and nearly related to Kariopoo, paid us a visit on board the Discovery. His name was Kameamea; he was dressed in a very rich feathered cloak, which he seemed to have brought for sale, but would part with it for nothing except iron daggers. These, the chiefs, some time before our departure had preferred to every other article; for, having received a plentiful supply of hatchets and other tools, they began to collect a store of warlike instruments. Kameamea procured nine daggers for his cloak; and being pleased with his reception, he and his attendants slept on board that night.

“On the morning of the 11th of February, the ships anchored again at Kerageegooah bay, and preparation was immediately made for landing the Resolution's fore-mast. We were visited but by a few Indians, because there were but few in the bay. On our departure those belonging to other parts had repaired to their several habitations, and were again to collect from various quarters, before we could expect to be surrounded by such multitudes as we had once seen in that harbour. In the afternoon I walked about a mile into the country, to visit an Indian friend who had, a few days before, come near twenty miles in a small canoe to see me while the ship lay becalmed. As the canoe had not left us long before a gale of wind came on, I was alarmed for the consequence; however, I had the pleasure to find that my friend had escaped unhurt, though not with-

out some difficulties. I take notice of this short excursion, merely because it afforded no change in the disposition or behaviour of the inhabitants. I saw nothing that could induce me to think that they were displeased with our return, or jealous of the intention of our second visit. On the contrary, that abundant good nature, which had always characterised them, seemed still to glow in every bosom, and to animate every countenance.

The next day, February the 12th, the ships were put under a taboo by the chiefs—a solemnity, it seems, that was requisite to be observed before Kariopoo, the king, paid his first visit to Capt. Cook after his return. He waited upon him the same day, on board the *Resolution*, attended by a large train, some of which bore the presents designed for Capt. Cook, who received him in his usual friendly manner, and gave him several articles in return. This amicable ceremony being settled, the taboo was dissolved; matters went on in the usual train; and the next day, February the 13th, we were visited by the natives in great numbers; the *Resolution's* mast was landed, and the astronomical observatories erected on their former situation. I landed with another gentleman at the town of Kavarooah, where we found a great number of canoes just arrived from different parts of the island, and the Indians busy in constructing temporary huts on the beach for their residence during the stay of the ships. On our return on board the *Discovery*, we learned that an Indian had been detected in stealing the armourer's tongs from the forge, for which he received a pretty severe flogging, and was sent out of the ship. Notwithstanding the example made of this man, in the afternoon another had the audacity to snatch the tongs and a chisel from the same place, with which he jumped overboard, and swam for the shore. The master and a midshipman were instantly dispatched after him in the small cutter. The Indian, seeing

himself pursued, made for a canoe; his countrymen took him on board, and paddled as swift as they could towards the shore. We fired several muskets at them, but to no effect, for they soon got out of the reach of our shot. Pareah, one of the chiefs who was at that time on board the Discovery, understanding what had happened, immediately went ashore, promising to bring back the stolen goods. Our boat was so far distanced in chasing the canoe which had taken the thief on board, that he had time to make his escape into the country. Captain Cook, who was then on shore, endeavoured to intercept his landing; but it seems that he was led out of the way by some of the natives, who had officiously intruded themselves as guides. As the master was approaching near the landing-place, he was met by some of the Indians in a canoe; they had brought back the tongs and chisel, together with another article that we had not missed, which happened to be the lid of the water-cask. Having recovered these things, he was returning on board when he was met by the Resolution's pinnace, with five men in her, who, without any orders, had come from the observatories to his assistance. Being thus unexpectedly reinforced, he thought himself strong enough to insist upon having the thief, or the canoe which took him in, delivered up as reprisals. With that view he turned back, and having found the canoe on the beach, he was preparing to launch it into the water, when Pareah made his appearance, and insisted upon his not taking it away, as it was his property. The officer not regarding him, the chief seized him, pinioned his arms behind him, and held him by the hair of his head, on which one of the sailors struck him with an oar. Pareah instantly quitted the officer, snatched the oar out of the man's hand, and snapped it in two across his knee. At length the multitude began to attack our people with stones. They made some resistance, but were soon overpowered, and obliged to swim for

safety to the small cutter, which lay further out than the pinnace. The officers, not being expert swimmers, retreated to a small rock in the water, where they were closely pursued by the Indians. One man darted a broken oar at the master; but his feet slipping at the time, he missed him, which fortunately saved that officer's life. At last Pareah interfered, and put an end to their violence. The gentlemen, knowing that his presence was their only safety, entreated him to stay with them till they could get off in their boats; but this he refused, and left them. The master went to seek assistance from the party at the observatories, but the midshipman chose to remain in the pinnace. He was very rudely treated by the mob, who plundered the boat of every thing that was loose on board, and then began to knock her to pieces for the sake of the iron work; but Pareah fortunately returned in time to prevent her destruction. He had met the other gentleman on his way to the observatories, and, suspecting his errand, had forced him to return. He dispersed the crowd again, and desired the gentlemen to return on board; they represented that all the oars had been taken out of the boat, on which he brought some of them back, and the gentlemen were glad to get off without further molestation. They had not proceeded far before they were overtaken by Pareah in a canoe; he delivered the midshipman's cap, which had been taken from him during the scuffle, joined noses with them in token of reconciliation, and was anxious to know if Captain Cook would kill him for what had happened. The gentlemen assured him to the contrary, and made signs of friendship to him in return. He then left them, and paddled over to the town of Kavarooah, and that was the last time we ever saw him. Capt. Cook returned on board soon after, much displeas'd with the whole of this disagreeable business, and the same night sent a lieutenant on board the Discovery, to learn the particulars of it, as it had originated in that ship

"It was remarkable, that in the midst of the hurry, and confusion attending this affair, Kanynah (a chief who had always been on terms particularly friendly with us) came from the spot where it happened, with a hog to sell, on board the Discovery. It was of an extraordinary large size, and he demanded for it a pahowa, or dagger of an unusual length. He pointed to us that it must be as long as his arm. Captain Clerke not having one of that length, told him he would get one made for him by the morning; with which being satisfied, he left the hog, and went on shore without making any stay with us. It will not be altogether foreign to the subject to mention a circumstance that happened to-day on board the Resolution. An Indian chief asked Capt. Cook at his table, if he was a Tata Toa, which means a fighting man, or a soldier. Being answered in the affirmative, he desired to see his wounds. Captain Cook held out his right hand, which had a scar upon it, dividing the thumb from the finger, the whole length of the metacarpal bones. The Indian being thus convinced of his being a Toa, put the same question to another gentleman present, but who happened to have none of those distinguishing marks. The chief then said that he himself was a Toa, and showed the scars of some wounds he had received in battle. Those who were on duty at the observatories were disturbed during the night with shrill and melancholy sounds issuing from the adjacent villages, which they took to be the lamentations of the women. Perhaps the quarrel between us might have filled their minds with apprehensions for the safety of their husbands; but be that as it may, their mournful cries struck the sentinels with unusual awe and terror.

"To widen the breach between us, some of the Indians in the night took away the Discovery's large cutter, which lay swamped at the buoy of one of her anchors; they had carried her off so quietly that we did not miss her till the morning of Sunday, 14th

February. Captain Clerke lost no time in waiting upon Captain Cook to acquaint him with the accident. He returned on board with orders for the launch and small cutter to go, under the command of the second lieutenant, and lie off the east point of the bay, in order to intercept all canoes that might attempt to get out, and if he found it necessary, to fire upon them. At the same time, the third lieutenant of the Resolution, with the launch and small cutter, was sent on the same service to the opposite point of the bay; and the master was dispatched in a large cutter in pursuit of a double canoe already under sail, making the best of her way out of the harbour. He soon came up with her, and by firing a few muskets, drove her on shore, when the Indians left her. This happened to be the canoe of Omea, a man who bore the title of Orono. He himself was on board, and it would have been fortunate if our people had secured him, for his person was held as sacred as that of the king. During this time Capt. Cook was preparing to go ashore himself at the town of Kavarooah, in order to secure the person of Kariopoo, before he should have time to withdraw himself to another part of the island out of our reach. This appeared the most effectual step that could be taken, on the present occasion, for the recovery of the boat. It was the measure he had invariably pursued in similar cases at other islands in these seas, and it had always been attended with the desired success. In fact, it would be difficult to point out any other mode of proceeding on these emergencies, likely to attain the object in view. We had reason to suppose that the king and his attendants had fled when the alarm was first given, and in that case it was Captain Cook's intention to secure the large canoes which were hauled up on the beach. He left the ship about seven o'clock, attended by the lieutenant of marines, a sergeant, a corporal, and seven private men, the pinnace's crew were also armed and under the command of Mr. Roberts. As

they rowed towards the shore, Captain Cook ordered the launch to leave her station at the west point of the bay, in order to assist his own boat. This is a circumstance worthy of notice, for it clearly shows that he was not unapprehensive of meeting resistance from the natives, or unmindful of the necessary preparation for the safety of himself and his people. I will venture to say, that from the appearance of things just at that time, there was not one beside himself who judged that such precaution was absolutely requisite; so little did his conduct, on the occasion, bear the marks of rashness, or a precipitate self-confidence! He landed, with the marines, at the upper end of the town of Kavarooah: the Indians immediately flocked round as usual, and showed him the customary marks of respect, by prostrating themselves before him. There were no signs of hostilities, nor much alarm among them. Captain Cook however, did not seem willing to trust to appearances, but was particularly attentive to the disposition of the marines, and to have them kept clear of the crowd. He first inquired for the king's sons, two youths who were much attached to him, and generally his companions on board. Messengers being sent for them, they soon came to him, and informing him that their father was asleep at a house not far from them, he accompanied them thither, and took the marines along with them. As he passed along, the natives every where prostrated themselves before him, and seemed to have lost no part of that respect they had always shown to his person. He was joined by several chiefs, among whom was Kanynah, and his brother Koolowrooah. They kept the crowd in order, according to their usual custom, and being ignorant of his intention in coming on shore, frequently asked him if he wanted any hogs, or rather provisions: he told them he did not, and that his business was to see the king. When he arrived at the house, he told some of the Indians to go in and inform Kariopoo that he waited

without to speak with him. They came out two or three times, and instead of returning any answer from the king, presented some pieces of red cloth to him, which made Captain Cook suspect that he was not in the house, he therefore desired the lieutenant of the marines to go in. The lieutenant found the old man just awakened from sleep, and seemingly alarmed at the message; but he came out without hesitation. Captain Cook took him by the hand, and in a friendly manner asked him to go on board, to which he very readily consented. Thus far matters appeared to be in a favourable train, and the natives did not seem much alarmed, or apprehensive of hostility on our side; at which Captain Cook expressed himself a little surprised, saying, that as the inhabitants of that town appeared innocent of stealing the cutter, he should not molest them, but that he must get the king on board. Kariopoo sat down before his own door, and was surrounded by a great crowd. Kanynah and his brother were both very active in keeping order among them. In a little time, however, the Indians were observed arming themselves with long spears, clubs, and daggers, and putting on thick mats, which they use as armour. This hostile appearance increased, and became more alarming, on the arrival of two men in a canoe from the opposite side of a bay, with the news of a chief called Karemoo having been killed by one of the Discovery's boats. In their passage across, they had also delivered this account to each of the ships. Upon that information, the women who were sitting upon the beach at their breakfast, and conversing familiarly with our people in their boats, retired, and confused murmurs spread through the crowd. An old priest came to Captain Cook with a cocoa-nut in his hand, which he held to him as a present, at the same time singing very loud. He was often desired to be silent, but in vain; he continued importunate and troublesome, and there was no such thing as getting

rid of him or his noise ; it seemed as if he meant to divert their attention from his countrymen, who were growing more tumultuous, and arming themselves in every quarter. Captain Cook, being at the same time surrounded by a great crowd, thought his situation rather hazardous ; he therefore ordered the lieutenant of marines to march his small party to the water side, where the boats lay within a few yards of the shore. The Indians readily made a lane for them to pass, and did not offer to interrupt them. The distance they had to go might be about fifty or sixty yards. Captain Cook followed, having hold of Kariopoo's hand, who accompanied him very willingly : he was attended by his wife, two sons, and several chiefs. The troublesome old priest followed, making the same savage noise. Keowa, the younger son, went directly into the pinnace, expecting his father to follow, but just as he arrived at the water-side, his wife threw her arms about his neck, and, with the assistance of two chiefs, forced him to sit down by the side of a double canoe. Captain Cook expostulated with them, but to no purpose ; they would not suffer the king to proceed, telling him that he would be put to death, if he went on board the ship. Kariopoo, whose conduct seemed entirely resigned to the will of others, hung down his head, and appeared much distressed.

“ While the king was in this situation, a chief, well known to us, of the name of Coho, was observed lurking near with an iron dagger, partly concealed under his cloak, seemingly with the intention of stabbing Capt. Cook or the lieutenant of marines. The latter proposed to fire at him, but Captain Cook would not permit it. Coho, closing upon them, obliged the officer to strike him with his piece, which made him retire. Another Indian laid hold of the sergeant's musket, and endeavoured to wrench it from him, but was prevented by the lieutenant's making a blow at him. Captain Cook, seeing the

tumult increase, and the Indians growing more daring and resolute, observed that if he were to take the king off by force, he could not do it without sacrificing the lives of many of his people. He then paused a little, and was on the point of giving his orders to re-embark, when a man threw a stone at him, which he returned with a discharge of small shot (with which one barrel of his double piece was loaded.) The man, having a thick mat before him, received little or no hurt; he brandished his spear, and threatened to dart it at Captain Cook, who, being still unwilling to take away his life, instead of firing with ball, knocked him down with his musket. He expostulated strongly with the most forward of the crowd upon their turbulent behaviour. He had given up all thoughts of getting the king on board, as it appeared impracticable; and his care was then to act on the defensive, and to secure a safe embarkation for his small party, which was closely pressed by a body of several thousand people. Keowa, the king's son, who was in the pinnacle, being alarmed on hearing the first firing, was, at his own entreaty, put on shore again; for even at that time Mr. Roberts, who commanded her, did not apprehend that Captain Cook's person was in any danger, otherwise he would have detained the prince, which, no doubt, would have been a great check on the Indians. One man was observed behind a double canoe, in the act of darting his spear at Captain Cook, who was forced to fire at him in his own defence, but happened to kill another close to him, equally forward in the tumult. The sergeant observing that he had missed the man he aimed at, received orders to fire at him, which he did, and killed him. By this time, the impetuosity of the Indians was somewhat repressed: they fell back in a body, and seemed staggered; but being pushed on by those behind, they returned to the charge, and poured a volley of stones, among the marines, who, without waiting for orders, returned

it with a general discharge of musketry, which was instantly followed by a fire from the boats. At this Captain Cook was heard to express his astonishment; he waved his hand to the boats, called to them to cease firing, and to come nearer in to receive the marines. Mr. Roberts immediately brought the pinnace as close to the shore as he could without grounding, notwithstanding the showers of stones that fell among the people; but ———, the lieutenant, who commanded in the launch, instead of pulling in to the assistance of Captain Cook, withdrew his boat further off, at the moment that every thing seems to have depended upon the timely exertions of those in the boats. By his own account, he mistook the signal; but be that as it may, this circumstance appears to me to have decided the fatal turn of the affairs; and to have removed every chance which remained with Captain Cook of remaining with his life. The business of saving the marines out of the water, in consequence of that, fell altogether upon the pinnace, which thereby became so much crowded, that the crew were in a great measure prevented from using their fire-arms, or giving what assistance they otherwise might have done to Captain Cook; so that he seems, at the most critical point of time, to have wanted the assistance of both boats, owing to the removal of the launch. For notwithstanding they kept firing on the crowd from the situation to which they removed in that boat, the fatal confusion which ensued on her being withdrawn must, to say the least of it, have prevented the full effect, that the prompt co-operation of the two boats, according to Captain Cook's orders, must have had, towards the preservation of himself and his people. At that time it was to the boats alone that Captain Cook had to look for his safety; for when the marines had fired, the Indians rushed among them, and forced them into the water, where four of them were killed; their lieutenant was wounded, but fortunately escaped, and

was taken up by the pinnace. Captain Cook was then the only one remaining on the rock; he was observed making for the pinnace, holding his left hand against the back of his head, to guard it from the stones, and carrying his musket under the other arm. An Indian was seen following him, but with caution and timidity; for he stopped once or twice, as if undetermined to proceed. At last he advanced upon him unawares, and with a large club, or common stake, gave him a blow on the back of the head, and then precipitately retreated. The stroke seemed to have stunned Captain Cook; he staggered a few paces, then fell on his hand and one knee, and dropped his musket. As he was rising, and before he could recover his feet, another Indian stabbed him in the back of the neck with an iron dagger. He then fell into a pool of water, about knee deep, where others crowded upon him, and endeavoured to keep him under; but struggling very strongly with them, he got his head up, and, casting his look towards the pinnace, seemed to solicit assistance. Though the boat was not above five or six yards distant from him, yet, from the crowded and confused state of the crew, it seems it was not in their power to save him. The Indians got him under again, but in deeper water; he was, however, able to get his head up once more, and being almost spent in the struggle, he naturally turned to the rock, and was endeavouring to support himself by it, when a savage gave him a blow with a club, and he was seen alive no more. They hauled him up lifeless on the rocks, where they seemed to take a savage pleasure in using every barbarity to his dead body, snatching the daggers out of each other's hands, to have the horrid satisfaction of piercing the fallen victim of their barbarous rage.

“I need make no reflection on the great loss which we suffered on this occasion, or attempt to describe what we felt. It is enough to say that no man was

ev  
to  
me  
sin  
of  
the  
las  
as  
inc  
to  
exp  
bee  
of  
at  
was  
who  
and  
seen  
Cap  
on  
cess  
to  
conc  
serv  
Cler  
the  
tain  
tion  
pape  
“I  
cum  
of an  
comp  
I ha  
conn  
teem  
nuat  
“7

ever more beloved or admired, and it is truly painful to reflect, that he seems to have fallen a sacrifice merely for want of being properly supported—a fate singularly to be lamented, as having fallen to the lot of one who had ever been conspicuous for his care of those under his command, and who seemed, to the last, to pay as much attention to their preservation, as to that of his own life.

“If any thing could have added to the shame and indignation universally felt on this occasion, it was to find that his remains had been deserted and left exposed on the beach, although they might have been brought off. It appears from the information of four or five midshipmen, who arrived on the spot at the conclusion of the fatal business, that the beach was then almost entirely deserted by the Indians, who at length had given way to the fire of the boats, and dispersed through the town; so that there seemed no great obstacle to prevent the recovery of Captain Cook’s body; but the lieutenant returned on board without making the attempt. It is unnecessary to dwell longer on this painful subject, and to relate the complaints and censures that fell on the conduct of the lieutenant. It will be sufficient to observe, that they were so loud as to oblige Captain Clerke publicly to notice them, and to take down the deposition of his accusers in writing. The captain’s bad state of health and approaching dissolution, it is supposed, induced him to destroy these papers a short time before his death.

“It is a painful task to be obliged to notice circumstances which seem to reflect upon the character of any man. A strict regard to truth, however, compelled me to the insertion of these facts, which I have offered merely as facts, without presuming to connect with them any comment of my own: esteeming it the part of a faithful historian ‘to extenuate nothing, nor set down aught in malice.’

“The fatal accident happened at eight o’clock in

'he morning, about an hour after Captain Cook landed. It did not seem that the king or his sons were witnesses to it, but it is supposed that they withdrew in the midst of the tumult. The principal actors were the other chiefs, many of them the king's relations and attendants. The man who stabbed him with the dagger was called Nooah. I happened to be the only one who recollected his person, from having on a former occasion mentioned his name in the journal I kept. I was induced to take particular notice of him, more from his personal appearance than any other consideration, though he was of high rank, and a near relation to the king. He was stout and tall, with a fierce look and demeanour, and one who united in his figure the two qualities of strength and agility in a greater degree than ever I remembered to have before seen in any other man. His age might be about thirty, and by the white scurf on his skin, and his sore eyes, he appeared to be a hard drinker of kava. He was a constant companion of the king, with whom I first saw him when he paid a visit to Captain Clerke. The chief who first struck Captain Cook with the club was called Karimano ooba, but I did not know him by his name. These circumstances I learned of honest Kaireeka, the priest, who added that they were both held in great esteem on account of that action. Neither of them came near us afterwards. When the boats left the shore, the Indians carried away the dead body of Captain Cook, and those of the marines, to the rising ground at the back of the town, where we could plainly see them with our glasses from the ships.

"This most melancholy accident appears to have been altogether unexpected and unforeseen, as well on the part of the natives as ourselves. I never saw sufficient reason to induce me to believe that there was any thing of design, or a preconcerted plan on their side, or that they purposely sought to quarrel with us. Thieving, which gave rise to the whole,

they were equally guilty of in our first and second visits. It was the cause of every misunderstanding that happened between us; their petty thefts were generally overlooked, but sometimes slightly punished; the boat, which they at last ventured to take away, was an object of no small magnitude to people in our situation, who could not possibly replace her, and therefore not slightly to be given up. We had no other chance of recovering her, but by getting the person of the king into our possession. On our attempting to do that, the natives became alarmed for his safety, and naturally opposed those whom they deemed his enemies. In the sudden conflict that ensued, we had the unspeakable misfortune to lose our excellent commander in the manner already related. It is in this light the affair has always appeared to me as entirely accidental, and not in the least owing to any previous offence received, or jealousy of our second visit entertained by the natives.

“Pareah seems to have been the principal instrument in bringing about this fatal disaster. We learned afterwards that it was he who had employed some people to steal the boat. The king did not seem to be privy to it, or even apprized of what had happened, till Captain Cook landed.

“It was generally remarked, that at first the Indians showed great resolution in facing our fire-arms; but it was entirely owing to ignorance of their effect. They thought that their thick mats would defend them from a ball as well as from a stone; but being soon convinced of their error, yet still at a loss to account how such execution was done among them, they had recourse to a stratagem which, though it answered no other purpose, served to shew their ingenuity and quickness of invention. Observing the flashes of the muskets, they naturally concluded that water would counteract their effect, and therefore very sagaciously dipped their mats or armour in the sea, just as they came on to face our people;

but finding this last resource to fail them, they soon dispersed, and left the beach entirely clear. It was an object they never neglected, even at the greatest hazard, to carry off their slain—a custom, probably, owing to the barbarity with which they treat the dead body of an enemy, and the trophies they make of his bones.”

In consequence of this barbarity of disposition, the whole remains of Captain Cook could not be recovered; for though every exertion was made for that purpose—though negotiations and threatenings were alternately employed, little more than the principal part of his bones (and that with great difficulty) could be procured. By the possession of them, our navigators were enabled to perform the last offices to their eminent and unfortunate commander. The bones having been put into a coffin, and the service being read over them, were committed to the deep on the 21st, with the usual naval honours.

A promotion of officers followed the decease of Captain Cook. Captain Clerke, having succeeded of course to the command of the expedition, removed on board the Resolution. By him Mr. Gore was appointed captain of the Discovery, and the rest of the lieutenants obtained an addition of rank in their proper order. Mr. Harvey, a midshipman, who had been in the last as well as the present voyage, was promoted to the vacant lieutenantcy.

The particulars of the voyage, after the death of Capt. Cook, will be found in the Appendix.

---

The following remarks on the character of Captain Cook, will be read with interest:—

“Captain James Cook possessed,” says the writer, “in an eminent degree, all the qualifications requisite for his profession and great undertakings; together with the amiable and worthy qualities of the best men.

“Cool and deliberate in judging: sagacious in de-

termining: active in executing: steady and persevering in enterprising, from vigilance and unremitting caution: unsubdued by labour, difficulties, and disappointments: fertile in expedients; never wanting presence of mind; always possessing himself, and the full use of a sound understanding.

"Mild, just, but exact in discipline: he was a father to his people, who were attached to him from affection, and obedient from confidence.

"His knowledge, his experience, his sagacity, rendered him so entirely master of his subject, that the greatest obstacles were surmounted, and the most dangerous navigations became easy, and almost safe, under his direction.

"By his benevolent and unabating attention to the welfare of his ship's company, he discovered and introduced a system for the preservation of the health of seamen in long voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious.

"The death of this eminent and valuable man was a loss to mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored by every nation that respects useful accomplishments, that honours science, and loves the benevolent and amiable affections of the heart. It is still more to be deplored by this country, which may justly boast of having produced a man hitherto unequalled for nautical talents; and that sorrow is farther aggravated by the reflection, that his country was deprived of this ornament by the enmity of a people, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded, but from whom it was not deserved. For, actuated always by the most attentive care and tender compassion for the savages in general, this excellent man was ever assiduously endeavouring, by kind treatment, to dissipate their fears, and court their friendship; overlooking their thefts and treacheries, and frequently interposing, at the hazard of his life, to protect them from the sudden resentment of his own injured people.

“ Traveller! contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate this great master in his profession ; whose skill and labours have enlarged natural philosophy ; have extended nautical science ; and have disclosed the long concealed and admirable arrangements of the Almighty in the formation of this globe, and, at the same time, the arrogance of mortals, in presuming to account, by their speculations, for the laws by which he was pleased to create it. It is now discovered, beyond all doubt, that the same great Being who created the universe by his *fiat*, by the same ordained our earth to keep a just poise, without a corresponding southern continent, and it does so. *He stretches out the north over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing.*—Job xxvi. 7.

“ If the arduous but exact researches of this extraordinary man have not discovered a new world, they have discovered seas un navigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with islands, people, and productions of which we had no conception. And if he has not been so fortunate as Americus, to give his name to a continent, his pretensions to such a distinction remain unrivalled ; and he will be revered while there remains a page of his own modest account of his voyages, and as long as mariners and geographers shall be instructed, by his new map of the southern hemisphere, to trace the various courses and discoveries he has made.

“ If public services merit public acknowledgements ; if the man, who adorned and raised the fame of his country, is deserving of honours, then Captain Cook deserves to have a monument raised to his memory by a generous and grateful nation.”

## APPENDIX.

**AFTER** the death of Captain Cook, and the events immediately succeeding it, Captain Clerke, upon whom the command of the expedition had devolved, proceeded from Owhyhee, and coasted several of the other islands of the group. The ships anchored at Atooi to procure water; in doing this our voyagers experienced some interruption from the natives, and a slight conflict took place, in which one of the islanders was wounded by a musket-shot. They were here told, that, at their preceding visit, they had left a disorder amongst the women, of which several persons of both sexes had died; and as there was not the slightest appearance of the disorder amongst the natives, at the first arrival of the vessels, there is too much reason to believe that some of the crew were the authors of that irreparable mischief. Atooi was in a state of internal warfare; the quarrel had arisen about the goats Captain Cook had left at Oneehow the year before; the property of which was contested by two different chiefs. The goats, which had increased to the number of six, and would probably in a few years have stocked all these islands, were destroyed in the contest.

Our voyagers left the Sandwich Islands finally on the 15th of March: and stood to the south-west in hopes of falling in with the island of Modoopapappa, which they were told by the natives lay in that direction, about five hours' sail from Taohora; but though the two vessels stretched asunder several

miles, they did not discover it. It is possible it might have been passed in the night, as the islanders described it to be small, sandy, and almost even with the surface of the sea.

The harbour of Saint Peter and Saint Paul, in Awatska Bay, was appointed for the next rendezvous of the two vessels, in case of separation. In the course of their navigation towards Kamtschatka, they traversed that part of the Northern Pacific, in which some islands and lands were laid down in the charts, such as the island of Reia de Plata in De l'Isle's chart, and the land said to have been seen by John de Gama, in a voyage from China to New Spain, first delineated in a chart published by Texeira, a Portuguese geographer, in 1649; but though at sundry times they had various indications of land, they discovered none, and those islands and lands must, therefore, either be of trifling extent, or wholly imaginary.

A leak under the larboard bow of the Resolution, which had kept the people almost constantly at the pumps, ever since their leaving the Sandwich Islands, occasioned a great alarm on the 13th of April. The water, which had lodged in the coal-hole, not finding a sufficient vent into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and in a moment deluged the whole space between decks. The coals would very soon choke up a pump, and the number of bulky materials that were washed out of the gunner's store room, and which, by the ship's motion, were tossed violently from side to side, rendered it impracticable to bale the water out. No other method was therefore left, than to cut a hole through the bulk-head, that separated the coal-hole from the fore-hold. As soon as the passage was made, the greatest part of the water was emptied into the well; but the leak was now so much increased, that it was necessary to keep one half of the people constantly pumping and baling, till the noon of the 15th.

On the 23d, at six in the morning, on the fog clearing away, the land of Kamtschatka appeared, in mountains covered with snow. The weather was most severe; the ships appeared to be complete masses of ice; and the shrouds were so incrustated with it, as to measure in circumference more than double their usual size. The crews suffered very severely from the cold, particularly from having lately left the tropical climates; and, but for the foresight and care of their officers, would indeed have been in a deplorable state. It was natural to expect, that their experience, during their voyage to the north the year before, would have made them sensible of the necessity of paying some attention to their clothing; as it was generally known, in both ships, that they were to make another voyage towards the pole; but, with the thoughtlessness of infants, upon their return to a warm climate, their fur jackets and the rest of their cold-country clothes, were kicked about the decks, as things of no value. They were of course picked up by the officers, and being put into casks, were, in due season, restored to their owners.

On the 25th, when off the entrance of Awatska Bay, the Resolution lost sight of the Discovery, and on the 28th entered the Bay. The officers of the Resolution examined every corner of it with their glasses, in search of the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, which they had conceived to be a place of some strength and consideration. At length they discovered, on a narrow point of land, a few miserable loghouses, and some conical huts raised on poles, amounting in all to about thirty, which, from the situation, they were under the necessity of concluding to be Petropaulowska. "However," says Captain King, "in justice to the generous and hospitable treatment we found here, I shall beg leave to anticipate the reader's curiosity, by assuring him that our disappointment proved to be more of a laughable than a serious nature; for, in this wretched extre-

mity of the earth, situated beyond every tuing that we conceive to be most barbarous and inhospitable, and, as it were, out of the very reach of civilization, barricaded with ice, and covered with summer-snow, in a poor miserable port, far inferior to the meanest of our fishing-towns, we met with feelings of humanity, joined to a greatness of mind, and elevation of sentiment, which would have done honour to any nation or climate."

In the morning of the 29th, Captain, then Lieutenant King was sent on shore ; and after experiencing much difficulty from the broken ice that extended nearly half a mile across which he was obliged to make the best of his way on foot, was received by the commander of the garrison at the head of his men, consisting of about thirty soldiers. They had not seen the ship the preceding day, nor indeed that morning, till the boats were pretty near the ice. Much panic ensued ; the garrison was put under arms, and two field-pieces placed at the entrance of the commander's house. All, however, soon wore a friendly aspect, and nothing could exceed the kindness and hospitality of the officer, a sergeant, who commanded the Ostrog, and at whose house they were entertained. He furnished Lieutenant King, who had fallen in between the disjointed ice, with a complete suit of clothes of his own ; the dinner that was served up consisted of four courses ; but the conversation, from the want of an interpreter, no other language being understood there but Russian and Kamtschatdale, was confined to a few bows and other signs of mutual respect. The sergeant sent off an express to Bolcheretsk, where the governor of the province usually resided, and whence he had to look for orders what to do, as to the procurement of the supplies of provisions, and naval stores, which our people wanted.

On their return, a sledge drawn by five dogs, with a driver, was provided for each of the party. The

sailors were highly delighted with this mode of conveyance, and, what diverted them most was, that the two boat-hooks which they had brought, had also a sledge to themselves.

On the 1st of May, the Discovery entered the bay. On the day after, early in the morning, an answer was received from Bolcheretsk. The dispatches had been sent off on the 29th, about noon, by a sledge drawn by dogs, so that they were only a little more than three days and a half in performing a journey of two hundred and seventy miles; Bolcheretsk being about one hundred and thirty-five miles from St. Peter and St. Paul.

As the whole stock of live cattle which the country about the bay could afford, amounted only to two heifers, Captain Clerke found it necessary to send to Bolcheretsk, and Captain Gore and Lieutenant King were fixed on for the excursion. They proceeded by boats up the Awatska river, then across part of the country in sledges, and then down the Bolchoireka in canoes.

Major Behm, the governor of Kamtschatka, received them, not only with the utmost politeness, but with the most engaging cordiality; and all the principal people of the town vied with each other who should shew the most civility to strangers from the other extremity of the globe. A list of the naval stores, the number of cattle, and the quantity of flour wanted by the navigators, was given to Major Behm, who insisted upon supplying all their wants; and when they desired to be made acquainted with the price of the articles, with which they were to be supplied, and proposed that Captain Clerke should give bills to the amount on the Victualling-office in London, the major positively refused, and whenever it was afterwards urged, stopped them short, by saying, he was certain he could not oblige his mistress, the empress, more than in giving every assistance in his power to her good friends and allies, the English;

and that it would be a particular satisfaction to her, to hear, that, in so remote a part of the world, her dominions had afforded any relief to ships engaged in such services; that he could not, therefore, act so contrary to the character of his empress, as to accept of any bills; but that, to accommodate the matter, he would take a bare attestation of the particulars with which we might be furnished, and that this he would transmit to his court, as a certificate of having performed his duty.

The town of Bolcheretsk consists of several rows of low buildings, barracks for the Russian soldiers and Cossacks, a good looking church, and a court-room, with a great number of balagans (summer habitations) belonging to the Kamtschatdales, at the end of the town. The inhabitants amount to between five and six hundred.

It would exceed the bounds to which this sketch must necessarily be confined, to enumerate one half of the instances of civility and attention which Major Behm, his lady, the officers of the garrison, and the inhabitants of the town bestowed upon the English travellers. One generous present cannot, however, be passed over in silence, both because it consisted of the greatest part of their small store of the article, and because it called forth from the British seamen, a corresponding generosity. Being informed of the privations the sailors had suffered from the want of tobacco, Major Behm sent four bags of it, weighing upwards of one hundred pounds each, which he begged might be presented, in the name of himself and the garrison under his command, to our sailors. When the seamen were told of it, the crews of both ships desired, entirely of their own accord, that their grog might be stopped, and their allowance of spirits presented, on their part, to the garrison of Bolcheretsk, as they had reason to conclude, that brandy was scarce in the country, and would be very acceptable, since the soldiers on shore had offered four

roubles a bottle for it. When it is considered how much the sailors would feel from the stoppage of their allowance of grog, and that this offer would deprive them of it during the inclement season they had to expect on their ensuing expedition to the north, the sacrifice must be looked upon as generous and extraordinary: and, that they might not suffer by it, Captain Clerke substituted, in the room of the very small quantity the major could be prevailed on to accept, the same quantity of rum.

When the party returned to Petropaulowska, Major Behm accompanied them, and visited the ships. He had resigned the command of Kamtschatka, and was in a short time to return to St. Petersburg; our navigators therefore committed to his care dispatches for England, with the journals and charts of the voyage so far.

They got about twenty head of cattle, about nine thousand weight of rye flour, and a variety of other provisions and refreshments here, especially fish, with which they were absolutely overpowered from every quarter; and, having completed their water, they weighed anchor on the 13th of June, and on the 16th cleared the bay. The volcano, situated to the north of the harbour, was in a state of eruption at the time.

On the 5th of July, our navigators passed through Behring's Straits, having run along the Asiatic coast; they then stretched over to that of America, with a view of exploring it between the latitudes of 68 deg. and 69 deg. But in this attempt they were disappointed, being stopped on the 7th, by a large and compact field of ice connected with the land. On the 9th, they had sailed nearly forty leagues to the westward, along the edge of the ice, without seeing any opening, and had therefore no prospect of advancing further north.—Until the 27th, however, they continued to seek a passage, first on the American, and then on the Asiatic side; but were never able to

penetrate farther north than 76 deg. 33 min. which was five leagues short of the point to which they had advanced the season before.

At one time, in attempting to penetrate to the northwestward, the *Discovery* was in a very dangerous situation. She became so entangled by several large pieces of ice, that her way was stopped, and immediately dropping bodily to leeward, she fell broadside foremost on the edge of a considerable body of ice, and having at the same time an open sea to windward, the surf caused her to strike violently upon it. This mass at length either so far moved or broke, as to set them at liberty to make another trial to escape; but, before the ship gathered way enough to be under command, she again fell to leeward on another fragment; and the swell making it unsafe to lie to windward, and no chance of getting clear, they pushed into a small opening, furled their sails, and made fast with ice-hooks. A change of wind, however, taking place in the afternoon, the ice began to separate, and setting all their sails, they forced a passage through it. The vessel had rubbed off a great deal of the sheathing from her bows, and became very leaky from the strokes she had received when she fell on the edge of the ice.

In these high latitudes, our navigators killed several sea-horses, and also two white bears; the flesh of the latter afforded a few excellent meals of fresh meat. It had indeed a strong fishy taste, but was in every respect superior to that of the sea-horse, which, nevertheless, the sailors were again persuaded, without much difficulty, to prefer to their salted provisions.

Finding a further advance to the northward, as well as a nearer approach to either continent, obstructed by a sea blocked up with ice, Captain Clerke at length determined to lose no more time in the pursuit of what seemed utterly unattainable, and to sail for *Awatska Bay* to repair their damages, and before

the winter should set in, to explore the coast of Japan on their way towards Europe. To the great joy, therefore, of every individual on board both ships, they turned their faces towards home; and the delight and satisfaction they experienced on the occasion, notwithstanding the tedious voyage they had to make, and the immense distance they had to run, were as freely entertained, and perhaps as fully enjoyed, as if they had been already in sight of the Land's End.

On the 31st, they repassed Behring's Straits. With respect to the practicability of a north-east or north-west passage into the Pacific Ocean, through those straits, from the result of their attempts it appears, that the north of the straits is clearer of ice in August than in July, and perhaps in a part of September it may still be more free. But, after the equinox, the days shorten so fast, that no further thaw can be expected, and so great an effect cannot rationally be allowed to the warm weather in the first half of September as to imagine it capable of dispersing the ice from the most northern parts of the American coast. But admitting this to be possible, it would be madness to attempt to run from the icy cape to the known parts of Baffin's Bay, (a distance of four hundred and twenty leagues) in so short a time as that passage can be supposed to remain open. Upon the Asiatic side, there appears still less probability of success; for, though Deshneff, a Russian navigator, about a century and a half ago, passed round the north-east point of Asia, no voyager has yet been able to double Cape Taimura beyond the mouth of the Lena, which stretches to the 78th degree of latitude.

Captain Clerke's health now rapidly declined, and, on the 17th of August, he was no longer able to get out of his bed. On the 21st, they made the coast of Kamtschatka; and on the following day, at nine in the morning, Captain Clerke died. His disease was

consumption, which had evidently commenced before he left England, and of which he had lingered during the whole voyage.

On the 24th, the vessels anchored in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, where the gentlemen on board were received by their Russian friends, with the same cordiality as before. Captain Gore, upon whom the command of the expedition devolved, removed himself to the Resolution, and appointed Mr. King to the command of the Discovery. He sent off an express to the commander at Bolcheretzk, in which he requested to have sixteen head of black cattle. The eruption of the volcano, which had taken place at the time of the late departure of the vessels from Awatska, had done no damage, notwithstanding stones had fallen at the Ostrog of the size of a goose's egg.

Attempts were now made to repair, as far as was practicable, the damage the Discovery had sustained in the ice, and in removing the sheathing, eight feet of plank in the wale were found to be so very rotten as to make it necessary to shift it. The carpenters were sent on shore in search of a tree large enough for the purpose: luckily they found a birch, which was the only one of sufficient size in the whole neighbourhood of the bay. The crews were employed in various necessary occupations; amongst which, four men were set apart to haul the seine for salmon, which were caught in great abundance, and of excellent quality. After supplying the immediate wants of both ships, they salted down near a hogshead a day. The sea-horse blubber, with which they had stored themselves, during their expedition to the north, was boiled down, for oil now became a necessary article, their candles having been long since all used.

The body of Capt. Clerke was interred on Sunday, the 29th, with all the solemnity and honours they could bestow, under a tree, in the valley on the north

side of the harbour; a spot, which the priest of Paratounea said, would be as near as he could guess, in the centre of the new church intended to be erected.

On the 3rd of September, arrived an ensign from Bolcheretsk, with a letter from Captain Shmaleff, the present commander, who promised the cattle required, and that he would himself pay them a visit immediately on the arrival of a sloop, which was daily expected from Okotzk.

On the morning of the 10th, a Russian galiot, from Okotzk, was towed into the harbour. She had been thirty-five days on her passage, and had been seen from the lighthouse a fortnight before, beating up towards the mouth of the bay. There were fifty soldiers in her, with their wives and children, and several other passengers; a sub-lieutenant, who came in her, now took the command of the garrison, and from some cause or other, which the English could not learn, their old friend the sergeant, the late commander of the place, fell into disgrace, and was no longer suffered to sit down in the company of his own officers.

From the galiot, our navigators got a small quantity of pitch, tar, cordage, and twine, and a hundred and forty skins of flour, containing 13,782lbs English.

The Hospodin Ivaskin from Verchnei had been desired by Major Behm to attend the English officers on their return to the harbour, in order to be their interpreter. He now came. He was an exile; and was of a considerable family in Russia; his father was a general, and he himself, after having received his education partly in France and partly in Germany, had been page to the Empress Elizabeth and ensign in her guards. At the age of sixteen, he was *knowned*, had his nose slit, and was banished, first to Siberia, and afterwards to Kamtschatka, where he had lived thirty-one years. He bore in his whole figure the strongest marks of old age, though he had scarcely reached his fifty-fourth year. No one there knew

the cause of his banishment, but they took it for granted, that it must have been for something very atrocious, as two or three of the commanders of Kamtschatka, had in vain endeavoured to get him recalled since the present empress's reign. For the first twenty years he had not tasted bread, nor been allowed subsistence of any kind, but had lived during that period among the Kamtschatdales, on what his own activity and toil in the chase could procure him. Afterwards, he had a small pension granted him. This Major Behm, by his intercession had caused to be increased to one hundred roubles a year, which is the common pay of an ensign in all parts of the empress's dominions, except in this province, where the pay of all the officers is double.

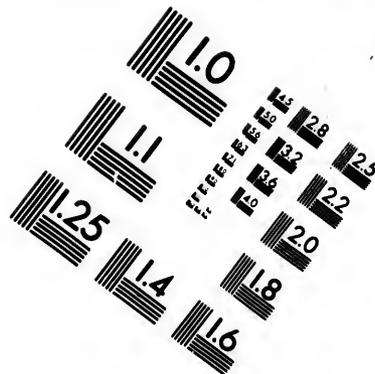
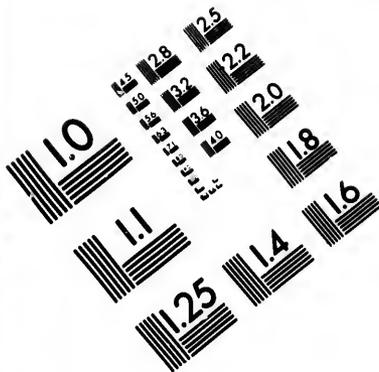
This gentleman joined Captains Gore and King on a bear-hunting party on the 17th, for two days; in which, first from the party being too large, and the unavoidable noise that was the consequence of it, and next, from the unfavourable weather after they separated, they were wholly unsuccessful.

On the 22d, the anniversary of his majesty's coronation, and when they were sitting down to as handsome a feast as their situation would admit of, in honour of the day, the arrival of Captain Shmalelf from Bolcheretsk was announced. He partook of their festivities, and set off on his return on the 25th. Before his departure, he reinstated the sergeant in the command of the place, and took with him the sub-lieutenant who had superseded him. Captain King accompanied Captain Shmalelf to the entrance of Awatska river, and on Sunday, the 26th, attended him to church at Paratounea. The church is of wood, and by far the best building in the country round about the bay. It is ornamented by many paintings, particularly with two pictures of St. Peter and St. Paul, presented by Bhering, and which, in the real richness of their drapery, would carry off the prize from the first of European performances; for all the

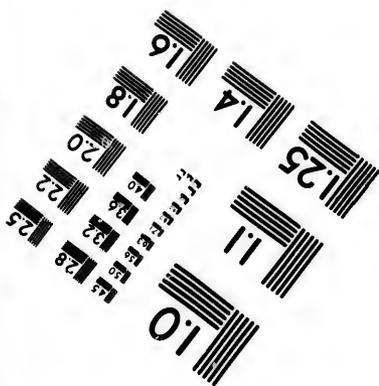
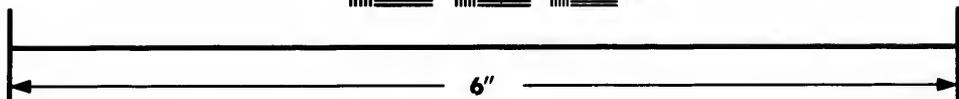
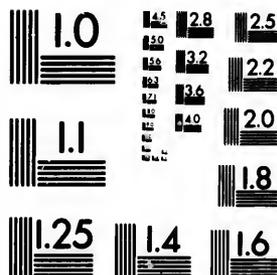
principal parts of it are made of thick plates of solid silver, fastened to the canvass, and fashioned into the various foldings of their robes.

The next day another hunting party was set on foot under the direction of the clerk of the parish, who was a celebrated bear-hunter. The produce was a female bear, beyond the common size, which they shot in the water, and found dead the next morning in the place to which she had been watched. The mode of hunting these animals by the natives is as follows. When they came to the ground frequented by the bears, their first step is to look for their tracks; these are found in the greatest numbers leading from the woods down to the lakes, and among the long sedgy grass and brakes by the edge of the water. The place of ambuscade being determined on, the hunters next fix in the ground the crutches upon which their firelocks are made to rest, pointing them in the direction they mean to shoot. This done, they kneel, or lie down, and, with their bear-spears by their side, wait for the game. These precautions, which are chiefly taken in order to make sure of their mark, are, on several accounts, highly expedient. For, in the first place, ammunition is so dear in Kamtschatka, that the price of a bear will not purchase more of it than is sufficient to load a musket four or five times; and, what is more material, if the bear be not rendered incapable of pursuit by the first shot, the consequences are often fatal. He immediately makes towards the place whence the noise and smoke issue, and attacks his adversaries with great fury. It is impossible for them to reload, as the animal is seldom at more than twelve or fifteen yards distance when he is fired at: so that if he does not fall, they immediately put themselves in a posture to receive him upon their spears, and their safety greatly depends on their giving him a mortal stab as he first comes upon them. If he parries the thrust (which bears, by the extraordinary strength





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36  
40

10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40

and agility of their paws, are often enabled to do) and thereby breaks in upon his adversaries, the conflict becomes very unequal, and it is well if the life of one of the party alone suffice to pay the forfeit.

On the 1st of October, the cattle arrived from Verchnei, and the 3d, being the nameday of the empress, Captain Gore invited the priest of Paratounea, Ivaskin, and the sergeant, to dinner, and an entertainment was also provided for the inferior officers of the garrison, for the *toions* of Paratounea and Petropaulowska, and for the better sort of the Kamtschatdale inhabitants. The rest of the natives of every description were invited to partake with the ships' companies, who had a pound of good fat beef served up to each man, and what remained of their spirits was made into grog, and divided amongst them.

On the 5th, our navigators received from Bolchereck a fresh present of tea, sugar, and tobacco. They were ready for sea, but the weather prevented them from leaving the bay till the 9th. Just before they weighed anchor, the drummer of the marines belonging to the Discovery deserted, having been last seen with a Kamtschatdale woman, to whom his messmates knew he had been much attached, and who had often been observed persuading him to stay behind. This man had been long useless to them, from a swelling in his knee, which rendered him lame, but this made them the more unwilling to leave him behind, to become a burthen both to the Russians and himself. Some of the sailors were therefore sent to a well known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where they found him and his woman. On the return of the party with the deserter, the vessels weighed, and came out of the bay.

Awatska Bay has within its mouth a noble basin of twenty-five miles in circuit, with the capacious harbours of Tareinska to the west, Rakoweena to the east. and the small one of St. Peter and St. Paul to

the  
lit  
sh  
the  
by  
the  
fat  
Th  
ha  
the  
on  
pre  
(pa  
try  
on  
sol  
gre  
Am  
wit  
for  
to,  
for  
tro  
kick  
T  
pea  
the  
wo  
glo  
han  
fles  
glas  
men  
goo  
Kia  
gre  
sell  
bles

the north. The last mentioned is a most convenient little harbour. It will hold with ease half-a-dozen ships moored head and stern, and is fit for giving them any kind of repairs. The south side is formed by a low sandy neck, exceedingly narrow, on which the Ostrog is built. The deepest water within is seven fathoms, and in every part over a muddy bottom. There is also a watering-place at the head of the harbour.

The commerce of this country, as far as regards the exports, is entirely confined to furs, and carried on by a company of merchants instituted by the empress. Besides these, there are many inferior traders (particularly Cossacks) scattered through the country. Formerly this commerce was altogether carried on by barter, but lately every article is bought and sold for ready money only. Our sailors brought a great number of furs with them from the coast of America, and were both astonished and delighted with the quantity of silver the merchants paid down for them, but on finding neither gin-shops to resort to, nor tobacco, nor any thing else that they cared for, to be had for money, the roubles soon became troublesome companions, and were often to be seen kicked about the decks.

The articles of importation are principally European, several likewise come from Siberia, Bucharea, the Kalmucks, and China. They consist of coarse woollen and linen cloths, yarn stockings, bonnets and gloves, thin Persian silks, cottons and nankeens, handkerchiefs, brass and copper pans, iron stoves, files, guns, powder and shot, hardware, looking-glasses, flour, sugar, tanned hides, &c. Though the merchants have a large profit upon these imported goods, they have a still larger upon the furs of Kiachta, upon the frontiers of China, which is the great market for them. The best sea-otter skins sell generally in Kamtschatka for about thirty roubles each. The Chinese merchant at Kiachta pur-

chases them at more than double that price, and sells them again at Peking at a great advance, whence a farther profitable trade is made with some of them to Japan. If, therefore, a skin is worth thirty roubles in Kamtschatka, to be transported first to Okotzk, thence by land to Kiachta, a distance of 1364 miles; thence to Peking, 760 miles more; and after that to be conveyed to Japan, what a prodigiously advantageous trade might be carried on direct to Japan, which is about a fortnight or three weeks' sail from Kamtschatka!

It was now resolved, in consequence of the latitude given by the instruction of the Board of Admiralty, to run along the Kuriles, and to survey the eastern coasts of the Japanese islands, previous to returning homewards; and Captain Gore gave orders for Macao to be the place of rendezvous in case of separation.

They coasted along the peninsula of Kamtschatka, with variable weather, and on the 12th, at six in the afternoon, they saw, from the mast-head, Cape Lopatka, the southernmost extremity of the peninsula. This point of land, which is a low flat cape, formed a marked object in the geography of the eastern coast of Asia, and by an accurate observation, and several good angles, they determined its precise situation to be in latitude 51 deg. 0 min. and longitude 156 deg. 45 min. At the same time they saw too the first of the Kurile islands, called Shoomsha, and on the next day they saw the second, Paramou-sir; the latter is the largest of the Kuriles, subject to Russia; but the gale increasing from the west, they were never able to approach it nearer than to observe its general aspect, which was very high land, almost entirely covered with snow; and to ascertain its situation, which was found to be 10 deg. west longitude from Lopatka, and its latitude 50 degrees 46 min. at the north, and 49 degrees 58 min. at the south end.

C  
 from  
 sou  
 ing  
 the  
 rou  
 vig  
 plac  
 call  
 The  
 map  
 at t  
 land  
 sam  
 the  
 war  
 cess  
 tha  
 muc  
 in e  
 and  
 thou  
 O  
 the  
 they  
 148  
 tak  
 be a  
 hau  
 the  
 to h  
 abor  
 land  
 and  
 fur  
 shap  
 part  
 O  
 to

On the 14th and 15th, the wind blowing steadily from the westward, they were obliged to stand to the southward, and were consequently hindered from seeing any more of the Kurile islands. In the situation they then found themselves, they were almost surrounded by the supposed discoveries of former navigators. To the southward and south-west were placed in the French charts, a group of five islands, called the three Sisters, Zellaney, and Zunasher. They were about ten leagues, according to the same maps, to the westward of the land of De Gama; and as the Company's Land, Staten Island, and the famous land of Jesso, were all supposed to lie nearly in the same direction, this course was deemed to deserve the preference, and they hauled round to the westward, the wind having shifted to the north. A succession of gales, however, and now and then a storm that reduced them to their courses, drove them too much to the southward, prevented them from falling in even with the southernmost of the Kurile islands, and obliged them at last to give up all further thoughts of discovery to the north of Japan.

On the 22nd, the gale having abated, they let out the reefs of the topsails and made more sail. At noon they were in latitude 40 deg. 58 min., and longitude 148 deg. 17 min., and two small land birds being taken on board, plainly indicated that they could not be any great distance from the land; they therefore hauled up to the west-north-west, in which direction the southernmost islands seen by Spanberg, and said to be inhabited by hairy men, lay at the distance of about fifty leagues. They saw several other signs of land; but, on the 24th, the wind shifted to the north, and blew a fresh gale, so that they finally gave up all further search for islands to the north of Japan, and shaped their course west-south-west, for the north part of that island.

On the 26th, at daybreak, they descried high land to the westward which proved to be Japan. The

country consisted of a double range of mountains; it abounded with wood, and had a pleasing variety of hills and dales. They saw the smoke of several towns, and many houses near the shore, in pleasant and cultivated situations. They stood off and on, according as the weather permitted them, till the 28th in the afternoon, when they lost sight of the land, and from its breaking off so suddenly, they conjectured that what they had before seen was a cluster of islands, lying off the main land of Japan. The next day, they saw land again, eleven leagues to the southward. The coast appeared straight and unbroken; towards the sea it was low, but rose gradually into hills of a moderate height, whose tops were tolerably even, and covered with wood.

At nine o'clock, the wind shifting to the southward, they tacked and stood off to the east, and soon after they saw a vessel close in with the land, standing along shore to the northward, and another in the offing, coming down before the wind. Objects of any kind, belonging to a country so famous and yet so little known, excited a general curiosity, and every soul on board was upon deck in an instant, to gaze at them. The vessel to windward passed ahead of them at the distance of about half a mile. It would have been easy to have spoken with her; but perceiving, by her manœuvres, that she was much frightened, Captain Gore was not willing to augment her terrors, and thinking that they should have many better opportunities of communicating with the Japanese, suffered her to go off without interruption. There appeared to be about six men on board, and, according to the best conjectures that could be formed, the vessel was about forty tons burden. She had but one mast, on which was hoisted a square sail, extended by a yard aloft, the braces of which worked forward. Half way down the sail came three pieces of black cloth, at equal distances from each other. The vessel was higher at each end than

in  
sh  
la  
  
na  
se  
to  
Ka  
no  
su  
and  
day  
not  
clu  
of  
  
C  
gal  
tan  
par  
wer  
  
O  
Jap  
ingl  
shor  
ably  
land  
coas  
actl  
were  
as th  
was  
140  
  
As  
exter  
Point  
sight  
weat  
expec  
but v

in the midship, and from her appearance and form she did not appear to be able to sail otherwise than large.

Soon after the wind increased so much, that our navigators were reduced to their courses; and the sea ran as high as any one on board ever remembered to have seen it. If the Japanese vessels are, as Kæmpfer describes them, open in the stern, it would not have been possible for those they saw to have survived the fury of the storm; but as the appearance of the weather, all the preceding part of the day, foretold its coming, and one of the sloops had, notwithstanding, stood far out to sea, it was concluded they were perfectly capable of bearing a gale of wind.

Our navigators were blown off the land by this gale, but on the 30th they saw it again, at the distance of about fifteen leagues, appearing in detached parts, but it could not be determined whether they were small islands, or parts of Japan.

On the 1st of November, they saw a number of Japanese vessels close in with the land, several seemingly engaged in fishing, and others standing along shore. They discovered to the westward a remarkably high mountain, with a round top, rising far inland. As this was the most remarkable hill on the coast, they wished to have settled its situation exactly; but only having had a single view, they were obliged to be contented with such accuracy as their circumstances would allow. Its latitude was reckoned to be 35 deg. 20 min. and its longitude 140 deg. 26 min.

As the Dutch charts make the coast of Japan extend about ten leagues to the south-west of White Point (supposed to be the southernmost land then in sight) our navigators stood off to the eastward, to weather the point. At midnight they again tacked, expecting to fall in with the land to the southward, but were surprised to find, in the morning, that

during eight hours in which they supposed they had made a course of nine leagues to the south-west, they had in reality been carried eight leagues in a direction diametrically opposite. Whence they calculated that the current had set to the north-east by north, at the rate of at least five miles an hour.

On the 3d of November, they were again blown off the land by a heavy gale, and found themselves upwards of fifty leagues off, which circumstance, together with the extraordinary effect of the currents they had experienced, the late season of the year, the unsettled state of the weather, and the little likelihood of any change for the better, made Capt. Gore resolve to leave Japan altogether, and proceed on the voyage for China.

On the 4th and 5th, our navigators continuing their course to the south-east, passed great quantities of pumice-stone. These stones appeared to have been thrown into the sea by eruptions of various dates, as many of them were covered with barnacles, and others quite bare. On the 13th, they had a most violent gale from the northward. In the morning of the 14th, the wind shifting to the north-west, brought with it fair weather; but, though they were, at that time, nearly in the situation given to the island of San Juan, they saw no appearance of land. They continued to pass much pumice-stone; indeed the prodigious quantities of that substance which floated in the sea, between Japan and the Bashee islands, seemed to indicate that some great volcanic convulsion must have happened in that part of the Pacific Ocean.

On the 14th, they discovered two islands, and on the next day a third; but Captain Gore, finding that a boat could not land without some danger, from the great surf that broke on the shore, kept on his course to the westward. The middle island is about five miles long; the south point is a high barren hill.

pr  
ro  
wh  
col  
be  
Re  
top  
Go  
nar  
end  
fere  
help  
be  
phu  
141  
deg  
sou  
tude  
H  
Isa  
refr  
Mac  
nion  
situa  
from  
to fi  
spre  
the r  
On  
and  
acco  
haul  
ther  
the  
at da  
they  
it.  
mark  
looke

presenting an evident volcanic crater. The earth, rock, or sand, for it was not easy to distinguish of which its surface was composed, exhibited various colours, and a considerable part was conjectured to be sulphur, and some of the officers on board the Resolution thought they saw steam rising from the top of the hill. From these circumstances, Captain Gore gave it the name of *Sulphur Island*. A long narrow neck of land connects the hill with the south end of the island, which spreads out into a circumference of three or four leagues, and is of moderate height. The north and south islands appeared to be single mountains of a considerable height. Sulphur Island is in latitude 24 deg. 34 min., longitude 141 deg. 12 min. The north island in latitude 25 deg. 14 min., longitude 141 deg. 10 min. and the south island in latitude 24 deg. 22 min., and longitude 141 deg. 20 min.

Hence our navigators proceeded for the Bashee Islands, hoping to procure at them such a supply of refreshments as would help to shorten their stay at Macao; but Captain Gore, being guided by the opinions of Commodore and Captain Wallis, as to the situation of these islands, which differ materially from Dampier's, they were foiled in their endeavours to find them, although, in the day time, the ships spread two or three leagues from each other, and in the night, when under an easy sail.

On the 27th, being in longitude 118 deg. 30 min., and having got to the westward of the Bashees, according to Mr. Byron's account, our navigators hauled their wind to the north-west, hoping to weather the Prata shoals; but at four in the morning of the 28th, the breakers were close under their lee; at daylight they saw the island of Prata, and finding they could not weather the shoal, ran to leeward of it. As they passed the south side, they saw two remarkable patches on the edge of the breakers, that looked like wrecks. On the south-west side of the

reef, and near the south end of the island, they thought they saw openings in the reefs which promised safe anchorage.

In the forenoon of the 29th, they passed several Chinese fishing boats ; and the sea was covered with wrecks of boats that had been lost, as they conjectured, in the late boisterous weather. They were in latitude 22 deg. 1 min., having run 110 miles since the preceding noon.

On the 30th, they ran along the Lema Islands, and got a Chinese pilot on board. In obedience to the instruction given to Captain Cook by the Admiralty, the captains now required of the officers and men of both ships to give up their journals, and what other papers they had in their possession relative to the voyage, which was cheerfully complied with ; and at nine o'clock in the evening of the following day, they anchored three leagues from Macao.

Here, upon sending on shore to negotiate for supplies of provisions, &c. they first received intelligence of the occurrences in Europe, during the protracted period of their absence. On the 4th of December, they stood into the Typa, and moored with the stream-anchor and cable to the westward.

Captain King was sent up to Canton to expedite the supplies that were wanted, and experienced every possible assistance from the supercargoes and gentlemen of the Company's factory there. The purchase of the provisions and stores wanted was completed on the 26th, and the whole stock was sent down on the following day, by a vessel which Captain Gore had engaged for the purpose. Twenty sea otter-skins were sold at Canton, by Captain King, for eight hundred dollars. At the ships a brisk trade was carried on in the same article, by both officers and seamen. The sea-otter skins every day rose in value, and a few prime skins, which were clean and well preserved, were sold for one hundred and twenty dollars each. The whole amount of the value, in

spe  
sh  
ste  
two  
the  
giv  
que  
pos  
car  
tim  
age  
cut  
fam  
rica  
of a  
the  
tha  
T  
Chi  
whi  
thei  
ragg  
sean  
Euro  
patc  
they  
Thes  
gaur  
On  
the  
were  
they  
maki  
On  
rica,  
they  
selve  
tion  
They

specie and goods, that was got for the furs in both ships, did not fall short of two thousand pounds sterling, and it was generally supposed, that at least two-thirds of the quantity originally obtained from the Americans were spoiled or worn out, or had been given away or sold at Kamtschatka. In consequence hereof, the rage with which the seamen were possessed to return to Cook's River, and by another cargo of skins to make their fortunes, was, at one time, not far short of mutiny. The numerous voyages that have since been undertaken for the prosecution of the trade here suggested, have rendered it familiar to the merchants both of Britain and America; and, though it has not latterly been productive of advantages equal to those which were realized by the first adventurers, is still a branch of commerce that is successfully pursued.

The barter which had been carrying on with the Chinese for their sea-otter skins, produced a very whimsical change in the dress of the crews. On their arrival in the Typa, nothing could exceed the ragged appearance both of the younger officers and seamen; almost the whole of their original stock of European clothes having been long worn out, or patched up with skins, or the various manufactures they had met with in the course of their discoveries. These were now again mixed and eked out with the gaudiest silks and cottons of China.

On the 11th of January, two seamen belonging to the Resolution ran off with a six oared cutter, and were never after heard of. It was supposed that they had been seduced by the prevailing notion of making a fortune by returning to the fur islands.

On account of the war between England and America, with France and Spain as her allies, of which they received intelligence at Canton, they put themselves into the best posture of defence, the Resolution mounting sixteen guns, and the Discovery ten. They had reason, however, to believe, from the gene-

rosity of their enemies, that these precautions were superfluous; being informed that instructions had been found on board all the French ships of war captured in Europe, directing their commanders, in case of falling in with the ships that sailed under the command of Captain Cook, to suffer them to proceed without molestation; and the same orders were also said to have been given by the American Congress to the vessels employed in their service. In return for these liberal concessions, Captain Gore resolved to refrain from availing himself of any opportunities of capture, and to preserve, throughout the remainder of the voyage, the strictest neutrality.

On the 12th of February, 1780, our navigators got under sail from Macao; on the 19th, they saw Pulo Sapata, and on the 20th, descried Pu'o Condore, and anchored in the harbour at the south-west end of the island. The town is situated at the east end, and here they procured eight buffaloes, with other refreshments. From the untractableness and prodigious strength of the buffaloes, it was both a tedious and difficult operation to get them on board. The method of conducting them was by passing ropes through their nostrils and round their horns; but, having been once enraged at the sight of our men, they became so furious that they sometimes broke the trees to which they were often under the necessity of being tied; sometimes they tore asunder the cartilage of the nostrils through which the ropes ran, and got loose. On these occasions, all the exertions of the men to recover them would have been ineffectual without the assistance of some young boys, whom these animals would permit to approach them, and by whose little management their rage was soon appeased. A circumstance respecting these animals, which was thought no less singular than their gentleness, towards, and, as it should seem affection for, little children, was, that they had not been twenty-four hours on board. before they became the tamest

of  
a n  
bec  
tha  
som  
pou  
to  
his  
whi  
C  
whe  
war  
and  
tici  
in th  
Islan  
ply o  
Fr  
Band  
of t  
fever  
vail  
one f  
On  
Sund  
exper  
almo  
and t  
suit o  
corda  
On  
and o  
India  
before  
anch  
into S  
Hav  
them  
our ne

of all creatures. Captain King kept two of them, a male and a female, for a considerable time, which became great favourites with the sailors, and thinking that a breed of animals of such strength and size, some of them weighing when dressed, seven hundred pounds, would be a valuable acquisition, intended to have brought them with him to England, but his intention was frustrated by an incurable hurt which one of them received at sea.

Our navigators remained here till the 28th of Jan., when they unmoored and proceeded on their homeward voyage, passing through the Straits of Banca, and of Sunda, without any occurrence worthy of particular remark. They saw two or three Dutch ships in the Straits of Sunda. They watered at Prince's Island, at the entrance of the Straits, and got a supply of fowls and turtles there.

From the time of their entering the Straits of Banca, they began to experience the powerful effects of the pestilential climate, and malignant putrid fevers, with obstinate coughs, and dysenteries, prevailed amongst the crews, happily, however, without one fatal termination.

On the 18th of February they left the Straits of Sunda; in the night between the 25th and 26th, they experienced a most violent storm, during which almost every sail they had bent was split to rags, and the next day they were obliged to bend their last suit of sails, and to knot and splice the rigging, their cordage being all expended.

On the 7th of April, they saw the land of Africa, and on the 9th, they fell in with an English East India packet, that had left Table Bay three days before. On the evening of the 12th, they dropped anchor in False Bay, and the next morning stood into Simon's Bay.

Having completed their victualling, and furnished themselves with the necessary supply of naval stores, our navigators sailed out of the bay on the 9th of

May. On the 12th of June, they passed the equator for the fourth time during the voyage. On the 12th of August they made the western coast of Ireland, and, after a fruitless attempt to put into Port Galway, they were obliged, by strong southerly winds, to steer to the northward; and, on the 26th of August, both ships came to an anchor at Stromness in the Orkneys, whence Captain King was dispatched by Captain Gore, to acquaint the Board of Admiralty with their arrival. On the first of October, the ships arrived safe at the Nore, after an absence of four years, two months, and twenty-two days.

ator  
2th  
and,  
Gal-  
nds,  
h of  
ness  
ched  
ralty  
ships  
four

WILLIAM MILNER & CO. LTD.  
11, ABINGDON ROAD, LONDON, E.C. 4.  
ESTD 1862

**CHOICE NOVELS**  
IN THE  
**COTTAGE LIBRARY,**

PUBLISHED BY

**MILNER & Co.,**  
**LONDON AND HALIFAX.**

**ONE SHILLING EACH.**

---

*These Books are well Printed on good strong Paper, durably Bound in Best Cloth, embossed with Ink and Gold Letters, and are the Cheapest Works in the World!*

---

**The Adventures of Oliver Twist.**  
**By Charles Dickens.**

**T**HOSE persons who think that our best novel-writers have penned their most excellent stories merely for the purpose of amusing and edifying their readers, are very much mistaken.

AX.

When any great and serious evil has afflicted the community, or a section of it, these preachers of equity and truth have exposed the enormity, in such a forcible manner, to the great mass of the public, that the effort has almost invariably had the effect of lessening or removing the evil they have attacked by the novel they have written with that intention.

Such an object had CHARLES DICKENS when he wrote this powerful story :—“ OLIVER TWIST.” The Poor-Laws of our country were, before this tale was written, a disgrace to our boasted civilization. Irregularities were rife in every part of our poor-houses ; indignities and cruelties were practised by wholesale upon the unfortunate inmates of these places, more particularly upon the youthful portion of them. No proper supervision was exercised over those in power in these retreats of the poor ; and there is no doubt that thousands of children left in the charge of those in authority there, have died from neglect, starvation, or cruelty.

This state of affairs was known to CHARLES DICKENS, and he became the worthy champion of the defenceless and insulted inmates in the worst conducted poor-houses in this country. By this excellent story of the life and adventures of OLIVER TWIST, he at once and for ever gave the death-blow to the monstrosities and cruelties which were practised by the old parochial authorities in the days of yore. The character of Fagin, the Jew, the trainer of the youthful pick-pockets in the thieves' den, is well delineated. Bill Sykes, the brutal thief, is a very conspicuous personage in the story, who, in his jealous desperation, murders his paramour ; his character is

t  
c  
a  
sc  
cr  
N  
fa  
of  
ad  
of  
fem  
The  
pick  
sent  
Bea  
sona  
bett  
chial  
cal a  
assur  
get a  
perso  
is no  
of the  
is con

true to the life ;—the restlessness and miserable condition of his mind, shown in his wanderings after the murder, is one of the most pathetic descriptions of the power of conscience, even in the criminal, that was ever penned. The career of Nancy, his paramour, does not, in any degree, fall short of truthfulness in description, with any of the other characters. The steadfastness of her adherence to her paramour in all the varied scenes of his life, truly portrays the faithfulness of the female mind even in the wicked courses of life. The Dodger and Charley Bates are the young pickpockets—characters which have many representatives even at this day. The bombastic parish Beadle is a true type of what these notable personages once were ; now their day is over, and a better state of things is to be found in our parochial laws. No man is able to usurp the tyrannical authority which these minions used cruelly to assume. Of OLIVER TWIST himself, we cannot get a true insight into his character without a personal study of this well-written story, which is now placed, in price at least, within the reach of the poorest person in the country. This story is complete.

## Sketches by Boz. By Charles Dickens.

**T**HESSE sketches are the earliest productions of the prolific pen of CHARLES DICKENS. They are and always will be, considered of a high order; full of both humour and pathos; they treat of scenes and characters of the "great world of London," where every kind of life, from the poorest to the richest, the most ignorant to the most intelligent and refined dwell. The scenes of squalor, vice, immorality and crime. High-life below stairs, snobbish gentility, religious cant, villanous hypocrisy, in fact, every kind of life, both virtuous and vicious, that there is to be found, MR. CHARLES DICKENS has graphically sketched and portrayed with that faithfulness that he only could do. The excellent manner in which these sketches were first written heralded forth the prolific genius the author's mind would display in the future years. It is a pleasant thing, when a person has reached the "height of popularity," to study his first efforts—note the progress—discover errors renounced—style improved—mannerisms altered—and compare the first effort with the last. This volume is unabridged.

C  
J  
R  
JAC  
pos  
bec  
adv  
and  
plea  
Pe  
F  
unriv  
life u  
begin  
of the  
parts  
but h  
his da  
prom  
teache  
discip  
best w  
useful  
them  
have r

## CAPTAIN MARRYAT'S NOVELS.

### Jacob Faithful. By Captain Marryat.

**R**EADERS of romance know full well the value of the works of this talented writer. **JACOB FAITHFUL** is one of the author's best compositions. It has gone through many editions, because of its humour and the style in which the adventures of the hero upholds national honour and military valour it will always be read with pleasure by all persons.

### Peter Simple. By Captain Marryat.

**F**OR genuine humour, startling adventures, and thrilling scenes, this story of the sea is unrivalled. Peter Simple is a character who starts life under very unfavourable circumstances; he begins his adventurous career in the active days of the wars with France. His voyages are to all parts of the known world. Simple is his name, but his experience in the hard nautical service of his day makes him wise in many things. He gains promotion by the best of methods: his merit, and teaches the reader that perseverance and strict discipline, though sometimes very severe, is the best way to promotion. This tale will be very useful to youthful readers, and will be read by them with the relish and interest with which they have read the famous "Robinson Crusoe."

## Midshipman Easy. By Captain Marryat.

**I**T is sometimes both amusing and grieving to parents who have brought up sons to the best of their ability, both in good training and sound education, to find that one or more of them get strange notions about the grand career they may have by going to sea ; their young imaginations depict a life on the ocean in the most glowing colours—they see, in their young fancies, certain promotion to the highest positions in the service most speedily and sure, and their day-dreams are full of grand epaulets, and gold-laced caps either of midshipmen or captain, and of giving orders to the men when *they* command one of the largest vessels in the navy of our country. The ardour of their youthful fancies prevent them thinking that these honours are only to be won by arduous, persistent, constant, faithful service, and with the highest sterling ability that the closest application to the duties of a seafaring life needs. Just such a character was Midshipman Easy, the hero of this novel, and this story is full of lessons to the youth who is mad for the onerous life on the vast ocean. The fun and frolic practised by midshipmen upon each other, and the practical jokes, and deeds of daring they are called upon to perform, cannot fail to make this book a favourite with the youth in his early days,—days so free from care and trouble that he fancies he can tie up his career and shape his circumstances in the same manner as he ties up and shapes a parcel of goods. This volume is the cheapest that is published.

**T**  
 T  
 year  
 wh  
 ship  
 of t  
 her  
 of t  
 upon  
 devo  
 The  
 man  
 fecti  
 untu  
 follow  
 sition  
 vario  
 and a  
 in pe  
 herita  
 entitl  
 just w  
 about  
 poison  
 time ;  
 heart.

## The King's Own. By Captain Marryat.

THIS tale takes its rise from the unfortunate mutiny of the seamen at the Nore, in the year 1797. The son of one of the deluded men who was hanged at the yard-arm of one of the ships, is the hero of the story. The imprinting of the marks on the arms of the seamen gives the hero the title of "THE KING'S OWN;" the mark of the *broad-arrow*, the king's mark, was pressed upon the arm of the child, and thus he became devoted for life to the king's service on the sea. The devotion shown to the child by the old seaman who adopted him, brings out boldly the affection which is often shown even by the rough untutored hearts of our "Jolly Jack Tars." To follow the career of the young hero from one position to another in the service, and through his various adventures, is one of the most delightful and amusing pleasures which the reader will find in perusing this truly interesting tale. The inheritance and fortune to which our hero is justly entitled is kept back from him by villany, but just when the villany is unmasked, and he is about to marry his old sweetheart, the miscreant poisons him, and shoots himself at the same time; his betrothed bride also dies of a broken heart.

## T. S. ARTHUR'S NOVELS.

### T. S. ARTHUR as an Author.

**T**HE world is greatly indebted to such authors as T. S. ARTHUR. He may truly be styled one of the first of its social reformers, for he has written for the peoples' welfare, both morally, socially, and religiously. His stories always improve the reader, in the highest sense of the word. He has done more to strengthen the morals and cultivate the religious faculties of his readers than a great many clever authors of the present day. None need fear the introducing of his books into the home circle; in fact, they ought to be welcomed as the best aids to a good moral and religious home training, that can be obtained. His efforts are always happy, lively, and interesting, with sound principles running through the whole of them. He has lived and laboured to leave the world better than he found it.

### Cast Adrift. A Story of New York.

**T**HE most fastidious parents need not have the least fear of introducing the Works of T. S. ARTHUR into their families. They are full of instructive moral lessons, and are written in a very attractive style. "Cast Adrift" is a story of life in New York City. The heroine is found in the lowest state of society, and by virtuous behaviour in the midst of vice, wins her way into upper circles.

An

**T** roma  
ed wa  
the s  
all th  
and v  
way i  
nity.  
Amer  
tion  
cullen  
mitted

Righ

**T**H  
it  
which  
upon  
when  
oppress  
weak a  
are wro  
story b  
of the  
mately  
be long

## Anna Lee; or, the Maiden, Wife, and Mother.

**T**HIS beautiful novel is written in a truly natural strain; it is not highly coloured with romantic tints, but its pictures of life are portrayed with so vivid and striking a truthfulness, that the social ties of the domestic hearth are seen in all their pristine loveliness. Its high moral tone and virtuous teachings will enable it to win its way in the families of all classes of the community. It comes from the pen of one of the best American writers, T. S. ARTHUR, whose reputation on both sides of the Atlantic, as a most excellent, truthful story-teller, is universally admitted.

### Righted at Last. A Story of New England Life.

**T**HERE is a common proverb, "Every dog has its day;" by the hand of retribution with which Providence almost invariably lays hold upon the evil-doer, and punishes him severely, when he has persisted in his wicked courses of oppression and the exercise of tyranny upon the weak and defenceless. We see many things that are wrong "righted at last," and this charming story by T. S. ARTHUR is but another instance of the truth, that virtue and goodness will ultimately triumph, though the time of triumph may be long delayed.

## MRS. HOLMES' NOVELS.

Mrs. MARY JANE HOLMES as an  
Author.

**M**RS. MARY JANE HOLMES is a peculiarly fascinating writer; one of the best that the great continent of the United States of America has ever produced. Her books are invariably entertaining and amusing, for she owns the rarely to be found art of enlisting the sympathy of all classes of readers—she draws out the affections of those who peruse her works towards the heroine or hero of every story which she has penned, and she charmingly rivets the attention to every part of the career of the leading characters of each tale which her fertile genius has planned, and her prolific pen has forcefully, but truthfully, put upon paper. Her works are very numerous—not one of which can be looked upon as the efforts of a novice, or one who does not understand the failings, frailties, or virtues and excellencies of every grade of human nature. Her master mind has grasped the wants of the day, in presenting truth uncoloured, or depicted in that outrageously romantic style which is often injurious to all readers—more especially to the youthful mind which loves romance beyond or above the truth. She is not an author who lets her fancy rove into the unreal, or impossible,—but she tells her tales in homely phrase, with that domestic reality which never reaches the mind of the reader as a thing that is improbable; but proves the genuineness of that proverb, namely:

“TRUTH IS STRANGER THAN FICTION!”

S  
it is  
fanc  
the  
rom

T  
produ  
raptu  
draw  
chara

T  
peruse  
of ma  
and in

T  
the  
writers  
possess  
of the  
The h  
always  
ful read

## Edna Browning.

**S**O full of the truthful genuine feeling and pathos is this tale of sincere attachment, that it is sure to win the attention and captivate the fancy of all who take it up. It is certain to gain the golden opinions of the lovers of unvarnished romance literature.

## Edith Lyle.

**T**HIS is a truly charming novel. One of the best that modern American writers have produced. Every reader will be sure to be enraptured by it. So true to nature, nothing overdrawn, or highly coloured is to be found in its characters.

## Ethelyn's Misfortune.

**T**HIS domestic novel is entirely new. It will be read with pleasure and profit by all who peruse it. The story shows the trials and troubles of married life where there is no affinity of taste and in style of living.

## 'Lena Rivers.

**T**HIS book has established the reputation of the author, as one of the best American writers of the present day. It ought to be in the possession of every lover of good novels, because of the insight it gives into genuine American life. The humour and pathos contained therein will always make it a favourite, especially with youthful readers.

## Marian Grey.

**M**ARIAN GREY is a chaste, highly-finished story in the character of a domestic novel. Virtue and modesty are portrayed by Mrs. Holmes to great advantage, and it merits a place in every young woman's library in cottage and mansion.

## Milly Dear.

**T**HIS story is one of great interest; it traces the history of a young girl whose parentage is hid in mystery at the commencement of life. Her career is traced with care, and as the circumstances of daily life are more developed, she becomes the heroine of this well-told tale. She is truly beloved by a crippled youth who never till his death reveals the strength of his attachment for Mildred, who is more frequently known by the pet name of Milly. As time advances Milly's beauty becomes radiant and glowing, and wins the affection of Lawrence Thornton—and he loves her truly, but circumstances over which they have no control, separate the lovers, who, as often is the case with true love, become more attached as adverse circumstances rise before them to intercept their heart-felt esteem for each other. All these things are traced by Mrs. Holmes, as only she knows how, in continuous and consecutive order, with that lively interest which gives pleasure to all who peruse her stories. In the end Milly becomes the dear wife of Lawrence Thornton.

**T** pro  
of v  
the  
men  
rati  
tion  
Ame  
and  
cent  
story  
a lov  
will i  
phic  
pleas  
needs  
It is  
most  
and is  
popul

**T**H  
w  
ing th  
of prai  
of the  
writes  
does an  
carries  
ful sty

## Queenie Hetherton.

**T**HIS story certainly is one of the best that the pen of this talented American writer has ever produced. It is quite full of those domestic scenes of vicissitude and misfortune which brings out the sterling character of the heroine in the commencement of the tale, and clothes the whole narrative with a fascinating interest. The introduction of many humorous characters to be found in American society make it increasingly attractive, and add to the pleasure to be found in the innocent comicalities and oddities with which the story abounds. Those readers who wish to peruse a love-story without very extravagant romance, will in this book, find one written in a truly graphic and natural style, in which curiosity and pleasure will increase with the perusal. This story needs but to be known to be highly appreciated. It is worthy to take a place in the homes of the most fastidious and refined people in the country, and is a companion volume to that excellent and popular story by the same author, namely :—

“LENA RIVERS.”

### West Lawn.

**T**HE author knows how to write. Any one who is a good judge of literary ability, reading this volume will give Mrs. Holmes that meed of praise which the American press from one end of the country to the other has given her. She writes not for effect, has no hero or heroine who does anything outrageous or improbable, but she carries her readers with her from the simple truthful style of her beautiful compositions.

# COTTAGE LIBRARY, ONE SHILLING EACH.

## MARY BENNETT'S NOVELS.

### MARY BENNETT as an Author.

**T**HE many excellent novels this author has penned proves her to be a person well calculated to amuse and entertain all classes of readers. She has written works which are varied in their styles and plots. The aristocratic villain and the cruel poacher are alike condemned, and their crimes held up to public reprobation. The excellencies of the poor village maiden as well as the good qualities of the educated Miss, who was "born with a silver spoon in her mouth," are alike commended. The vagabond, irrespective of his station, wealth, or position, is exposed and condemned ; while all that is noble, virtuous, and comely in human character, in every grade of life, is praised by her as things to be desired and practised for themselves, and for the blessings which they bring in their train.

MARY BENNETT has written for the people, in a way that all may understand : plain, without a desire to make herself known as a scholar ; though she is one. Unpresuming, with no wish to attract the attention of the reader to anything but her stories. Complete, leaving nothing out which could make her tales better by the addition. These editions of her works are the cheapest yet published.

R  
cur  
wh  
oft  
The  
son  
cee  
to t  
Fan  
bro  
fait  
moc  
by S  
by t  
and  
pass  
the  
hear  
plig  
Char  
she  
wom  
the  
his v  
is po  
troub  
has i  
have  
requi  
whom

## The Broken Heart.

**FANNY MEADOWS**, the leading character in this story, is a poor girl, in humble circumstances, with a drunken vagabond of a father, who sells for £2,000 his daughter's right to accept of that lover's hand she has set her affections upon. The brother she is forcibly married to, is the eldest son in the family of the village squire, who succeeds to the whole of the property of his father, to the exclusion of his younger brother, who is Fanny's accepted suitor. In poverty the younger brother roams the country, while Fanny remains faithful to him and refuses to be bound by the mock marriage she is unconsciously forced into by Squire Charnwood, whose love is backed only by the passionate desires of the libertine. Many and various are the trials and temptations she passes through in her endeavour to be faithful to the only man she can and will love with her heart's best affections. She is true to her early plighted troth, but the brother of the Squire Charnwood, who has won her heart, and to whom she clings with the tenacity which only a true woman's heart can cling, meets with a lover in the person of a wealthy lady, and in spite of all his vows of constancy, at last marries her. This is poor Fanny's crowning sorrow, and her deep trouble breaks her heart. Often, in this respect, has individual history repeated itself, and many have died broken-hearted because of true love unrequited, or unfaithfulness in the person upon whom the best and truest affections were centred.

## The Cottage Girl.

**T**HIS story had a great run when first published some years ago, because of the charming but truthful manner in which it is written. The tale develops the vicissitudes, trials, and difficulties of Ruth Summerfield, the beautiful daughter of Farmer Summerfield and his wife. Ruth, a handsome girl, by her comely face and attractive manners, gains first the attention, afterwards the love, of the squire of the village where she resides. The illicit desires of Squire Clifton are well portrayed ; they prompt him to make her his *mistress* ; her strong desire to lead a chaste and virtuous life makes her repel his passionate wish ; the schemes and tricks which the squire resorts to, in order to obtain the fulfilment of his libidinous desires are many and various ; but she triumphs, and her strong virtue makes her withstand the squire's temptations of affluence and position ;—her ultimate fall—her remorse—and the cruelty of the wicked squire—are all graphically painted in words ; the honest rival—Maynard, the miller—his constancy and faithfulness to her under all circumstances, and the strong love of her parents,—all are beautifully told by MARY BENNETT in a very homely and truthful style. This story was read by thousands of young people in the last generation with pleasure and profit ; and it is so good that it is equally valuable for the young people of every age. It will show them the truth of that Scripture text : “ The way of the transgressor is hard ! ” and the force of king Solomon's proverb, “ A virtuous woman is above riches ! ”

Ja  
T  
sto  
wa  
wa  
tho  
wor  
kin  
Gol  
won  
her  
tion  
spit  
and  
and  
acco  
holy  
tiers  
decep  
ed. b  
of th  
trives  
Jane  
This  
succes  
tiful  
their  
down

## Jane Shore; or, The Goldsmith's Wife.

THE English court was not always as pure and free from injustice as it is in our day. This story takes its date from the time when "might was right;" and when persons in the ordinary walks of life had to give way to the wishes of those in authority, whether right or wrong. This work treats of times such as those in the reign of king Edward IV., of England. JANE SHORE, the Goldsmith's wife, was one of the most beautiful women that the metropolis contained at that day; her handsome person attracted the king's attention, and he desired to have her for his own, in spite of the claims of her lawful husband. Plans and plots to accomplish his purpose were many and great which this story reveals. Beautiful and accomplished, she became the object of the unholy desires of some of the unscrupulous courtiers in the king's palace. Villany, knavery, and deception of every kind, are graphically portrayed by the writer, as each aspirant for the person of the beautiful JANE SHORE schemes and contrives for the object on which he had set his heart. Jane's humiliation and downfall are well told. This story has been dramatised and had a very successful run. It will always be a lesson to beautiful young maidens on the vanity of making their beauty their boast, which has been the downfall of thousands of females.

## The Jew's Daughter.

**T**HIS story takes its scenes, characters, and incidents from the time when Roman Catholicism was the popular religion of the day in this country, and when the Jews first emigrated to England. The persecutions which the Jews had to contend with from the Monks, priors, and priests, are well displayed in the career of the Jew's beautiful daughter. Her loveliness won her a name and fame in high quarters in the land, and there were more than one aspirant for her hand amongst those who were above the common level of the people. The witch Myrza is a character who, at that day, was believed to have miraculous power in the shape of charms and spells, and her incantations caused consternation among the incredulous people of all grades in society. The Jew's daughter at the end of the story weds her faithful lover, who has been much beset by the opposition and enmity of the priests, priors, and other dignitaries of the church. The story is full of good descriptions of scenes and circumstances which are certain to interest the reader.

## The Gipsy Bride.

**T**HIS is an historical romance, founded upon the stirring times in the reign of "Bluff King Harry." It is most minute in the delineation of its characters, and highly sensational in some of its scenes, especially those connected with the condemnation of the unfortunate Catharine Howard. True love and genuine loyalty are the leading features shown to the readers for their commendation.

I  
Cu  
of  
pu  
ter  
bus  
I  
of a  
his  
not  
of h  
rint  
reac  
the  
of th  
ble l  
of li

T  
of th  
in al  
of th  
and s  
were  
cality  
LORD  
differ  
maini  
is dir  
to be  
OR, T

## LORD LYTTON'S NOVELS.

## LORD LYTTON as an Author.

**L**ORD LYTTON is one of the few of our nobility whose talents shine forth as an author. Cultivated, well educated, and refined, but few of our noblemen have shown a desire to become public servants in the onerous task of novel writers. He, however, hid not his talents under a bushel, but practised them for the public weal.

His abilities were of no mean order in that line of amusing the public in which he chose to exert his energies. His style is peculiarly his own; nothing is strained for effect in the clever plots of his stories, he never wanders into the deep labyrinths of fancy, in which either he himself or his readers are lost; but his telling way of carrying the story through, is clever and wonderful. Some of the characters and scenes he portrays in humble life are marvellous, considering that his walks of life were above those he so clearly pens.

## Ernest Maltravers.

**T**HE story of Ernest Maltravers is rather a peculiar one. The man who acts the part of the villain, Lumley Ferrers, appears to triumph in all the plans that he concocts against the hero of the story. Politics are introduced into the tale, and some of the vile practices and bribery which were very common in that day are exposed; rascality and unfair dealing are well delineated by LORD LYTTON in this story; which finishes very differently from many other tales, in villany remaining victorious. But the reader's attention is directed to the sequel, in which right is made to be triumphant. The sequel is entitled, ALICE; OR, THE MYSTERIES.

## Alice; or, the Mysteries.

**L**UMLEY FERRERS, the villain who successfully carried everything his own way in the story of Ernest Maltravers, is again made one of the chief characters in this tale; but his machinations are frustrated in the end, and justice, which had been tardy in the interests of Ernest Maltravers, is at last done to him. Ladies and gentlemen, lords, baronets, and persons high in authority take a prominent part in the plots, political and otherwise, with which this tale abounds. The interest is abundant which pervades the whole story, and is well worth the perusal of all who wish to understand the love and politics of one hundred years ago.

### Eugene Aram.

**W**HO has not read with great interest the story of the murder of Daniel Clark by Eugene Aram? Such persons will be pleased with a novel founded upon that mysterious occurrence, and the equally mysterious person who committed the foul crime. LORD LYTTON has wonderfully written this excellent story, taking for his hero that strange misanthropic character, Eugene Aram. His lordship introduces Aram to the reader in his true character, and well describes the depth of remorse of conscience which he felt as the murderer. How he falls in love with an amiable woman, and how the stings of remorse prompt him to fly from the engagement; how he is discovered to be the murderer and ultimately convicted, condemned, and his suicide just before he should have ascended the scaffold. The tale is full of interest from beginning to end.

## Pelham ; or, Adventures of a Gentleman.

TO those persons who wish to follow the adventures of one who had not to earn his living, but who lived in affluence, with no other desire in life than to see all he could, and learn everything by experience, this work is sure to be interesting, and at the same time, amusing.

Many persons have plans of what they would do could they find wealth sufficient to follow the bent of their inclinations ; they imagine that the *sumum bonum* of life is to spend their days in pleasure and sight-seeing, and glut their curiosity to the full ! but, ay that *but*, circumstances over which they have no control, prevent their wishes being realized. The hero of this story had no *but* to his realizing all he wanted, and LORD LYTTON has well put an account of these adventures before his readers. Love, courtship, and marriage, with their various difficulties, trying circumstances and dangers, are interwoven, with a masterly hand, into this tale.

access-  
in the  
one of  
achin-  
justice,  
Ernest  
les and  
high in  
ots, po-  
ounds.  
les the  
l. of all  
itics of

rest the  
Clark by  
ed with  
urrence,  
commit-  
wonder-  
for his  
Eugene  
to the  
escribes  
he felt  
with an  
remorso  
how he  
imately  
t before  
e tale is

## MRS. SOUTHWORTH'S NOVELS.

### Mrs. SOUTHWORTH as an Author.

**W**E have always read with pleasure and profit the stories written by this highly-gifted American author. She is very clever and varied in her narratives. Her tales are not like those of a great many writers of the present day:—if you read one you may say you have read the whole they can produce, because of the sameness which characterizes every one of them. There is an originality in her works rarely to be met with, especially in a female author. There is no flagging of interest in her novels; the zeal and wonderful vivacity she throws into her writings will always assure them a welcome with the intelligent portion of the readers of all romance literature.

### The Bridal Eve.

**T**HE night before marriage is always a time of hope, fear, and anxiety, when, by the coming day's sacred ceremony will be consummated many glowing anticipations fostered and cherished during courtship's devious trials and tests of faithfulness, between the betrothed ones, who have often beheld visions of happiness in the future, when the matrimonial knot is irrevocably tied. The "Bridal Eve" is a charming and interesting romance founded upon this interesting topic.

## Beatrice; or, The Forsaken Daughter.

**T**HE plot of this tale is well chosen, the characters are described in a masterly manner, and the deep interest excited by a perusal is well sustained. **DISAPPOINTED LOVE** has been the cause of many a shipwreck "in the voyage of life," here we have described how constant, fervent, sincere attachment is triumphant after years of trial and suffering.

### The Changed Brides.

**B**y circumstances which this story reveals the two brides are changed. The plot is well laid, of deep interest, and written in a masterly manner. "The Bride's Fate" is the sequel to this story.

### The Bride's Fate. A Sequel to "Changed Brides."

**H**OW shall we live in the future? Will the married life be agreeable and happy? These are questions often asked by young people of both sexes. The sequel to "Changed Brides" reveals how the characters therein described are mated and married, and the startling fate of the Bride.

## The Curse of Clifton.

**T**HE "green-eyed monster Jealousy" is the greatest curse that can afflict any person; the workings of this fiendish passion are here portrayed by one who understands fully the failings of human nature in this respect. Those who read this volume will guard against the intrusion of this fell disturber of all social peace, if they will learn the lesson it inculcates.

## The Deserted Wife.

**T**O become a widow, after an affectionate, true-hearted woman has long been an adored and adoring wife, must be a painful and truly forlorn condition; but to be deserted by a husband, and left to the cold charity of a merciless world, has broken many a trusting and confiding heart. The story of the Deserted Wife will be found full of these interesting subjects, in all its scenes and characters.

## Fair Play.

**T**HIS tale dates from the late civil war in America. The heroine, in love with an officer, tries to forget him in the Lone Island, but ultimately is obliged to fall in to the claims of all conquering attachment. From seeming indifference she is won by constancy and fervid devotion by the man whom she previously pretended to despise.

## How He Won Her. A Sequel to "Fair Play."

**T**HE title of this tale gives the reader an insight into the teachings and sentiments of the book. It is another version of the old proverb "True Love Wins," or persistent persevering attachment conquers all difficulties in the securing of its object. It is a sequel to "Fair Play."

## The Fatal Marriage.

**H**OW many fatal marriages are made, our divorce court reveals continually. The plot in this book is laid in such a way that only one who understands and can forcibly delineate the baser passions of human nature can portray. It will be found interesting to all—more especially to those who contemplate matrimony.

## The Fortune Seeker.

**T**HE hero of this book is a poor lad who emigrated from England to "seek his fortune" in the United States. His adventures are well described, his struggles from poverty to affluence and a good position are so beautifully set forth, that the reader feels no novice in story-telling has put the work together.

### The Lost Heiress.

**T**HE author of this book is one of the most popular in the United States. She was never known to produce a poor romance, and this one, fresh from her pen abounds in startling adventure upon the subject of Love and Wealth. The plot is a good one, and will be admired by all who peruse it.

### The Missing Bride.

**T**O the bridegroom, on the auspicious morning of his wedding-day, nothing is of greater consequence than the health, welfare, and safety of his beloved bride. To hear that she is ill, or missing, especially under the most suspicious circumstances, must, and will be, the most distressing intelligence that can affect his mind. Mrs. Southworth in this volume reveals a plot of this character, which is sure to be read with deep interest.

**V**  
str  
of  
Lo  
vat  
of t  
to t  
em  
wh  
wri  
aut  
tha  
wri  
lay  
estr  
equ  
stir  
bec

**T**  
fort  
in t  
scen  
chos  
tent  
the s

## MISS DUPUY'S ENTERTAINING NOVELS.

### MISS DUPUY as an Author.

**W**E think, that of the two sexes, the female mind is the best able to depict the strength, workings, variations and faithfulness of the tender passion, universally known as **LOVE** ; providing that mind be of a highly cultivated character, and has a comprehensive grasp of the subject, with a deeply observant insight into the springs of action which set the heavenly emotion into play. Such an one is **MISS DUPUY**, who, though a native of America, is as able to write a good story as any of our female English authors. She has the gift of raising the mind to that pitch of excitement which our own female writers seldom are able to do. She is an adept at laying down the plots she depicts with an earnestness and vigour which we have seldom seen equalled, and never excelled. Her works are soul-stirring, vivacious and thrilling, and have already become favourites with the public.

### All for Love.

**T**HE old adage that "Love is Blind!" was never more truthfully portrayed and set forth than the author of "All for Love" shows in this thrilling and exciting romance. The scenes and incidents in the story are all well chosen and very graphically depicted by the talented writer upon the tender passion of love, and the sacrifices it calls forth from its devotees.

## The bravest of the brave.

**T**HE scene of this story opens in France. One of the old heroes of Waterloo is the hero of the story. Michael Rudolph—one whose bravery and daring makes him the most conspicuous personage in the tale—is supposed to be the clever but unfortunate Marshal Ney. The plot is a capital one, full of daring deeds, hair-breadth escapes and clever actions. Love under great difficulties, proves to be the conqueror in the end, while villainy is justly and completely punished. MISS DUPUY does herself great credit by penning this story, which is sure to please and entertain the reader.

## The Cancelled Will.

**T**HERE are people, especially those who consider themselves in the higher spheres of life, who marry more from a desire to gain wealth than to win "true love," and repentance comes when the startling discovery is made that genuine affection is unrequited. The "Cancelled Will" is a story of wealth and love.

## Who shall be Victor?

**I**N any contest for success in love affairs or in the gaining of wealth, the desire of each to be victor spurs on the antagonism, excites the hatred, and all the bad passions of the human breast, and often causes enmity between the contending parties for years. This story contains a plot of this nature, with the ultimate triumph of uprightness and virtue. It is a Sequel to "the Cancelled Will;" those who read that tale should also read this one, then they will be the better able to understand both.

pr  
je  
ar  
lov  
tru  
att  
not  
onl  
the  
in  
the  
sub

A  
alon  
sam  
to g  
whic  
affect  
failu  
often  
hatre  
loves  
of a c  
again  
is rep  
sexes

## Why did He Love Her?

**W**'HY did he love her?' contains the account of two lovers and the reasons which prompted them to pay their addresses to the object of their affections. Some men from mercenary, and other unworthy motives, try to gain the love of beautiful young maidens who confidently trust to the men who seem to be devoted in their attachments, and find too late that their love is not only unrequited in after years, but they were only courted from base and impure motives, and their love becomes fickle, and flies after, or even in some cases before, wedlock's bonds have united them. This story is founded upon this interesting subject.

## Why did He Marry Her?

**A**NY man who marries for beauty only, commits a mistake. He who marries for wealth alone, soon finds out that he is in error. The same may also be said of him who marries only to gain a position in life. Any "union for life" which is made from any other motive than pure affection quickly ends in sad disaster and ruinous failure. Why did he marry her? is a question often asked in the divorce court, when the deep hatred of those who plighted in former times their loves together is shown to the public by evidence of a damaging character of those who have sinned against the sacred rite of "Marriage." This story is replete with interest to all young people of both sexes.

**MRS. WETHERELL'S NOVELS.**  
**ELIZABETH WETHERELL as an**  
**Author.**

**I**T is now some time since the plan of spreading religious truth by what are known as "Religious Novels," began to be practised. Whether the mode adopted be a good one or not is an open question, and one it is not our province to decide upon; sufficient for us is it, that the religious public, in a vast majority, have accepted these efforts to spread the principles of the Gospel, and have read with avidity the various excellent novels which have been produced by persons of the highest cultivated intellect, and with the strictest sense of the true professor's requirements: that of spreading the principles of their Divine Master; who, whilst on earth "spake as never man spake."

MRS. WETHERELL is one of the best American novel writers of the present age. The religious vein which runs through all her productions, have made them very acceptable in the Sunday School libraries of every denomination in this country, and every part of the British Dominions, as well as in America. She has never lowered the standard of true religion in any of her efforts. Those who complain of the staleness of the old but good teachings of the Gospel will here find divine truth presented in a new and fascinating garb, the dressings of which will attract them when the "foolishness of preaching" is of none effect with them. No private or public religious library is complete without this talented author's choice and valuable contributions to the religious literature of the day. Mrs. Wetherell's works stand *par excellence* in this style of presenting religious truth.

## Melbourne House.

**T**HIS is a charming story, full of interest and pathos. It depicts in a graceful manner the trials and temptations in the way of a young christian; one who desires to walk exactly in the footsteps of her Divine Master. Her youth, and consequently, her inexperience of the world's ways often perplex her innocent mind, but through all the devious ways she has to walk she remains firm to the truth as she understands it, and does, what many professors do not:—walks well and faithfully in the light that she possesses.

## The Old Helmet.

**T**O the student of history nothing is more interesting than that of the helmets of our forefathers, the ancient Britons. Those helmets which sheltered their heads from the blows of the foes and enemies with whom they contended in the days when wars and conflicts were more common than happily they now are. This volume treats fully of the necessity of wearing in the stern conflict of "the battle of life" that "Old Helmet" which has effectually covered the heads of thousands when they were "persecuted for righteousness' sake," and how it will and does the same to-day. The story is a very interesting one, of a religious character, and ought to have a place in every Sunday School library and Christian's home in the country, as it has a charming way of inculcating religious truth when other methods often fail.

## Queechy.

**T**HIS tale is well adapted to those who desire an unromantic story. It has a religious vein and is of a very healthy character, suitable for perusal in all Christian homes. There is nothing of a contaminating nature in its pages. No one can read it, and the other books by the same author, without being made better.

## The Wide, Wide World.

**T**HE extensive sale this book has had is the best recommendation that can be advanced in its favour. It has gone through several editions; its virtues are many, its excellencies are too numerous to be enumerated. The mind which planned, and the head which arranged it, were prompted by the true Christian's desire to do good to those who are so fortunate as to peruse its ever welcome pages. The home is made happier where it is read, no one can study the beauty of this story without its influence for good being felt for years to come.

desire  
vein  
e for  
thing  
o one  
e au-

s the  
anced  
l edi-  
s are  
which  
were  
good  
s ever  
where  
f this  
elt for

